



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

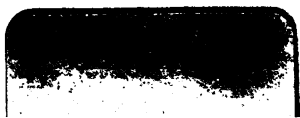
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





★MRS. C. H. KNOX &
MRS. S. V. V. HUNTINGTON

15 JUNE 1910

Not in
7/17.10
O.B.

A SYSTEM

OF

12193

MODERN GEOGRAPHY,

FOR

SCHOOLS, ACADEMIES, AND FAMILIES,

DESIGNED TO ANSWER THE

TWOFOLD PURPOSE

OF A

CORRECT GUIDE TO THE STUDENT,

AND OF A

GEOGRAPHICAL READING BOOK.

REVISED AND IMPROVED.



ILLUSTRATED BY A VARIETY OF CUTS AND TABLES, AND
ACCOMPANIED BY A NEW AND BEAUTIFUL

ATLAS.

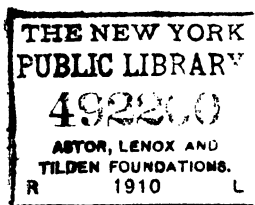
BY NATHANIEL G. HUNTINGTON, A. M.

HARTFORD:

R. WHITE, AND HUTCHISON & DWIER.

For sale by the Booksellers generally throughout the United States.

1835.



[Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1833, by Eleazer Huntington, and Henry Benton, in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Connecticut.]

PUBLISHERS' NOTICE.

THE Publishers, in offering to the public the present edition of this Geography, deem it proper to state, that the work has been carefully revised, and corrected and improved.

The latest Geographical information has been introduced. Especial pains have been taken to render the style and language simple and correct. The accuracy of the information which the book contains, may, they believe, from the care which has been exercised, be confidently relied on. The method of description which the author has adopted, is such as to give to what is often only dry detail, the life and interest of narrative. Thus, they trust, the book will be found to answer its "Two-fold purpose of a Correct Guide to the Student, and of a Geographical Reading Book."

The favorable indications which have come to the Publishers' notice, encourage them to believe that the work will generally be thought worthy of approbation, and meet with extensive patronage

Hartford, June, 1835.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Explanatory and Preliminary Remarks	9	Italy	172
North America	21	Turkey in Europe	176
United States	28	Greece	179
New England—Maine	47	Ionian Republic	181
New Hampshire	49	Switzerland	182
Vermont	51	Germany	184
Massachusetts	53	Austria	188
Rhode Island	56	Prussia	190
Connecticut	58	Poland	192
Middle States—New York	62	Netherlands—Holland	194
New Jersey	66	Belgium	196
Pennsylvania	67	Denmark	197
Delaware	71	Sweden	198
Southern States—Maryland	73	Norway	200
Virginia	74	Lapland	201
District of Columbia	76	Russia in Europe	204
North Carolina	77	Asia	208
South Carolina	79	Caucasian Countries	217
Georgia	80	Turkey in Asia	218
Alabama	82	Arabia	222
Western States—Louisiana	83	Persia, or Iran	226
Mississippi	86	Afghanistan, or Cabulistan	229
Tennessee	86	Beloochistan, or Belujistan	231
Kentucky	87	Hindoostan	231
Ohio	89	Farther India, or Chin India	238
Indiana	91	Chinese Empire—China	241
Illinois	92	Chinese Tartary	247
Missouri	94	Thibet	248
Territories—Florida	96	Empire of Japan	249
Michigan	97	Siberia, or Asiatic Russia	251
Arkansas	98	Independent Tartary	252
Missouri territory	99	Africa	254
Oregon Territory	100	Empire of Morocco—Algiers	263
British America	102	Tunis	264
Greenland	109	Tripoli—Barca—Fezzan	265
Iceland	110	Egypt	266
Russian America	112	Nubia	269
Mexico	112	Sennaar	270
Guatemala or Central America	116	Abyssinia	271
West India Islands	117	South Africa—Colony of the Cape	274
South America	121	Caffraria	276
Colombia	126	Country of the Hottentots	278
Guiana	128	Western Africa—Senegambia	277
Brazil	129	Sierra Leone	278
Peru	131	Liberia	279
Bolivia	132	Guinea	280
United Provinces of La Plata	135	Lower Guinea, or Coast of Congo	282
Chili	136	Cimbebas	284
Patagonia	138	Central Africa—Soudan or Nigritia	284
Europe	140	Sahara, or African Desert	286
British Empire—England	150	African Islands on the West	291
Wales	157	East African Islands	292
Scotland	158	Oceanica	293
Ireland	161	N. W. Oceanica, or E. India Islands	296
France	164	Australia, or Central Oceanica	298
Spain	167	Polynesia, or Eastern Oceanica	299
Portugal	169	Astronomical Remarks	303

PREFACE.

THE science of Geography is an essential branch of elementary education, and calculated to awaken and cherish in the juvenile mind that spirit of curiosity and inquiry which, under due regulation, often leads to the noblest and happiest results. Nor is it a theme unworthy of mature minds, nor beneath the attention of men of learning and taste, nor important merely as a source of mental diversion and entertainment; on the contrary it opens a wide field for improving and profitable contemplation, is in many respects connected with the general circle of the sciences, and contributes more than is commonly supposed, to the formation of the scholar, the man of business, the patriot, and the philanthropist.

Geographical knowledge, more than any other, is in its nature progressive. The field it embraces is large, and has as yet been but superficially or partially surveyed. Of many parts of the world we are still extremely ignorant. They are yet to be explored. And as travellers and adventurers are becoming more numerous, intelligent, and faithful, new degrees of light are afforded, and fresh discoveries made, so that the subject excites a continually increasing interest.

At no period, perhaps, have studies and inquiries in this department, been more important than at the present. They have a direct bearing upon those various systems and enterprises of benevolence which mark the present age, and which call forth the wisdom and energies of great and good men. One grand reason why multitudes are found so contracted in their sentiments, sympathies, and operations, is, that their education has been very limited and defective. They have been accustomed to look only near home, or upon their own gratification, interest, or party; instead of extending their intellectual and moral vision abroad, and considering their relation to the whole human family. Many of our youth would aspire and attain to greater and nobler achievements, if their minds were, in due season, cultivated and enlarged by an acquaintance with the state of the world, and with the diversified character and condition of its inhabitants.

In order to prepare them to act on a generous scale, they should early be accustomed to take large and liberal views. Many illustrious characters, it is well known, have received in their boyhood, and often incidentally, those literary or moral impressions which have led to their subsequent celebrity and usefulness. The historian, orator, and

poet, have perhaps in the school-room, first imbibed a love for history, eloquence, and poetry, and begun to pant with ardor after distinction in the favorite pursuit. Many a noted voyager and benefactor, like Columbus, has, in the prosecution of his geographical studies, inwardly burned with the desire and resolution to circumnavigate the globe and to satiate his curiosity by visiting all countries and nations; and how many valuable discoveries and noble deeds have hence resulted! No doubt many a pious youth, while reading or hearing impressive descriptions of the vices and miseries of pagan millions, has formed his first resolve to become a missionary, and devote his life and talents to the most benevolent and sacred enterprise of publishing abroad the joyful news of redemption. These are some of the happy effects of the use of well written geographical school books. It is therefore gratifying to perceive the more general attention, which, for several years past has been given in schools to this branch of knowledge, the greater facilities afforded for the study of it, and the more rapid progress generally exhibited by learners.

It is the author's design, in the following work, to co-operate with other authors in endeavoring to excite and encourage the attention of youth to a branch of learning which is every day becoming more and more important, and to lend them assistance in their application to it. He considers a familiar acquaintance with maps as the ground work of all geographical knowledge, and as preceding in the order of nature, any particular statement of facts; at the same time he would avoid burdening the memory of the scholar, or wearying his patience, by being tediously minute or prolix, in questions or travels on the map. It is not to be expected that any pupil can long retain in his memory very great proportion of the names and words on every map, nor is it worth while to lay upon him this task; but the distinct outlines and boundaries of countries, and the most prominent points, features, and places, should be particularly and repeatedly noticed, and permanently fixed in the mind.

There should be also, in the author's opinion, considerable description in our geographical books, especially for the older class of pupils; something to inform their understandings, increase their stock of knowledge, awaken and sustain their interest in the subject, and lead to practical advantages. The study, instead of being rendered dry, difficult and irksome, may be, and ought to be, made easy and agreeable. The proposed limits of this work would not admit of many minute and copious descriptions. Conciseness and brevity have necessarily been consulted. It is however hoped that a considerable variety of important facts may here be found stated with correctness, and in a manner not materially deficient in perspicuity and interest.

The plan of the work was intended to be simple and obvious, and conformable to the natural laws of mind. It commences with explanations of some of the most important terms, in connection with exercises on the map referring to them. Next is exhibited, in the form of question and answer, an introductory view of the globe and its principal outlines, together with the boundaries and relative situations and magnitudes of its grand divisions of land and water. After this follows

a general description of each of the five grand divisions of the land, and more particular descriptions of the several states or countries which compose them. These descriptions are preceded by necessary references to the maps, and severally followed by questions and reviews, to impress the leading facts on the memory. The geography of our own country is first treated of, and at far greater length than that of any other; and here especially, pains have been taken to bring forward the most recent information. Foreign lands have received attention, in some proportion to their importance and interest. The late discoveries, particularly in Africa, are noticed.

Throughout the work, the author has been scrupulously careful to state nothing as fact, without respectable authority. The extent and population of countries, states, and cities, he has endeavored to exhibit as correctly as possible, and in such an arrangement, that they might be viewed comparatively, and be the more easily remembered.

The descriptive parts of the work, it is thought, may prove useful as occasional reading lessons. They have been intentionally composed and printed with reference to this end. It is well known, there is often found a deficiency of reading books in our schools. The old ones have been repeatedly read, till they are worn out and become insipid. A greater number and variety, in many instances, are needed. Why may not books in this pleasing science, be profitably read, as well as studied, in schools, and thus serve to contribute to the variety of reading matter, without any additional expense? And if the teacher after hearing a class read, should propose some of the most important questions suggested by the lesson, would not the practice tend to promote and inculcate geographical knowledge, and be of advantage not merely to those professedly engaged in this study, but to all classes in the school? Formerly the use of this kind of reading book was not uncommon, and many people can well remember the satisfaction they derived from it; but at present the usage seems generally laid aside, and our school geographies, it is believed, are not generally suited to such a design, being printed in too small type, or composed of exercises on the map, with very little descriptive matter.

The few lessons on astronomy, towards the conclusion of this work, were intended only as an introduction to a science, in many respects intimately connected with geography.

That this effort to promote the interests of education, and the cause of youthful knowledge and virtue, may prove successful and acceptable, is the sincere wish of the author.

NATHANIEL G. HUNTINGTON.

Salem Bridge, New Haven County, Conn.

GEOGRAPHY.

PRELIMINARY EXPLANATIONS AND REMARKS.

The following definitions may be reduced to the form of questions by prefixing the words, *what is?* or *what are?* to that part of each definition which is printed in italics.

Geography is a description of the earth and of its productions and inhabitants.

The Earth, in an astronomical view, is one of the seven principal planets which revolve round the sun as a centre, in the following order, Mercury, Venus, the Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, and Herschel.

The form of the earth, is nearly that of a globe or ball.

Some of the proofs that the earth is a round body are these;
1st. It makes a circular shadow upon the moon in an eclipse.
2d. It has actually been sailed round by mariners.

The four cardinal points of compass, are East, West, North, and South.

East is toward the rising sun.

West is toward the setting sun or opposite to East.

South is toward the meridian sun or the sun at noon day.

North is directly opposite to South.

The revolutions or motions of the earth are two, the annual and the diurnal.

Its annual or yearly revolution, is its motion round the sun, performed once in a year.

Its diurnal or daily revolution, is that by which it turns on its own axis, like a wheel, once every 24 hours.

The surface of the earth is the outside of it.

The centre of the earth is the innermost point of it, or that point which is farthest from the surface.

The axis of the earth is an imaginary line passing through its centre from north to south.

The poles of the earth are the extremities of the axis.

The north pole is its northern extremity, or the north point of the globe.

The south pole is its southern extremity, or the south point of the globe.

The diameter of the earth is the distance through its centre.

This distance is about 8000 miles.

The circumference of the earth is the distance around the middle of its surface. *This distance* is about 25,000 miles.

A hemisphere is half of the globe.

Circles of the earth are imaginary lines around its surface.

A great circle is one whose plane divides the earth into two hemispheres or equal parts.

A small circle is one whose plane divides the earth into two unequal parts.

The great circles used in geography are, the equator or equinoctial line, and meridians.

The equator is an imaginary, great circle, extending around the earth from east to west, and dividing it into northern and southern hemispheres. It is at an equal distance from each pole.

Meridians are imaginary great circles, extending around the earth from north to south, cutting the equator at right angles.

The tropics are two small circles, extending around the globe from east to west, one being $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees north of the equator, the other $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees south of it.

The tropic of Cancer, is the northern tropic.

The tropic of Capricorn, is the southern tropic.

The polar circles, are two circles extending around the globe, one at the distance of $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees from the north pole, the other $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees from the south pole.

The arctic circle, is the northern polar circle.

The antarctic, is the southern.

The degrees of a circle, are the equal parts into which it is supposed to be divided.

The number of degrees is 360.

The length of each degree of a great circle, is 60 minutes, which are equal to 60 geographical miles, or $69\frac{1}{4}$ common miles.

The distance of the equator from each pole, is 90 degrees, or about 6250 miles, equal to one fourth of the distance around the globe.

The distance on the earth's surface from one pole to the other, is 180 degrees or 12,500 miles, equal to one half the distance around the globe.

ZONES—LATITUDE—LONGITUDE.

Zones are sections or divisions of the earth's surface formed by the tropics and polar circles.

The number of zones is five, the torrid, the two temperate, and the two frigid zones.

The torrid zone is that part of the earth's surface which is included between the two tropics, and extends $23\frac{1}{2}$ degrees on each side of the equator.

The two temperate zones are those parts of the earth's surface, which are included between the tropics and polar circles, one called the northern temperate, the other, the southern temperate zone.

The two frigid or frozen zones are those parts of the earth's surface which lie within the polar circles, the one around the north pole, the other, around the south pole.

The latitude of any place is its distance from the equator, and it is either north or south latitude.

The longitude of a place, is its distance from any established meridian, and is either east or west longitude.

Parallels of latitude are lines running around the globe from east to west, parallel to the equator. Their use is, to mark the latitude of places.

The number of degrees of latitude is 90, and these degrees are usually marked in figures on the meridian, or on the sides of the map.

The number of degrees of longitude is 180, and they are marked on the equator, or at the top and bottom of the map.

The length of a degree of longitude at the equator, is $69\frac{1}{2}$ miles, but it gradually diminishes between the equator and the poles.

The length of a degree of latitude is in all places $69\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

MAPS.

A map is a picture of any portion of the earth's surface.

An atlas is a collection of maps.

The upper part of a map, is north.

The lower part, is south.

The right hand part, is east.

The left hand part, is west.

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH.

The two principal natural divisions of the earth, are land and water. The water occupies more than two thirds of the surface.

The natural divisions of land, are continents, islands, peninsulas, isthmuses, capes, promontories, mountains, volcanoes, coasts, and shores.

The natural divisions of water, are oceans, seas, archipelagoes, gulfs or bays, straits, channels, sounds, lakes, rivers, firths or friths, harbours, and roads.

LAND.

A continent is a vast tract of land not entirely separated by water.

An island is land entirely surrounded by water.

A peninsula is land almost surrounded by water.

An isthmus is a narrow neck of land joining a peninsula to a neighbouring continent.

A cape is the extremity of a peninsula, or a point of land extending out into the ocean.

A promontory is a mountainous or elevated cape.

A mountain is land distinguished for its great height.

A volcano is a mountain discharging fire and smoke.

A coast is land bordering on the sea.

A shore is land bordering on a sea, lake, or river.

WATER.

An ocean is a vast body of water not separated by land.

A sea is a smaller collection of water connected with an ocean by a strait.

An archipelago is a sea which embraces many islands.

A bay is a portion of the sea extending into the land.

A gulf is a large bay.

A strait is a narrow passage, connecting two large bodies of water.

A channel is a broad strait.

A sound is a shallow strait capable of being sounded with a line.

A lake is a large body of fresh water surrounded by land.

A river is the largest stream of fresh water.

The branches of a river are the smaller streams which run into it.

The source of a river, is the place where it rises.

Its course is the point of compass towards which it flows.

Its mouth is the place where it empties.

A firth, frith, or estuary, is the broad mouth of a river connected with an arm of the sea.

A harbour is a small bay affording anchorage for ships.

A road, is a place where ships may lie at anchor at some distance from the shore.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.

See Map of the World.

Point to the east part of the heavens. Point to the south—to the west—to the north.—Point to the east part of your map—to the west—to the north—to the south. Where is north-east? Ans. It is half way between north and east. Where is south-east? Ans. It is between south and east. Where is south-west? Where is north-west? Point to the north and south poles on the map. Point to the meridians. Are meridians straight lines or circles extending around the globe? Is a meridian a small or a great circle? Why is it a great circle? How many meridians are marked on your map of the eastern hemisphere? How many on that of the western? How many degrees are they apart, according to the figures on the equator? May every place on the globe be supposed to have a meridian passing through it? Point to the equator. Do you consider the equator a straight line, or a circle which extends around the surface of the globe? Is it a small, or a great circle? Why a great circle? How many degrees in the equator? How many in a meridian? How many miles in a degree? How many miles around the globe on the equator? Ans. About 25,000 miles. Is it as many miles around the globe on a meridian as on the equator? Ans. Very nearly; the difference is but small, and what there is, is occasioned by the earth's being a little flattened or depressed at the poles. Into what two hemispheres does the equator divide the globe? Into what two hemispheres does a meridian divide the globe?

Point to the two tropics on the map. What are the tropics? What name is given to each? Is a tropic a great or a small circle? Why is it a small circle? Ans. Because neither of the tropics divides the globe into two equal parts as the equator does. The equator extends around the globe at an equal distance from each pole. But each of the tropics is much nearer to one pole than to the other. How many degrees from the equator is each tropic? What is the distance between the tropics? Ans. 47° —or about 3,260 miles. Is it as far around the globe on the tropics, as on the equator? Ans. It is not; because the earth decreases in circumference from the equator to each pole. Point to the polar circles. What is the name of the northern? Of the southern? How far is each from its nearest pole? Ans. $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$, or 1,630 miles. Point to parallels of latitude on the map. What are parallels of latitude? How many parallels are marked on your map of each hemisphere? How many degrees are they apart, according to the figures marked on the meridian near the sides of the map? How many miles are contained in 10° of latitude? Ans. About 700. May every place be supposed to have a parallel of latitude passing through it? What is the latitude of a place? What is the longitude of a place? From what meridian is longitude usually reckoned? Ans. From the meridian of London or Greenwich. Point to the meridian of London. What places are in east longitude? Ans. Those which lie east of the meridian of London. What places are in west longitude? Ans. Those which lie west of the meridian of London. What places are in north latitude? Ans. Those which lie north of the equator. What places are in south latitude? Ans. Those which lie south of the equator. What latitude have places situated on the equator? Is the tropic of Cancer in north or south latitude? Is the tropic of Capricorn in north or south latitude?

What are zones? How many are there, and what are they called? Point to the torrid zone. Between what two circles is it included? What great circle passes from E. to W. through the middle of it? How many degrees wide is this zone? Point to the two temperate zones. Are they both the same side of the equator? Which of them is in N. lat.? Which in S. lat.? To what degree of N. lat. does the northern temperate zone extend? To what degree of S. lat. does the other extend? What are those two zones which lie beyond the temperate zones, around the poles, called? What circle divides the northern frigid zone from the northern temperate? What circle divides the southern frigid zone from the southern temperate? How many degrees from the arctic or the antarctic circle to the pole? What portion of the surface of the globe is covered with water? What portion is land? What is

CIVILIZATION.

The classes of nations, in respect to knowledge and refinement, are 1st. Savages, 2d. Barbarous tribes, 3d. Half civilized nations, 4th. Civilized or enlightened nations.

Savages are rude tribes, who subsist by hunting and fishing, are clothed in skins and dwell in huts, or in dens and caves of the earth, who are ignorant of the useful arts, roving and lawless in their habits, whose little property is in the common stock of each tribe, and who know nothing of written language or systematic government.

Barbarous tribes are those which are destitute of books and written language, but in some measure acquainted with mechanical arts and implements, and have some systems of government and religious worship. Some barbarous nations live a wandering pastoral life, and lodge in tents; others are more settled in their habitations, and subsist chiefly upon the spontaneous fruits of the earth.

Half civilized nations are such as have a written language, some knowledge of books, considerable skill in the useful arts, and are possessed of political and religious institutions, but their commerce is confined near home, and they are barbarous in many customs, especially in enslaving and confining their women.

Civilized or enlightened nations are such as are, more or less, enlightened and refined by the principles of true science and religion. The females of their community, are treated with politeness and respect. The art of printing, and the arts in general, are understood, and in some nations brought to great perfection. The privileges of a regular government, are appreciated, while foreign commerce and the various important branches of industry and enterprise, are carried on with success.

LANGUAGES.

The number of different languages or dialects in the world, is between 3,000 and 4,000.

The number in Europe, is about 550; *in Asia,* about 1,000; *in Africa,* 275; *in America,* 1,200.

The original languages of the world, are those from which the numerous dialects or branches are derived. *Their number* is about 80.

Alphabetical or written languages, are those which express ideas by means of letters.

Hieroglyphical languages, are those which express ideas by means of pictures, symbols or emblems.

GOVERNMENT.

The three distinct powers or branches of government, are the legislative, the judicial, and the executive.

The legislative power, is that of making laws, and is usually vested in an assembly of men called a legislature, congress or parliament.

The judicial power, is that of judging concerning the import and application of the laws and of administering justice accordingly.

The executive power, is that of executing or enforcing the laws, and is usually vested in one man at the head of the government, called by different names, as king, emperor, duke, president, chief.

The two principal kinds of government, are the monarchical and the republican.

A monarchy, is a government vested in a single person.

An absolute monarchy, is where the monarch claims an absolute right to make his own laws and to rule according to his pleasure.

A despotism, is the worst kind of absolute monarchy.

A limited monarchy, is one in which the sovereign's power is limited or restrained by a constitution or a legislative popular assembly.

A republican government, is one in which the people enjoy the privilege of electing their own rulers.

A confederation or federal republic, is the union of a number of independent states under a general congress, for the purpose of promoting their common welfare.

A kingdom, is a country, whose monarch has the title of king.

A dukedom, is a state under the government of a duke.

An empire, is a region, embracing several countries, whose supreme ruler is styled an emperor.

A patriarchal government, is that of a father over his family and servants, or that of a chief over his tribe.

A sachem, is an Indian chief of North America.

A cazique, is an Indian chief of South America.

A khan, is the head of an Asiatic tribe.

RELIGION.

The four principal forms of religion are Paganism, Mohammedanism, Judaism, and Christianity.

Pagans or heathens, are worshippers of idols, or of false gods.

The pagans of Asia are chiefly worshippers of the idols Brahma, Buddha, Fo and Lama.

The pagans of Africa are principally votaries of Feticism, which consists in the worship of any object whatever, which a person may select for his idol.

Mohammedans are the followers of Mohammed, the false prophet. They hold to the Koran as their sacred book.

The two principal sects of Mohammedans, are the Shiites or the sect of Ali, and the Sonnites or the sect of Omar.

The Jews are the descendants of the twelve patriarchs, and the professed worshippers of Jehovah, but they reject Jesus Christ and his gospel, believe only in the Scriptures of the old testament, and are looking for a Messiah to come.

Christians are believers in Christ as the true Messiah and Redeemer, and receive the scriptures of the old and new testament as the word of God.

The three leading denominations of Christians, are the Eastern Church, Catholics and Protestants.

The principal divisions of the Eastern Church, are the Greek Church, the Copts, Abyssinians, and Armenians, all of which refuse to acknowledge the authority of the Pope of Rome, but are more or less superstitious in their rites, and corrupt in faith and practice.

Roman Catholics are adherents of the Pope, as the head of the Christian Church, and hold to the infallibility of his decisions in matters of religion. Like the Eastern Church, they observe many holy-days and fasts, and are very ceremonious in their forms of worship.

Protestants are those Christians who do not admit the Pope's authority, and profess to regard the bible as the only standard of religious doctrines and duties. Their modes of worship are distinguished for simplicity.

The principal protestant sects are Lutherans, Calvinists, Episcopalians, Presbyterians, Congregationalists, Baptists, Methodists, Moravians or United Brethren, and Friends or Quakers.

INTRODUCTORY OR GENERAL VIEW OF THE GLOBE.

See the Maps of the Hemispheres.

Extent of the globe's surface, 196 millions of square miles. Extent of land, 50 millions. Population of the world, about 800 or 900 millions. Pagans, 500 or 600 millions. Christians, 200 millions. Mohammedans, 100 millions. Jews, 3 or 4 millions.

Which hemisphere appears to contain the most water, the eastern or western? What are the names of the five oceans of the globe? What are the names of the two great continents? Which continent is in the western hemisphere? Which in

the eastern? Why are they called the eastern and western continents? Ans. Because they lie east and west of the meridian of the Ferro Isles, which was anciently considered by geographers the standard meridian in computing longitude. What are the two great divisions of the western continent? What are the three great divisions of the eastern continent? What ocean lies west of America and east of Asia? How wide is the Pacific? Ans. About 10,000 miles. What ocean east of America and west of Europe and Africa? What ocean east of Africa and south of Asia? What ocean around the north pole? What ocean around the south pole? How wide is the Atlantic? Ans. About 3,000 miles. How wide is the Indian ocean? Ans. About the same. Which is most extensive, the northern or the southern oceans? Ans. The latter is ten times as large as the former. Which ocean is about as large as all the other oceans, and about equal in extent to the land on the globe? Ans. The Pacific. Which is the next in extent, and about half as large? Ans. The Atlantic. Which is the next, and about half as large as the Atlantic? Are all the oceans connected, forming in reality but one immense mass of waters?

What is a strait? What strait connects the Pacific with the northern or Arctic ocean? What strait north of New Holland connects the Pacific with the Indian ocean? Ans. Endeavor St. Between what two oceans is the large island of New-Holland situated. Which contains by far the most water, the northern or southern hemisphere? Which is the greater of the two continents? Which extends the farthest south? Which farthest north? Which is the broadest from E. to W.? What cape, at the southern extremity of the western continent? What, at the southern extremity of the eastern? What is the latitude of these two capes? Ans. That of Cape Horn is about 56° , and that of the Cape of Good Hope about 36° . Are they in N. or S. lat.? What great peninsula does Cape Horn terminate? Of what great peninsula is the Cape of Good Hope the termination? How do you know that Africa and S. America are peninsulas? What isthmus unites N. and S. America? What isthmus unites Africa with Asia? What is nearly the difference of latitude between these two isthmuses? What division of the western continent extends farthest towards the east? What division of the eastern continent extends farthest to the west? How near do S. America and Africa approach to each other? Ans. Within about 1,500 miles. How near does N. America approach to Asia? Ans. Within about 40 miles. What strait divides them? Which way is the Cape of Good Hope from Cape Horn? Which way is Europe from S. America? Asia from Europe? Africa from Europe? N. America from Africa? S. America from Asia?

How is the Western Continent bounded? How is the Eastern Continent bounded? What are the five grand divisions of land on the globe? Which is the largest? Ans. Asia. Which is the second largest? Ans. Africa. Which the third? Ans. N. America. Which the fourth? Ans. S. America. Which is the smallest? Which extends farthest E.? Which farthest W.? Which farthest N.? Which farthest S.? How many degrees can you count between S. America and the S. pole? Between Africa and the S. pole? Which of the five grand divisions are in N. lat.? Which one is chiefly in S. lat.? Which one has about a third part in S. lat.? Which two lie chiefly within the tropics? Which part of S. America is in the southern temperate zone? Which part of Africa is in the northern temperate zone? Which division is chiefly within the northern temperate zone? Which two are almost wholly in that zone? Between what two circles is the torrid zone? Between what two, is the northern temperate? Between what two is the southern temperate? What circle bounds the northern frigid zone on the south? What circle bounds the southern frigid zone on the north? What great circle passes through the hottest part of the globe? What parts of the earth are the warmest? Ans. The equatorial, except on the mountains, which are cold in proportion to their height. What parts of the earth are the coldest? Is it as cold around the S. pole, as it is around the N.? Which is the coldest part of S. America? Which two grand divisions of the earth are the warmest?

What are the boundaries of N. America? Of S. America? Of Africa? Of Europe? Of Asia? Are there many gulfs or bays on the western coast of America? What are the principal gulfs or bays on the eastern coast? On which coast of America do most of the great rivers empty? On which coast of America do the longest ranges of mountains extend? What are the names of some of these ranges? What sea between Africa and Europe? What strait connects it with the Atlantic ocean? What sea between Africa and Asia? What strait connects it with the Indian ocean? What two seas between Europe and Asia? What is the difference between a peninsula and a gulf or a bay? What two peninsulas extend into the Indian Ocean? What sea and bay extend up from the Indian ocean into Asia? What important facilities

do the numerous seas, bays, and gulfs on the coasts of Europe and Asia afford? Ans. Facilities for navigation? What seas on the eastern coast of Asia? What seas in the N. of Europe? What gulfs in Europe? Which grand division is most remarkable for lakes? Which for deserts? Which two are distinguished for their immense forests? Which for its vast extent of improveable land, and for its great population? Which contains about one third of the land, and one half of the people, on the globe? Ans. Asia. How much larger is Asia than Africa? Ans. About one third larger. How much larger than N. America? Ans. Nearly twice as large. How much larger than Europe or the island of New Holland? Ans. Five times.

What is the number of inhabitants in the world? Ans. It is usually estimated at not far from 800 or 900 millions. What is the population of Asia? Ans. About 600 millions. Of Europe? Ans. About 215 millions. Of Africa? Ans. About 100 millions. Of all America? Ans. 40 millions. Of all the islands? Ans. Probably about 40 millions. What group of islands is situated between N. America and S. America? When and by whom was America discovered? Ans. In 1492, or about 340 years ago, by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, in Italy. What do you understand by the East Indies? Ans. The eastern and southern coast of Asia with the neighbouring islands in the Pacific, between Asia and New Holland. What are the names of the principal Asiatic or East India isles? Ans. Borneo, Sumatra, Java, Celebes, the Moluccas or Spice islands, and the Manillas or Philippine islands. Point to them on the map. Which of them are intersected by the equator?

Which way from Asia is New Holland, the largest island in the world? How large is it? Ans. As large as Europe, containing about three millions of square miles. What tropic crosses it? What general name is given to New Holland, with the adjacent isles, New Guinea, New Hebrides, New Zealand, New Caledonia, New Ireland, &c.? Ans. Australia or Australasia. Where are the numerous clusters, collectively called Polynesia? Ans. They lie in the Pacific ocean, east of New Holland and the East Indies. What are the most distinguished of them? Ans. The Pelew islands, the Ladrões, the Carolines, and the Sandwich isles N. of the equator, and the Marquesas, Society and Friendly islands, S. of the equator. In what zone do the Polynesian isles chiefly lie? What are the lat. and long. of the Sandwich isles? What is the latitude of the Society Isles? What general name comprehends all these Islands of Polynesia, Australia, and the East Indies? Ans. Oceania. Which way are the Sandwich isles from the United States? From Cape Horn? From New Holland? From the Gulf of Mexico? In what zone are most of the Oceanic isles. What part of Asia lies in the torrid zone? How near to the equator does the southern point of Asia approach? What parts of Africa are not within the tropics? What part of S. America is not within the tropics? What part of North America is in the torrid zone? What portions of Asia, Europe and North America are within or near the frigid zone? Which three grand divisions of the earth, are chiefly within the northern temperate zone? Which grand division takes the highest rank, with respect to learning, the arts, manufactures, commerce, and the various refinements and blessings of civilization? Ans. Europe. Which two, are the most distinguished for the prevalence of idolatry and Mohammedanism? Which is most remarkable for ignorance, sloth and stupid sensuality? Ans. Africa.

NORTH AMERICA.

(Length 4,500 miles—Breadth 2,500—Extent 9,000,000 square miles—Population, 25,000,000—3 per square mile.)

INTRODUCTORY QUESTIONS.

See the Map.

What isthmus constitutes the most southern point of N. America? What island, the most northern point which has been discovered? Ans. Melville island. What island forms the most eastern part? What straits are contiguous to the most north-western part? How near to the equator does N. America approach? Ans. Within about 8° . How far north does it extend? Ans. To about the 80th degree of lat. Between what degrees of long. is it included? Ans. 55° and 170° . How is North America bounded? What is its length? Its average breadth? Its extent in square miles? Its population? What bay and strait divide it from Greenland? What large bay farther S. in the interior? What two straits at the entrance of Hudson's bay? What two smaller bays, included in Hudson's bay? What gulf in the N. E. part of N. America? What river from the lakes runs into it? What strait connects the gulf of St. Lawrence with the Atlantic? What large gulf and sea, between N. and S. America? What group of islands in their vicinity? What long gulf on the S. W.? What seven large lakes in N. America? What cape S. of Greenland? What cape S. of California? What cape near Beering's strait?

What is the great western chain of N. American mountains called? Ans. The Chippewan, Oregon, or Rocky Mountains? With what other mountains are these mountains connected? What name is given to the great eastern chain? Ans. Apalachian, or Allegany. What are the five general divisions of N. America? Ans. British America, Russian America, the United States, Mexico and Guatimala. What are the boundaries of British America? Of Russian America? Of the U. States, in its largest extent of territory? Of Mexico? Of Guatimala? What ocean receives the principal rivers of N. America? Which are the two largest emptying into the western waters? What large river empties into the gulf of Mexico from the N.? What are some of its principal branches? What large river empties into this gulf from the W.? What is the source and what the general course of the Mississippi? Of the Rio Del Norte? Of the Missouri? Of the Arkansas? Of Red river? Of the Ohio? Of the St. Lawrence? What two rivers run into the Arctic ocean? What five, run into Hudson's bay? Is N. America as remarkable for lofty mountains as for noble rivers and lakes? Ans. It is not. The highest peak is mount Elias in Russian America, 18,000 feet high; Mount Washington, a part of the White mountains in New England, is the most elevated of the Apalachian chain, and about 6,000 feet above the level of the sea.

What are the two longest rivers in N. America? Ans. The Mississippi and Missouri, each about 3,000 miles in length. How many others whose length exceeds 1,000 miles? Ans. Six. What is the whole length of the great western range of mountains in N. America? Ans. Not far from 5,000 miles. Which way from the centre of the U. States, is Guatimala? British America? Mexico? Russian America? What is the latitude of the isthmus of Darien? Of the city of N. Orleans? Of Philadelphia? Of the Lake of the Woods? Of cape Farewell? Of Davis' strait? Of Beering's strait? Of Melville island? Which has the coldest climate according to the lat., N. America, or Europe? Ans. N. America. Which coast of N. America is the coldest, the western, or the eastern? Ans. The eastern. Why? Ans. On account of the prevailing winds from the N. W. and N. E.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART FIRST.

SURFACE—CLIMATE—SOIL—PRODUCTIONS— ANIMALS.

North America, in extent, is the third of the grand Divisions of the Globe. It is about one fourth larger than South America, and four times as large as the United States alone. Its principal mountains run north and south, nearly parallel to the coasts of the Pacific and the Atlantic; and its great rivers, in general, flow in an easterly or southerly direction.

It is remarkable, that the interior consists of an immense valley, extending from the gulf of Mexico, on the south, to Hudson's Bay and the Arctic Ocean, on the north; and from the Oregon or Rocky Mountains, on the west, to the Allegany, on the east. This valley, in its southern part, is 1,000 miles wide, and its breadth is greatly increased, as it extends towards the Northern Ocean. It is computed to contain more than four millions of square miles. It embraces, among others, the valley of the St. Lawrence, and the valley of the Mississippi; of which, the former is supposed to be 500,000 square miles in extent, and the latter 1,300,000.

In all this immense central territory, there is no considerable mountain; but the surface, for the most part, is plain, or moderately uneven. The more northern portion abounds in lakes, which are almost all connected with noble rivers. These numerous lakes and rivers, not only serve to water and enrich it, but afford facilities for establishing one continued water communication, from its northern to its southern boundary. This part of the continent is, even now, generally, in a state of nature, being covered towards the north with immense forests, and exhibiting, towards the south-west, prairies, or open plains of vast extent.

North America embraces a great variety of climate and soil. In general, it is colder than countries in the same latitude, on the European continent. In the northern section, beyond the lat. of 50°, the climate is intensely cold, and the soil is, in a great measure, unproductive, or entirely barren. In the southern portion, below the latitude of 30°, the seasons are mild and fruitful, and the productions of a tropical nature. In the middle section, between the latitudes of 30° and 50°, the climate is variable, and subject to extremes, but usually healthful. The length and severity of the winters increase, from the gulf of Mexico, towards the north. The eastern, or Atlantic coast, is

cooler, by several-degrees, than the Pacific, or than the western shores of Europe. Below the gulf of Mexico, snow is seldom seen; and around Hudson's Bay, thunder is rarely or never heard.

The soil, where the climate will allow, is naturally fertile and productive, ready to yield a rich reward to the hand of industry, and capable of sustaining a population of several hundred millions, which, at some future day, may probably be numbered within the limits of this vast territory.

The most important vegetable productions are grass, maize or Indian corn, wheat, rye, oats, barley, hemp, flax, and in the more southern regions, rice, cotton, sugar, tobacco and indigo.—Indeed, the grains and fruits of temperate climes may be raised in the greatest abundance, and a rich variety of those which belong to tropical countries.

New and valuable discoveries in the mineral kingdom, are here made, from year to year. Mines of coal, iron, copper and lead, are numerous and prolific. Gold has recently been found in large quantities, in the southern section of the Alleghany mountains. The gold and silver mines of Mexico have been famous, ever since the discovery of the continent, and are reckoned among the richest in the world.

The wild animals are numerous. The deer, elk, the black, white, and grisly bear, the panther, wolf, and wild cat are found



Herd of Buffaloes.

in the forests of the North and West; while vast companies of bisons or buffaloes, wild horses and sheep, range over the west-

ern prairies and mountains. The Alligator or American crocodile is often seen on the Mississippi, and some southern rivers.)

QUESTIONS.

How does North America rank with the other grand divisions of the globe in extent? How much larger is it than South America? How much larger than the United States alone? What is the direction of its principal mountains? What the general course of its great rivers?

What are the boundaries of the great central North American valley? What is its breadth? Its extent in sq. miles? What two valleys are mentioned as included in it; and how large is each of them? What is the surface of this valley? With what are its lakes connected? What important advantages do these lakes and rivers afford? What is the climate of N. America compared with that of Europe? What is the climate beyond the lat. of 50 degrees? What are the seasons S. of the lat. of 30 degrees? What is the climate in the middle section, between 30 and 50 degrees? What is the soil? What are the most important of the vegetable productions? What are the minerals? What parts are abundant in gold and silver? Mention some of the animals.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART SECOND.

NATIVE INHABITANTS—MONUMENTS OF ANTIQUITY.

The population of North America is composed of the native tribes of Indians, and the descendants of Europeans and Africans. The natives are dispersed over the northern, western, and southern portions of the country. The white, or European inhabitants, are settled chiefly along the Atlantic shore, or by the waters of the Mississippi and the St. Lawrence.

The discoverers of America found here, numerous and powerful tribes of Indians, who, from time immemorial, had held possession of the country, but whose origin and history are involved in great obscurity. They resemble, in several respects, the people of Asia, and hence, there is rational ground for the belief that they originally emigrated from that continent.

The opinion of Dr. Webster, on this subject, is, perhaps, as probable as any, and as well supported by the Mexican traditions and historical paintings. It is, that America remained uninhabited by rational beings, for many centuries after the old continent was extensively peopled and civilized; that the Indians migrated from Tartary on the north-east coast of Asia, and passed over to the north-west coast of America, not far from 2,000 years ago; that their tribes, in succession, moved along the Pacific shore, farther and farther south, till they settled and became very numerous, on the fertile and delightful plains of Mexico;

that they were there invited by the favorableness of the climate, and obliged by the increase of their population, to cultivate the soil, and to improve themselves, to the extent of their knowledge, in the arts of civilized life ; and that from Mexico, in process of time, many tribes emigrated to the north and east, and took possession of the Mississippi valley, and the Atlantic side of the continent.

The tribes of American natives are still numerous, though many of them are very small ; and there is found among them a great variety of languages or dialects ; yet they exhibit a general and very remarkable resemblance to each other, in their personal appearance, and in their character and customs.

The persons of the Indians are usually tall and strait, and their limbs well proportioned and vigorous. They are of a dark copper complexion, with high cheek bones, and long, coarse, black hair, and black eyes. Their constitutions are hardy, and their minds intelligent.

Their condition and character are those of savages, unsubdued and uncivilized, especially those, the more northern and western tribes. They subsist, in part, on maize, which is commonly cultivated by the women, who are accustomed to carry the burdens and perform all the drudgery. The employments of the men are fishing, hunting and war.

They are naturally an indolent race, averse to common labour, and not easily moved to effort and enterprise ; but when thoroughly aroused, as in the chase, or in warlike adventures, their passions are without control, their courage desperate, and they will endure incredible hardships, and perform miracles of mental and bodily exertion. In their public talks, they are distinguished for native eloquence. Under sufferings inflicted by their enemies, they have been remarkable for firmness and fortitude. In friendship, they are constant and faithful ; in hostility and revenge, implacable and unmerciful. They never forget any signal favor or injury, but will retain the remembrance of it through life, and transmit it from generation to generation.

The Indians have generally been found very superstitious, and in many instances, grossly idolatrous ; as in Mexico, where they worshipped the sun and moon, and various idols, and offered human victims in sacrifice. They have some confused ideas of a Supreme Being, called the Great Spirit, and some visionary notions of the immortality of the soul, and of a future Elysium, consisting of rural joys, especially the pleasures of the chase, prepared only for the generous and the brave. They make use, in some instances, of forms of prayer, and are greatly under the influence

of their jugglers and prophets, called "medicine men." They are often very loth to relinquish their native customs ; but there is a savage sternness and gloom settled on the countenances of Indians, indicative of the wants and woes, incident to an unenlightened state. The knowledge and belief of the Christian revelation, can alone enlighten and cheer their hearts, and elevate their condition and prospects.

The number of these Aborigines has, for several ages, been gradually diminishing. There is proof that they were, formerly, far more numerous than at present. Many once powerful tribes have become extinct, and others are on the verge of annihilation. Their common privations and hardships, and frequent bloody wars, together with the deadly diseases and vices, many of which have been borrowed of white men, are causes, which directly tend to their dispersion and extinction.

The relics or monuments of North American antiquity, are numerous and interesting.

They are found all along the great valley, from the lakes to the gulf of Mexico ; sometimes in very elevated situations, as on the high bluffs of the Missouri ; sometimes on the prairies ; but usually on the rich alluvial bottom lands, along the rivers. They consist, in part, of arrow-heads, knives and tomahawks, pestles, mortars, &c. which once belonged to Indians ; also, of English, Roman, and other European coins and medals, which, here and there, have been dug up. In some places, the remains of large furnaces, with numerous kettles, have been found.

There are other antiquities, which are supposed by some to have had their origin from a distinct race of inhabitants, which resided here before the Indians ; such as extensive mounds, or heaps of earth, apparently the remains of large forts, burying places, towns, camps, temples and watch towers. Several of the fortifications appear to have occupied from twenty to forty acres of ground, encircled with walls. Some of the mounds or pyramids are said to be one hundred feet in height, and in many instances, they have been found to contain vast collections of human skeletons.

Near Newark, in Ohio, traces of 1,000 wells are discernible, some of them 20 feet deep. In the vicinity of St. Louis, are more than 200 mounds, of various sizes and descriptions.

These monuments are considered as affording conclusive evidence, at least, of this fact, that North America, and particularly the valley of the Mississippi, like the vales of Mexico, anciently embraced a population far more dense and more civilized, than the unenlightened Indians of modern times.

The first discovery of North America, by Europeans, is ascribed to John and Sebastian Cabot, natives of Venice, but adventurers from Bristol, in England, who discovered, as is supposed, the island of Newfoundland, in 1494, or in 1495. The settlement of Nova Scotia, or the Canadas, was commenced by the French about the year 1540.—The first effectual English settlement in the United States was made at Jamestown, Virginia, 1607.—The conquerors of Mexico were Spaniards.

QUESTIONS.

Of what is the population of North America composed? Over what portions are the Indians dispersed? Where are the whites chiefly settled? What people do the American Indians resemble? Whence is it on this account probable that they emigrated? How many years ago? In what part of N. America did they early settle and become numerous and considerably civilized?

Are the Indians now divided into many tribes? Do they use many dialects? Do they all strikingly resemble each other in their persons and manners? Describe their persons. Describe their condition. Describe their character. What is the general religious character of the Indians? In what country did they worship the Sun and Moon and various idols, and offer human sacrifices? What ideas have they of God and future happiness? What class of men have great influence over them? What effect has their peculiar condition on their countenance? What alone can cheer their hearts and improve their condition and prospect? What causes have contributed to diminish the number of the Indians?

What are some of the monuments of antiquity, found in N. America? Where are these monuments chiefly found? Of what fact do they afford conclusive evidence? When and by what Europeans was N. America first discovered? When, and by whom, was the settlement of Nova Scotia, or the Canadas, commenced? When, where, and by whom, was the first effectual settlement made in the United States? Who were the conquerors of Mexico?



United States Capitol, at Washington.

UNITED STATES.

Extent, 2,000,000 square miles—Population, 14,000,000—7 per square mile.

INTRODUCTORY QUESTIONS.

See the Maps of N. America and the U. States.

To which of the two continents do the U. States belong? To which division of the American continent? In what part of N. America are the U. States? How are they bounded? Are they in N. or in S. lat.? In what zone are they? Between what degrees of lat.? Ans. Between 25 and 49 degrees. Between what degrees of lon. from Washington city? Ans. 10 deg. E., and 50 W. What is the length of the U. States, in a straight line, from Boston, on the Atlantic, to the Pacific Ocean? Ans. About 3,750 miles. What is their breadth, from the Gulf of Mexico to Lake Superior? Ans. About 1,100 miles. What is the length of the Atlantic coast of the United States, and in what direction does it run? Ans. About 1,800 miles, N. E. and S. W. What is the length of the Pacific coast? Ans. About 500 miles. What is the extent of the United States in square miles? Their Population? Their population per square mile?

What five great lakes in the United States? Which is the largest? What is the extent of Lake Superior? Ans. About 40,000 square miles. By what strait is it connected with Lake Huron? Ans. St. Mary's. What strait between Lake Huron and Lake Michigan? What river and small lake between Lake Huron and Lake Erie? Ans. Detroit river and Lake St. Clair? What river and remarkable falls between the Lakes Erie and Ontario? How long is Niagara river? Ans. 36 miles long. How wide at the falls? Ans. One mile. How far does the water fall? Ans. 160 feet. For what are these lakes remarkable? Ans. For the coldness and transparency of their waters, and for their vast depth; the three largest upper lakes being more than 900 feet deep. What is the largest body of fresh water in the world? Ans. Lake Superior. How many rivers does it receive? Ans. 50. How many rivers does Lake

Michigan receive? Ans. 40. What long, narrow lake, between New York and Vermont? What river connects it with the St. Lawrence?

What are the principal bays and sounds on the Atlantic coast? What capes at the mouth of Massachusetts Bay? Where is Cape Malabar? Montauk Point? What capes at the mouth of Delaware bay? What capes at the mouth of Chesapeake Bay? What capes near Pamlico Sound? What three inlets East of North Carolina? Where is Cape Fear? What islands on the coast, south of Cape Fear? Where is Long Island? Nantucket? Martha's Vineyard? Mount Desert Island?

What is the general course of the Atlantic rivers? Ans. Easterly. Mention, in their order, the principal rivers running into the Atlantic, and Long Island Sound, beginning with St. Croix. What large river from the North, empties at the west end of Long Island sound? What large river empties into Delaware Bay? What five large rivers into Chesapeake Bay? What two into Albemarle Sound? What two into Pamlico Sound? What rivers in North and South Carolina empty into the Atlantic? What rivers in Georgia empty into the Atlantic? What rivers in the United States empty into the Gulf of Mexico? What two rivers in the United States are each 3,000 miles in length? What are the principal branches of the Mississippi on the West? What on the East? What rivers, from the United States, run into Lake Superior? Into Lake Michigan and Green Bay? Into Lake Huron? Into Lake Erie? Into Lake Ontario?

What part of the Atlantic coast affords the best harbours? Ans. The north eastern, between Cape Cod and the river St. Croix. What is the character of the harbours generally, south of Cape Cod, and on the Gulf of Mexico? Ans. They are, for the most part, inconvenient and difficult, the mouths of the rivers being obstructed by sand bars and shoals.

When did the English commence the settlement of the United States? Ans. In 1607. How long did the colonies remain under the British Government? Ans. More than 160 years. When did they declare their Independence? Ans. July 4th, 1776. What was the number of the Colonies or States at that time? Ans. 13. What were their names? Ans. New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia.

What is the present number of the States? Ans. 24. Into what four divisions are they usually classed? Ans. 1st. New England, or the Eastern States. 2d. The Middle States. 3d. The Southern, and 4th. The Western States. Which are the six New England States? Ans. Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut. How is New England bounded? What are the boundaries and capital of each of the New England States? Which are the four Middle States? Ans. New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware. How are the Middle States bounded? What are the boundaries and capital of each? Which are the six Southern States? Ans. Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama. How are the Southern States bounded? What are the boundaries and capital of each? Which are the eight Western States? Ans. Louisiana, Mississippi, Tennessee, Kentucky, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Missouri. What are the boundaries and capital of each?

How many organized Territories are included within the limits of the United States? Ans. Three viz. Florida, Arkansas and Michigan. What unorganized Territories? Ans. Missouri and Oregon. What is meant by an organized Territory? Ans. One which is considerably settled by white people, and which possesses a government, regularly organized under the Government of the United States. What are the boundaries of each of these territories?

Where is the District of Columbia? Ans. Between Maryland and Virginia? Of what states was it purchased by the general government? Ans. Maryland and Virginia. What is its extent? Ans. Ten miles square. What metropolis does it contain? Ans. Washington, the seat of government of the United States. What are the boundaries of the District of Huron, and to what territory is it attached? Into what four Districts has the Missouri Territory been divided? Ans. Ozark, lying next west of Arkansas; Osage, west of the State of Missouri; Sioux, north of Missouri and between the Mississippi and Missouri rivers; and Mandan, extending north-westward, along the Missouri river, to its sources.

How are the several states of the Union generally divided? Ans. They are all divided into counties, except Louisiana, whose divisions are called parishes, and

South Carolina, which is divided into districts. How are the counties of New England and of some other states divided? Ans. Into towns or townships.

Which are the 13 Atlantic States? What Territory and states border on the Gulf of Mexico? What state is intersected by the Mississippi and Red river? What district and states border on the east shore of the Mississippi? What divisions border on the western shore? What two states lie on the south side of the Ohio? What three states on the north side? What district borders on the two largest lakes? What Territory is almost surrounded by three lakes? What three states touch on the south east part of Lake Erie? What state touches on the river St. Lawrence?

What portions of the United States are intersected by the parallel of 30 degrees of lat.? What portions are intersected by the parallel of 34 deg.? What by the parallel of 36 deg.? What by the parallel of 38 deg.? What by the parallel of 40 deg.? What parallel intersects Lake Erie, and separates Pennsylvania from New York? What is the lat. of the northern boundary of New York, Vermont, and New Hampshire? To what degree north does Maine extend? How many degrees west from Washington, do Missouri and Arkansas extend? What is the lat. of Washington? Which states lie directly north of Washington? Which north-east? Which east? Which south? Which south-west? Which west, and north-west? What state is farthest from Washington? What is the lat. of New Orleans, and what are its course and distance from Washington? What is the lat. of Savannah? Of Charleston? Of Raleigh and Knoxville? Of Baltimore? Of Philadelphia and Columbus? Of New York and Pittsburg? Of Hartford? Of Albany, Buffalo, and Detroit? Of Boston? Of Portland? Which way is St. Louis from Washington?

What is meant by the capital of any state, or country? What is the seat of government in the United States, and where situated? Where is New York, the largest city in the Union?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART FIRST.

EXTENT—POPULATION—NATURAL DIVISIONS— MOUNTAINS—RIVERS.

The whole territory of the United States comprehends about one fourth part of North America, and not far from one twentieth part of the land of the entire globe. (It is two thirds as large as Europe, but the population, compared with that of Europe, is only about one fifteenth part as numerous.)

The United States are divided by nature into three great sections: } 1st. The Atlantic declivity, comprehending those portions which lie east of the Allegany range of mountains from Maine to Florida. } 2d. The valley of the Mississippi, extending from the Gulf of Mexico to Canada and the great lakes, and from the Allegany mountains, to Mexico and the Rocky or Oregon mountains. } 3d. The plains of Oregon, which reach from the Rocky mountains to the Pacific ocean.

The extent of these three natural sections is estimated as follows: The first, or Atlantic section, contains about 385,000 sq. miles; the Pacific or Oregon section, 300,000 sq. miles; and the middle or Mississippi section, more than 1,300,000 sq. miles. According to this estimate, it appears, that the Atlantic portions constitute less than one fifth of the whole territory of the United

States, and that the Mississippi valley is twice as extensive as the other two sections united.

The Allegany or Apalachian chain of mountains, extends, in a north eastern direction, from Alabama to New York. Indeed, this chain may be supposed to comprehend within its general range, the Catskill mountains of New York, the Green mountains of Vermont, and the White mountains of New Hampshire. Mount Washington, the highest peak of the White mountains, is more than a mile in height, and the most elevated land between the Atlantic ocean and the Rocky mountains. Some of the principal southern ridges of the Alleganies are the Cumberland mountains in Tennessee, the Blue Ridge, the Laurel mountains, and the Peaks of Otter, in Virginia, the last of which are more than half a mile high.

The Rocky or Oregon mountains are 600 or 700 miles from the Pacific ocean. They consist of wide, lofty table lands, crowned with a chain of elevated ridges, whose summits, rising two miles in height, are covered with perpetual snow, and may be seen at the distance of 100 miles.

The lowest line of land in the United States, may be traced from the mouth of the Mississippi river to the mouth of the Ohio, thence up the Ohio to the Wabash, and along the latter river toward Lake Erie.

No region in the world, of equal extent, is so well watered as the United States, by noble lakes and rivers, or more highly favored by nature, with channels for internal commerce or mutual intercourse. Its thousand rivers have been overflowing and enriching the soil for ages. Very many of them are navigable, and are constantly navigated, by an enterprising people, through the most of the year. The Mississippi is usually styled the Father of North American rivers; but this title rather belongs to the Missouri, which is in fact the principal stream, the Mississippi being only its continuation. Considered in this view, the Missouri is nearly 4,500 miles in length, and is, without exception, the longest river in the world.

The Mississippi rises on an elevated plateau or table land, among dreary lakes and marshes, west of Lake Superior, in latitude 48 degrees. Thence it flows about 900 miles to the falls of St. Anthony, where it is precipitated 40 feet in perpendicular descent. From this point, it flows 800 miles to its junction with the Missouri. In this part of its course it is a beautiful stream, half or three fourths of a mile wide, with clear waters and a gentle current. After uniting with the Missouri, its character and motion are materially changed. Its waters become

muddy, and its current very rapid and dangerous. Still the river remains narrow, but is remarkably deep, being on an average, 100 feet in depth for more than 1,000 miles. Its high steep banks of limestone rock, are called bluffs, and the intervals of low, fertile land, between the bluffs and the river, are called river bottoms. From the mouth of the Missouri, to the Gulf of Mexico, it extends about 1,300 miles, and its whole length is not far from 3,000 miles. This river annually overflows its banks to a great extent, especially in its southern part. As it approaches its termination, its waters are divided into various outlets or estuaries, by which it is discharged into the Gulf through a broad region of islands and marshes, styled the Delta of the Mississippi.

The Missouri has its rise in the Rocky mountains, and from numerous sources. It is formed, principally, by the union of three rivers, named Jefferson, Madison, and Gallatin. At a place called the Gates of the Rocky mountains, it has a dark and gloomy passage for more than five miles, through a narrow chasm in the mountains, walled up on both sides, by perpendicular rocks 1,200 feet high. One hundred miles farther down the stream, are the Great Falls of the Missouri, where the river descends 350 feet in the distance of 18 miles. These falls are about 2,500 miles from the confluence with the Mississippi, and are not surpassed in magnitude and grandeur, except by the falls of Niagara.

The Missouri, in other parts of its course, is remarkably free from cataracts; but its current is rapid and furious, and difficult to ascend; and its waters are turbid and muddy. The length of it is considerably greater than that of the Mississippi, and where the two streams unite, the former rolls in twice as large a volume of water, as the latter.

The Arkansas and Red rivers, also, are long and noble streams, rising in the Rocky mountains. They have numerous branches, and convey a mighty mass of waters, which are colored with red earth, and rendered brackish and unpleasant to the taste, by the saline particles collected from the salt plains, through which they pass in their course. The Arkansas is represented as 2,500 miles in length, and the Red river, between 1,500 and 2,000 miles.

The Ohio is formed by the confluence of the Allegany and Monongahela. It flows with a tranquil and majestic current, through a luxuriant and delightful country, 1,000 miles, to the Mississippi. Its banks are variegated and picturesque, being diversified with mountains, hills, and low lands. Its river bottoms, in many parts, are broad and fertile, and naturally covered

with a heavy growth of forest trees. Near Louisville, there are falls or rapids in the stream, for two miles ; but, in general, it is successfully navigated by steam boats, flat boats, and various water craft, which convey to New Orleans the surplus produce of this wealthy region, and return laden with the merchandise of every clime.)

QUESTIONS.

How large a part of N. America and of the land of the entire globe, is comprehended in the United States ? What are its size, and population, compared with those of Europe ? Into what three great sections is the territory of the United States naturally divided ? How large is the Atlantic section, and what portions does it comprehend ? How large is the great valley of the Mississippi, and how bounded ? How large is the Oregon or most western section, and how bounded ?

What is the great eastern chain of mountains in the United States, called ? In what direction and how far do they extend ? What mountains of N. York and N. England is this chain sometimes considered as comprehending ? What are its principal southern ridges ? Which is the highest point of land east of the Mississippi, and how high is it ? What is the great western chain of mountains called ? Describe it. Where may you trace the lowest line of land in the United States ?

Which is, in fact, the principal river in the United States, the Mississippi or the Missouri ? How long might the Missouri properly be said to be ? Where does the Mississippi rise ? How far from its source to the Falls of St. Anthony ? How far, thence, to its union with the Missouri ? Describe its stream before it meets that river ? What is its character after joining the Missouri ? What is the length of its course below this ? How deep is it ? What is said of its floods ? Describe the manner in which it is discharged. Where does the Missouri rise ? By what three streams is it chiefly formed ? Describe its passage through the Gates of the Rocky mountains. How far from this place are the Great Falls ? Describe them. What are the character of its current and the appearance of its waters ?

Where do the Arkansas and Red rivers rise ? What is said of them ? What is their length ? What rivers form the Ohio ? What is its length ? Describe its banks ? Where are its falls ? Describe them. What kind of boats are used on the Ohio ? What is the grand market to which they trade ?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART SECOND.

CLIMATE—SURFACE—SOIL—PRODUCTIONS.

The climate of the United States is very various, according to the different degrees of latitude, and other circumstances. In general, it is several degrees colder than the climate of European countries, in corresponding latitudes. The winters are longer and more severe, and the weather more changeable and subject to extremes. The Western or Pacific coast of the United States, is, however, represented to be much milder than the opposite Atlantic coast on the north-east. The high lands round the more northern lakes, and the elevated table lands, on the skirts of the Oregon mountains, are remarkably cold and dreary. As the interior parts of the Mississippi valley are, in general, more elevated than the Atlantic States in the same latitudes, the winters there are generally two or three degrees colder,

though not accompanied with so copious snows, or such violent north easterly rain storms.

The climate of the United States is, for the most part, highly salubrious, especially that of New England and of the Middle States, and of all the more elevated portions of the country. The most unhealthy parts, are the low alluvial lands, on the margin of the western rivers, and particularly the low grounds of the South, on the Atlantic, and near the Gulf of Mexico, where the heat of summer is sultry and long continued.

Of surface and soil, in the United States, there is almost every variety. (Viewed as a whole, there is probably no region of the globe, of equal extent, better adapted than this, for the sustenance and accommodation of a numerous, healthy, and virtuous people.)

The face of the country in the northern section, is comparatively uneven and rugged, consisting of valleys, hills and mountains. The soil is good, but it requires diligent and laborious cultivation to render it productive. It is peculiarly suited to the raising of stock, the production of butter and cheese, rye, oats, barley, buckwheat, potatoes, flax, apples and pears. Indian corn and garden vegetables are successfully cultivated here, and in all the States.

In the Middle States the land is, in general, more level and smooth, more easily cultivated, and more productive. Wheat is, here, a staple product, as also in Ohio, Maryland, and Virginia.

Along the shores of the Atlantic, from New Jersey to Florida, extends a low sandy plain, nearly barren, except on the borders of the rivers. This sandy region varies in width, from 50 to 100 miles. It generally produces little, except groves of pitch pine, and is hence called the Pine barrens.

Farther west, between the pine barrens and the Allegany mountains, there is a variegated region, moderately hilly, and very fertile, healthy and beautiful. It produces wheat, corn, cotton and tobacco.

The rich low lands of the South, field great quantities of rice. The more tropical portions near the Gulf of Mexico, are suited to the production of sugar-cane, coffee, oranges, lemons, pomegranates and figs.

The valley of the Mississippi, through all its length and breadth, is distinguished for a level or undulating surface, and for a soil of inexhaustible fertility. It embraces hills and vales, deep ravines, extensive marshes, and immense lofty plains; but scarcely any thing deserving the name of a mountain. The most rugged and mountainous part of it, probably, is within the

basin of the Ohio, in the vicinity of the Allegany chain, while the most naked, bleak and barren portions, may be found along the borders of the Oregon or Rocky mountains.)

What is called the Mississippi valley, comprehends all those interior regions of the United States, which are watered by the Mississippi, the Missouri, Arkansas, Red and Ohio rivers, with their numerous branches.) As a general fact, the most luxuriant parts of that wide territory, are the bottom lands, near the rivers; where the fertility of the soil has been increasing from age to age, and is scarcely capable of being exhausted. (The borders of the rivers are crowned with the most stately trees of the native forest: and there, the settlements are becoming the most numerous and flourishing; and there, also, are exhibited the most striking monuments of North American antiquity.

A remarkable contrast exists between the eastern and the western side of the Mississippi valley. (The eastern side, between the Allegany mountains and the Mississippi, is generally clothed by nature, with dense forests, and intersected by rivers comparatively short; while on the western side, are open prairies or grassy fields of vast extent, traversed by many long, majestic rivers, and with very few trees and groves, except on the banks of the streams.

The Upper valley of the Mississippi, (above the mouth of the Missouri,) is remarkable for a level and uniform surface.) It abounds in small lakes and low marshy ground, which are overspread with vast quantities of wild rice, used by Indians and hunters for food; and there are millions of acres here of dry, elevated prairie land, naturally fertile, but destitute of timber, and covered with tall, luxuriant grass, blended with innumerable sun flowers and other flowering weeds and shrubs, which, in summer and autumn, present a scene, not unlike that of an immense flower garden, decorated with plants and blossoms of inconceivable variety and beauty.

In the Lower Mississippi valley, large tracts are inundated, or in the state of perpetual swamps.) There is, however, a great proportion of land of the finest quality, with rich and extensive prairies on the west. But as we approach the Rocky mountains, these prairies are found less and less fertile, till finally they degenerate into lofty, sandy deserts, cold and desolate as the table lands of Central Asia.

The great valley of the Missouri, so far as it has been explored, appears less distinguished for richness of soil. Its fertility is chiefly confined to the land near the rivers. The open, naked plains are almost unbounded; and there is often a great

want of timber and fresh water. Scarcely any tracts can be found in Tartary or Siberia, more dreary and comfortless, than the most remote western portion of this valley, especially in the winter season.

The Ohio valley, though considerably broken, and inclining to be mountainous, contains large tracts of exuberant fertility, and is, by far, the most populous of all the regions of the West, embracing already about three millions of people, or three fourths of the whole population of the Mississippi valley. Still the forests hold possession of the greatest part of the soil. They include a rich variety of trees, of luxuriant growth, and appearing in all the magnificence and beauty, of which the North American woods can boast. The sycamore, the yellow poplar, the magnolia, the catalpa and cypress, are the pride of the Western forests. The walnut, oak, elm, ash, beech and sugar maple, are common and flourishing. The china tree is extensively used for shade and ornament, in the cities and villages of the Southwest and South.

The great Western prairies are, in general, of a deep and rich soil, though, on account of the tightness of the sward, it requires considerable labor to subdue and cultivate them; but they are wonderfully adapted to grazing, and even those of them that are less fertile, would be found capable of supplying pasturage for herds and flocks, almost without number. It is calculated that more than three fourths of the whole valley of the Mississippi, is naturally susceptible of cultivation; that it contains at least 640 millions of acres of profitable land; and that eight millions of families might there be furnished with good farms of eighty acres each.

QUESTIONS.

What is the climate of the United States? How is it compared with that of Europe? Which coast is the coldest, the Pacific, or the Atlantic? What parts of the United States are the most healthy? What parts are most sickly? What is the general character of the surface and soil in the United States? What is the face of the country in the northern section? What is the general character of the soil? To what is it best suited? What is the character of the surface and soil in the Middle States? Describe the country near the Atlantic between New Jersey and Florida. Describe the country between the Pine Barrens and the Allegany mountains? What are some of its productions? What are the productions of the lowlands? What of the lands near the Gulf? For what kind of surface and soil is the valley of the Mississippi distinguished? Which are some of the most mountainous parts of it? Which are the most bleak and barren? What are its great rivers? What parts of the valley are the most luxuriant and crowned with the most stately trees?

What contrast is there between the east and west side of the Mississippi valley? For what kind of surface is the upper valley of the Mississippi remarkable? In what does it abound? What is said of the elevated prairies? Describe the Lower valley of the Mississippi. The Missouri valley. The Ohio Valley. What is its population? With what is the greatest part of the soil still covered? What trees do they include? What is the character of the soil of the Western prairies? How many millions of acres of good land, is the whole Mississippi valley computed to contain?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART THIRD.

CLASSES OF INHABITANTS—WHITES—
NEGROES—INDIANS.

The population of the United States, is more than four times as great, as at the period of their Declaration of Independence, 56 years ago. It embraces three general classes of inhabitants. 1st. The Whites, who are of European origin; 2d. Negroes of African descent, and, 3d. Indians or Aborigines. The white population, according to the census of 1830, amounted to about 10,526,000, of whom more than 5,900,000 were under 20 years of age. They are generally of English extraction, but embrace many Irish, Scotch, Dutch, Germans, French, Spanish, and other Europeans.

The Irish are a numerous, active, and hardy people, and are dispersed over the Union. The Dutch and Germans are industrious, thriving farmers, most numerous, the former, in New York, the latter in Pennsylvania. The French, a quiet and inoffensive people, are found in great numbers in Louisiana, and the Spanish in Florida, speaking their native languages.

The colored inhabitants of the United States, are an unfortunate people, in number about 2,329,000, of whom 2,009,000 are slaves, in the possession of the planters of the south and southwest. They are, for the most part, descendants of slaves imported into this country, before the year 1808, when this inhuman traffic was abolished, by an act of the General Government.

The holding of slaves is allowed by law in all the Southern States, except Maryland, and in all the Western, except Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois. In South Carolina and Louisiana, the slaves constitute more than half of the whole population; in Virginia, Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, more than a third. Many of the slaves are treated by their owners with a good degree of kindness and humanity, and often contented and cheerful, though in a state of lamentable ignorance.

It would seem to be a dictate of true wisdom and benevolence, to provide more effectually for their instruction, as well as to make all reasonable exertions, to improve the character and condition of the free people of color throughout the Union. For the benefit of our African population, the American Colonization Society was established, by whose laudable efforts, a Colony for free blacks has been founded at Liberia, on the west coast of Africa, to which two or three thousand colored people, from

this country, have already emigrated, and where they have been placed, in a respectable and promising situation.

The number of Indians within the territory of the United States, is estimated at about 300,000 or 400,000; of which more than 200,000 are thought to be contained in the valley of the Mississippi, and belong to fifty or sixty different tribes. In regard to the number and character of the natives in the Territory of Oregon, little is known; it is supposed they may amount to 80,000 or 100,000. The most of the native tribes in the country still remain in their original state of savages, and are allowed to retain their lands and their independence, and to regulate themselves by their own laws and customs, so far as they conduct peaceably towards the government of the United States.

The tribes, best known to the whites, and most civilized, are the Cherokees, Choctaws, Chickasaws, Creeks, and Seminoles, still residing within the limits of Tennessee, North Carolina, Mississippi, Alabama, Georgia, and Florida. Their number is about 50,000. The number of the Creeks is 20,000; of the Choctaws, 12,000, and of the Cherokees, 11,000. Many from these tribes have already removed, and others are expected soon to remove, to the other side of the Mississippi, to the regions west of Arkansas and Missouri, where the general go-



Interview between the President, Black Hawk, and the Prophet.

vernment has purchased 100 millions of acres for their accommodation. The tribes above named, except the Cherokees, have already sold to the United States their native lands, and are

contemplating a general removal. The Cherokees have made very considerable advances in civilization, are connected with the whites, and resemble them in their dress and modes of living. Many among them are men of learning and wealth, and are friendly to literary and Christian institutions. The remnants of Indian tribes in Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois, have, nearly all, exchanged their lands in those states, for other lands on the west of the Mississippi, to which they are preparing to emigrate.

Some of the most noted tribes beyond that river, are the Sioux, Osages, Pawnees, Ricarees and Mandans. Of these, the Sioux are the predominant tribe. Their number is estimated at about 25,000, and they are remarkably ferocious and warlike. They often sally forth in their savage excursions, like wild Arabs, and are a common terror among the more peaceable, or less powerful tribes. The Pawnees are of similar character. Many of the Western Indians, in their excursions, are mounted on wild horses, taken from the immense herds, which range over the prairies in those regions.

QUESTIONS.

How much larger is the pop. of the United States, now, than it was 56 years ago? Of what three classes is the pop. composed? What is the number of Whites? Of what descent are they, generally? What is said of the Irish? Of the Dutch and Germans? In what parts of the United States, are the French and Spanish numerous?

What is the number of colored people in the Union? How many of them are slaves? In what states is slavery allowed? In what states are the pop. more than half slaves? In which are they more than a third? What is the treatment and condition of the slaves? What society has been established for the benefit of the people of color? What Colony has been established for them?

How many Indians in the United States? How many in the valley of the Mississippi? How many in Oregon? Which tribes, in the United States, are the most civilized, and what is their place of residence and number? How many Creeks? Choctaws? Cherokees? To what parts, have many from these tribes, removed? Describe the Cherokees. What noted tribes are there west of the Mississippi? Which is the most powerful?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART FOURTH.

OCCUPATIONS—AGRICULTURE—MANUFACTURES—COMMERCE—EDUCATION—COLLEGES—SCHOOLS.

The most common interests and pursuits of the people of the United States, are agricultural.

The cultivators of the soil, in the North are called farmers, in the South planters. The farms in the Northern States, are usually not large; and to the cultivation of them, the owners are obliged to apply their personal and assiduous labors. The

Southern plantations generally consist of larger tracts of land, and are cultivated almost entirely by the labor of slaves. The people of the South are engaged, chiefly, in agricultural pursuits. Their active commerce is comparatively limited, for the want of good harbors; and they have but few large manufacturing establishments, on account of the small number of their ingenious mechanical laborers. Such is the ignorance of the slaves, that they can be more profitably employed in raising crops, than in curious manufacturing employments.

The people of the West, not only cultivate the soil on a large scale, and raise vast quantities of live stock, but some among them are enterprising and flourishing manufacturers. Others, exhibit a remarkably active and adventurous spirit, as traders and merchants. In many instances, the farmer and the trader are blended in one and the same person. He raises large quantities of wheat, corn, rye, oats, apples, beef, pork, &c. Going on board of a boat, with his property, he proceeds to some profitable market; perhaps to New Orleans, by way of the Ohio and the Mississippi, or to New York, by way of the lakes and the Erie canal. Or, if he has much live stock to dispose of, as hogs, sheep, cattle, and horses, he cheerfully undertakes the charge of them, over the Allegany mountains, it may be five or six hundred miles, to some of the Atlantic or Eastern towns.

With men of the Western genius and education, long journeys and voyages, in the pursuit of business and wealth, are very common; being inured to hardship from childhood, they are little daunted, when called to great undertakings, privations, and fatigues. Their time is chiefly employed, and their characteristic energies developed, in subduing the forests, in erecting log cabins or more comfortable dwellings, in fencing and cultivating the soil, taking care of their crops and cattle, going and returning from distant markets, excavating canals, building steam boats, and other vessels, clearing out and navigating the rivers, climbing the rocks and mountains, and penetrating into exhaustless mines of coal, iron, and lead. Others, in the characters of hunters and trappers, make a business of entrapping the beaver, and pursuing the fox, deer, and buffalo, to procure skins and furs for the fur traders.

Manufactures and commerce, in our country, are extensively flourishing, and increasing in interest, especially in the middle and northern sections. The United States are the second commercial nation in the world; and almost all the arts, sciences, and branches of enterprise, common in enlightened and Christian countries, are here, to a great extent, diligently and successfully pursued:

The privileges of common education and of religious instruction, are the most extensively enjoyed, in New York and New England. In New York, Connecticut, Massachusetts, and Maine, the pupils in common schools, constitute about one fourth of the whole population. In New England, at large, they are estimated at one fifth. In Pennsylvania and New Jersey, at one eighth ; and in Illinois, at only one thirteenth.

The number of colleges in the United States is not far from 60, of which the two most venerable are Harvard University at



Harvard University.

Cambridge, and Yale College at New Haven. The former has been founded nearly two hundred years, and has educated about 5,685 individuals. The latter, has been founded 132 years, and has educated 4,600 individuals. Other American colleges are highly respectable and flourishing. They are exerting, in co-operation with many academies, and more than 20 Theological seminaries, an extensive and happy influence upon the literary and religious interests of the Union.

The whole number of undergraduates or academical students now in the United States, is estimated at 3,475, besides about 700 students in Theology, and 2,000 in Medicine. Massachusetts excels all the other states, in the number of academical and other students, having about one student to 792 inhabitants ; Connecticut has one to 960 ; New England, in general, has one to 1,120. The Middle States have one student to 1,850 inhabitants ; the Southern States, one to 2,600 ; the Western States, one to 3,500 ; and the United States, on an average, one to 2,000.

Literature and the Arts are by no means so richly patronised, in this country, as in Europe; nor are our opportunities so favorable, for profound scientific research. The number of the literati, or men of professed erudition and philosophy, who spend life in the mere pursuits of learning, is comparatively small. But the great body of the people, are far more enlightened, better informed, and enjoy more perfectly the privileges of common school instruction, than in any of the European nations.

In many portions of our community, an adult person, unable to read, is viewed as a rare and strange object, exciting curiosity and compassion. And so liberal and wide is the circulation of newspapers, tracts, almanacs, and literary periodicals, and so numerous the libraries, adapted to every age and capacity, that, with the exception of the new settlements, there is scarcely any want of books to peruse, or any deficiency in the means of popular information. That a free people, in order to retain their freedom, should be distinguished for enlightened minds and virtuous habits, is a principle, more generally felt, inculcated and acted on, in this, than in any other nation on the globe. Still, there is room for continually progressing improvements, and full scope for all the exertions of the wise and benevolent, in disseminating the seeds of knowledge and true religion. There are now, in the valley of the Mississippi, 30 colleges and 10 Theological seminaries in operation, and about 300 newspapers published weekly. More than 700 are published in the Atlantic States.

QUESTIONS.

What is the most common occupation of the people of the United States? What is said of the farms in the Northern States? What of the Southern plantations? Why is commerce not so flourishing in the Southern States? Why are their manufactures less? What is the business of the people of the West? What are some of the products of their farms? Whither do they often go to market? How can they get to New Orleans? In what two or three ways can they go to New York with produce? In what parts of the Union are manufactures and commerce most flourishing?

•In what parts are the blessings of common education most enjoyed? What is the number of pupils in school, compared with the whole population, in N. York, Conn. Massachusetts, and Maine? In N. England? In Pennsylvania? In Illinois? About what number of colleges in the United States, and which two are the oldest? What is said of Harvard University? Of Yale College? How many collegiate or academical students in the United States? Which state gives a liberal education to the greatest proportion of her population? What is the proportion in Conn.? What in New England? What in the Middle States? What in the Southern? What in the Western? What in the United States at large? Is literature as well patronised in this country as it is in Europe? Is the number of very learned men as large in the United States as in Europe? What class of people are far better educated and more informed than in Europe? What is peculiarly necessary to enable a free people to retain their liberties?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

.PART FIFTH.

GOVERNMENT—MINT—POST OFFICES—NAVY.

The form of Government in the United States, is a Federal Republic. Each State in the Union is at liberty to make laws relative to its own local or peculiar interests; at the same time all the States are confederated together, in the adoption of one general Constitution or Government, with a view to the defence and prosperity of the Union at large. Each State Government consists of a Governor, and Lieutenant Governor, a Senate and House of Representatives, all elected by the people.

The Constitution of the United States, is the plan of the General Government. It has been approved by the several States and they have all pledged themselves, to abide by its rules. The leading branches of the General Government are three 1st. The Legislative branch, or Congress, consisting of a Senate and House of Representatives.



The Senate of the United States.

The Senate now embraces 48 members, being composed of two members from each State, chosen for the term of six years, by the several State Legislatures. The House of Representatives, consists of members, chosen by the people, for two years; each State being entitled to send one representative for every 47,700 of its population. In the slave-holding States, however, only three fifths of the slave population are reckoned with the whites.

2d. The Executive Department, consisting of a President and Vice President, chosen for the term of four years; with four Secretaries, called Heads of Departments, appointed by the President as his Council, viz. the Secretary of State, of War, of the Navy, and of the Treasury. The President and Vice President are chosen by electors appointed by the people in the several States. 3d. The Judiciary, or Supreme Court, consisting of a Chief Justice and six Associate Judges, all appointed by the President, with the consent of the Senate; and of other inferior courts.

To Congress, is assigned the power of making the laws; to the President, the power of executing them; and to the Judiciary, the duty of explaining and applying them in doubtful cases. The Vice President is President of the Senate. Congress assembles annually, on the first Monday of December, at the city of Washington, in an edifice called the Capitol.

The present number of members, in the House of Representatives, is 240. The State of New York is entitled to send 40 members; Pennsylvania, 28; Virginia, 21; Ohio, 19; North Carolina, Tennessee, and Kentucky, each 13; Massachusetts, 12; South Carolina and Georgia, each 9; Maine and Maryland, 8; Indiana, 7; Connecticut and New Jersey, each 6; Vermont, New Hampshire, and Alabama, each 5.

The Mint of the United States, or the national establishment for coining money, is located at Philadelphia. Within the year 1831, it produced more than 11,792,000 pieces of coin, in gold, silver, and copper, amounting in value to above 3,923,000 dollars. Of the gold coined that year, 518,000 dollars were received from the gold region of the United States, chiefly from North Carolina and Georgia.

The number of Post Offices in the Union is more than 9,000.

The naval force consists of 51 vessels; 12 of which are ships of the line, containing 74 guns each, and 14 frigates of 44 guns each. The regular army, compared with the whole population, is not more than one to about 5,000.

QUESTIONS.

In what parts are the blessings of common education most enjoyed? What is the number of pupils in school, compared with the whole population, in New York, Connecticut, Massachusetts, and Maine? In New England? In Pennsylvania? In Illinois? About what number of colleges in the United States, and which two are the oldest? What is said of Harvard University? Of Yale College? How many collegiate or academical students in the United States? Which state gives a liberal education to the greatest proportion of her population? What is the proportion in Connecticut? What in New England? What in the Middle States? What in the Southern? What in the Western? What in the United States at large? Is literature as well patronized in this country as it is in Europe? Is the number of very learned men as large in the United States as in Europe? What class of people are far better educated and more informed than in Europe? What is peculiarly necessary to enable a free people to retain their liberties?

When and where does Congress assemble? What number of members in the House of Representatives? How many members may the State of New York send to that body? How many Pennsylvania? Virginia? Ohio? What three states send 13 each? What one sends 12? How many may Connecticut and New Jersey send?

What is meant by the Mint of the United States? Where is it located, and how much money was coined there in 1831? What is the number of post offices in the Union? How many miles is the mail transported? Ans. 23 millions. Of what number of vessels does the naval force consist? What is the proportion of the army to the whole population?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION, CONCLUDED.

RELIGION.

The people of the United States, are generally Protestants; though it is estimated that the Roman Catholic population now amounts to 800,000, and their churches to 785. The most numerous Protestant sects are the Calvinistic Baptists, the Methodists, Presbyterians, Orthodox Congregationalists, Episcopalians, Dutch Reformed, German Reformed, Evangelical Lutherans, and Friends or Quakers. These, and other denominations which might be specified, are considered Evangelical in their leading sentiments. Their differences of opinion relate chiefly to the subject of ecclesiastical government, or to some of the outward forms and rites, or less essential truths, of revealed religion.

The Baptists consider the baptism of infants unscriptural. They baptize only professed believers, and in the mode of immersion or plunging. They are found in all parts of the Union, but the greater half is, in the Southern and Western States. The Baptist population is estimated at about 2,744,000, embracing more than 5,000 churches, 3,000 ministers, and 385,000 communicants.

The Methodist population is computed at 2,600,000, including 2,200 ministers, and 550,000 communicants, the greater proportion being in the Southern and Western States.

The Presbyterian population may be reckoned at 2,300,000, including 2,160 ministers, 3,475 churches, and 240,300 members, under the superintendence of Presbyteries or Ecclesiastical Councils. They are principally in the Middle, Southern and Western States.

The Congregationalists hold that every church has a right to govern itself, according to the rules of the gospel, and is not bound, unless by consent, to submit to the decisions of general councils. In this respect chiefly, they profess to differ from Presbyterians. The Congregational population is estimated at 1,260,000; their churches at 1,380; their ministers at 1,000; their communicants at 140,000. They are most numerous in New England.

The Episcopalians resemble in sentiment the Established Church of England. They have in the United States, 13 bishops, 600 ministers, 922 churches, located generally in the Atlantic States and in Ohio.

The Friends or Quakers have between 400 and 500 churches, chiefly in Pennsylvania and other Middle States.

The number of Evangelical churches in the United States, may be not far from 15,000, embracing 10,000 ministers, and 1,500,000 members or communicants. About three fourths of the whole population are represented as belonging either to the Baptist, Methodist, Presbyterian, Congregational, or Episcopal persuasion. All religious denominations are freely tolerated, and may enjoy true liberty of conscience.

The moral and religious character of the American people, will bear comparison with that of any other nation on the globe; yet how low and defective is it, when compared with the purity of the gospel standard, or the solemnity of Christian obligations and vows! A wide field is opening in this country for errors and vices of every name, and these, in many districts, exhibit a highly luxuriant growth, polluting the land, and alarming the fears of every true patriot, and virtuous citizen. Much intellectual and moral darkness is still to be deplored, and there is, in many parts, especially in the more recent settlements, a great destitution of the mere outward privileges of Christianity. At least five millions of the population of the United States, are represented as not enjoying the stated labors of the Gospel ministry, and it is computed that more than 5,000 ministers are needed, to supply this deficiency. There is also an extensive want of bibles, schools, and competent teachers. A multitude of adults may be found, unable to read a bible, if they had one, and there are many thousands of children and youth, who know nothing of the first principles of learning or virtue.

But to check the prevalence of these evils, the friends of truth and humanity in America, have done much. They are setting noble examples to the world, of united and benevolent exertion. Within 20 years past, several national societies, of this character, have arisen, which stand as eternal monuments of American Christian philanthropy, and of the fixed purpose of Heaven, to smile on every sincere and faithful effort of man, to bless and save his fellow-man.

QUESTIONS.

Of what religion are the people of the U. States generally? How many Catholic inhabitants and churches are there? What are the most numerous Protestant sects?

In what parts of the Union are the Baptists found? In what parts are the Methodists? Where are the Presbyterians chiefly located? Where are the Congregationalists most numerous? Where are the Episcopalians chiefly located? Where the Friends or Quakers? Do the people of this country enjoy free toleration on the subject of religion?

NEW ENGLAND.

MAINE, NEW HAMPSHIRE, VERMONT, MASSACHUSETTS, RHODE ISLAND, CONNECTICUT.



Scene in Maine.

MAINE.

Extent, 32,000 square miles—Pop. 400,000—12 per sq. mile.

The state of Maine has an extensive territory, being about as large as the rest of New England, and nearly equal to half of Virginia, the largest state in the Union. It is a mountainous, or hilly country, moist and cold, and not very fertile, especially on the coast. The soil is best adapted to grass, grain, and flax.

That part of the State which lies on the Kennebeck river, or between the Kennebeck and the Penobscot, is the richest and most populous. The inhabitants are chiefly settled in the southern half of the state. The northern half remains principally covered with forests.

Maine is divided into 10 counties, which are subdivided into about 300 towns.

Portland, on Casco Bay, is by far the first town, in population, wealth, and commerce. It has an excellent harbor, and a popu-

lation of about 12,500. Augusta, on the Kennebeck, is now the seat of government. Population 4,000. Besides which, there are ten towns, containing between 3,000 and 4,000 inhabitants, viz.: Thomaston, Belfast, Bath, Brunswick, Berwick, York, Hallowell, Saco, Gardiner, and Waldoborough.

The interests, enterprise, and industry of the people, are peculiarly commercial, while agriculture and manufactures are, in a measure, neglected. Their great extent of sea coast, and numerous bays and rivers, afford many excellent harbors, and peculiar facilities for navigation. Their extensive forests abound in timber and lumber, and the waters on or near their coasts, afford large quantities of fish, so that their shipping is principally employed in the lumber trade, and the fisheries.

The state of literature, and of common education, is respectable and encouraging. Public schools are encouraged and provided for by law. At Brunswick, is Bowdoin College, a growing institution. It is connected with a medical school. At Waterville, is a College, under the care of the Baptists, and at Readfield, the Maine Wesleyan Seminary. At Bangor is a Theological institution. The Baptists, Methodists, and Congregationalists, are the prevailing religious denominations.

Maine was formerly a district connected with Massachusetts, from which it was separated, and admitted as a state into the Union, in 1820.

QUESTIONS.

To be answered from the Map of New England, and from the above description.

How is New England bounded? What States does it comprise? What are its principal rivers? In what part of New England is Maine? What is its extent in square miles? How many acres are contained in one square mile? Ans. 640. What is the number of its inhabitants, counties and towns? What is its extent compared with the rest of New England? In what direction is Maine from Lower Canada? From New Brunswick? From the Atlantic Ocean? From New Hampshire? What two principal bays on its coast? What five rivers flow from it, into the Atlantic? What river in the northern part runs into New Brunswick? What river partly divides it from New Brunswick? What river near the south west line, running into New Hampshire? What lakes in Maine?

What is the general character of the country? To what is the soil best adapted? What part of the state is the most fertile and populous? In which half of the state are the people chiefly settled? What is the chief town? Where situated? Describe it. What and where is the new capital? What five counties on the sea coast? What one in the northern part of the state? What on the East? What on the west and north west? What in the middle? What is the shire town of each county? What and where are some of the ten towns whose population is between 3,000 and 4,000? What is said of the enterprise and industry of the people? What facilities for navigation have they? In what is the shipping principally employed? What is the state of learning? What college at Brunswick? At Waterville? At Readfield? What Theological institution? What religious denominations in Maine? To what state was Maine formerly attached? When was it made an independent State?



Harvesting in New England.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

Extent, 9,000 square miles—Pop. 270,000—30 per sq. mile.

New Hampshire is less than one third as large as Maine, but more extensively settled. It is probably the most broken and mountainous of all the United States. It embraces many lofty summits, particularly the White Mountains, whose highest peak, Mount Washington, is the most elevated land in the Union, east of the Mississippi river. The climate is cold, but healthful. Much of the state is still covered with forests, and considerable portions are so rugged and rocky as to be uninhabitable. Yet there are many tracts of rich meadow and grazing land, especially upon the banks of the principal rivers and their branches.

The people are industrious and moral. Their principal business is grazing. Large numbers of great and small cattle are here produced for the Boston market. Manufactures and commerce are not extensively flourishing. This state has but little sea coast. It is divided into eight counties, containing 230 towns.

Portsmouth is the principal town, and has the only harbor, but it is one of the best on the Atlantic. It is open and free from ice at all seasons. Pop. 8,000. Concord, on the Merrimack, is the capital, a pleasant and flourishing town, conveniently situated for trade with Boston, by means of the river and

the Middlesex canal. Pop. nearly 4,000. Dover is a flourishing manufacturing town, with a pop. of about 5,500. Gilmanton and Somersworth each contain more than 3,000 inhabitants.

At Hanover, on Connecticut river, is Dartmouth College, highly venerable among the colleges of New England; and at Exeter, is Philips Academy, a respectable and flourishing institution. There are several other flourishing academies. Their whole number is about 30. Education in common schools is liberally encouraged.

The first settlers of this state were chiefly emigrants, from Massachusetts, who settled at Portsmouth and Dover 1623, about three years after the first landing of the pilgrims at Plymouth. The principal religious sects are Congregationalists, Baptists, Freewill Baptists, and Methodists.



Winter Scene in New England.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of New Hampshire? How many square miles, counties, towns, and people, does it contain? What are the names of the counties and county towns? What are its lakes? What river divides it from Vermont? What two rivers on the north rise in the White mountains, and run into Maine? What river runs south into Massachusetts? What river belongs exclusively to New Hampshire?

What kind of surface has this state? What celebrated mountains, a mile high? Which is the highest peak? What is the climate? Where are the rich meadows and grazing lands? What is the general character of the people? What is their principal business? To what market do they send great numbers of cattle? What is the state of their manufactures and commerce? What part of this state touches on the sea? What is the chief town and only sea port? At the mouth of what river? What is the capital? What is the population of Dover? Of Gilmanton and Somersworth? Where is Hanover, and what venerable college does it contain? Where is Exeter, and what academy is in it? Who were the first settlers of New Hampshire, and when and where did they settle? What are the principal religious sects?

VERMONT.

Extent, 10,000 square miles—Pop. 280,000—28 per sq. mile.

Vermont derives its name from the Green mountains, which extend through the state from north to south, dividing it into the eastern and western declivities, and which also continue their range through the western parts of Massachusetts and Connecticut, terminating on Long Island Sound, at New Haven.

This state is divided into 13 counties, containing about 250 towns, generally small, the largest of them embracing a population of less than 4,000.

It has an uneven surface, with varied and romantic scenery, being greatly diversified with hills and valleys, and watered by numerous streams, which not only enrich the soil, but afford abundant water privileges, for mill seats and manufacturing establishments. The climate is cold and snowy in winter, but pleasant and fruitful in the summer season. The soil in general has a good degree of fertility, and is peculiarly suited to pasturage. The middle portions of the state are elevated. The rivers descend from the mountains easterly toward the Connecticut, and westerly toward Lake Champlain.

The five largest towns containing between 3,000 and 4,000 inhabitants, are Burlington, Middlebury, Bennington, Windsor, and Woodstock. Montpelier, the capital, is situated near the centre in a beautiful valley, encircled by mountains. Population 2,000. Burlington has a delightful situation on Lake Champlain, and is distinguished for trade, manufactures, and a flourishing university. Middlebury on the Otter Creek, is celebrated for its college, for its numerous mills and manufactories, and for a quarry of fine marble. Bennington, 37 miles north east of Albany, is one of the oldest towns in Vermont, and noted as the scene of a decided victory gained by the Americans, under General Stark, over a detachment from Burgoyne's army, in 1777. Windsor, Rutland, Vergennes, Brattleborough and St. Albans, are also respectable and flourishing towns.

The people of this state, are distinguished for their activity and hardihood. Under their hands, the forests are fast disappearing, and agriculture and manufactures flourish. Their trade and prosperity have been greatly increased since the completion of the Champlain canal. Their land produces considerable wheat, rye and barley, and they raise many fine cattle and horses. Vermont also abounds in copperas, iron ore of an excellent

quality, and marble. The trade is chiefly to New York, Boston, Hartford, Portland, and Montreal.

Literature is encouraged. Academies and schools are in a prosperous state. There are about 35 academies and high schools, and 2,400 district schools. The college at Middlebury, and the University of Vermont at Burlington, are respectable and useful institutions. The former is connected with a Medical school at Castleton.

The principal religious sects are Congregationalists, Baptists, and Methodists.

This state has been settled chiefly by emigrants from New England, since the French war, in the year 1760.

QUESTIONS.

How is Vermont bounded? To what latitude does it extend on the north? What long lake borders it on the north west? What small lake on the north? What river divides it from New Hampshire? What are its extent and population? The number of its counties and towns?

What mountains give name to this state, and how do they run? What five counties west of the Green mountains, and what is the principal town in each? What five counties on the Connecticut river, and what is the principal town in each? Where are Orleans and Washington counties, and what are their principal towns?

Describe the surface and scenery of Vermont? What is the climate? What is the character of the soil? What four rivers run into Lake Champlain? What rivers into the Connecticut? What five towns contain between 3,000 and 4,000 people, and where are they situated? Which is the largest and most commercial town, and on what lake? Which is the oldest town, and in which corner of the state? Which is the capital? Describe it? Where is Middlebury? For what is it celebrated? On what river are Rutland and Vergennes? Where are Windsor, Brattleborough, and St. Albans? For what are the people of Vermont distinguished? What are some of the effects of their industry? What canal has tended to increase their prosperity? Mention some of the productions of their land. What stock do they raise? In what minerals does this state abound? With what places is its principal trade? What is the state of learning? How many academies in the state? How many district schools? What college and what university? With what medical school is Middlebury College connected? What are the principal religious sects? When and by whom has this state been chiefly settled?



View of the City Hall, Boston.

MASSACHUSETTS.

Extent, 7,500 square miles—Pop. 610,000—80 per sq. mile.

Massachusetts is one of the oldest, wealthiest, and most thickly settled states in the Union. No one of the states is more distinguished for the intelligence, industry, and prosperous enterprise of the people, in agriculture, manufactures, commerce and fisheries.

It is divided into 14 counties and 308 towns.

The surface on the sea coast is generally level; the interior is pleasantly diversified with hills and vales, and the western parts are mountainous. The climate is healthy, though at some seasons the coast is exposed to a chilling moisture from the influence of easterly winds. There are tracts of land near the sea, which are sandy, stony, and unproductive; but the soil, in general, is good, both for pasturage and tillage, and as skilfully cultivated and improved as any portion of the Union. The lands on the banks of the Connecticut, and other streams, are incomparably rich and beautiful.

The chief products of agriculture, are grass, indian corn, rye, oats, barley, buck wheat, beef, pork, butter, cheese, &c. The state abounds in granite, a species of building stone, and in quarries of fine marble. The manufactures are numerous and very flourishing. The sea-ports are furnished with fine harbors, and the people are extensively engaged in the cod, mackerel, and whale fisheries and extend their foreign trade to all quarters of the globe.

General education is faithfully and successfully attended to; and the literary institutions, are among the most venerable and flourishing in the country. The numerous humane and benevolent institutions in this state, are indicative of the refinement and distinguished liberality of the inhabitants.

Boston, the capital, is situated on a peninsula in Massachusetts bay. The country around it, is rich and interesting. It is the chief city in New England, and in commerce and wealth, the second city in the United States. The public buildings of Boston are elegant. Some of them afford a commanding and delightful view of the harbor and of the surrounding populous region. The harbour is remarkably deep, capacious and safe, but its entrance is narrow. This city is celebrated for its richly endowed literary, religious, and humane institutions. The population is about 62,000, one tenth of the population of the state.

Salem, a pleasant and wealthy town 14 miles north east of Boston, is the second commercial place in New England, and distinguished for its East India trade. Population 14,000. Charlestown, near Boston, is next in population, which is nearly 9,000. Newburyport is the third commercial place in New England. Population 6,400. Marblehead, Beverly, Gloucester, New Bedford, and Nantucket, are celebrated for enterprise in the fisheries. The three last contain each between 7,000 and 8,000 inhabitants. Troy, Waltham, Lynn, Springfield, and especially Lowell on the Merrimack, are distinguished as manufacturing towns, the three latter having each a population of between 6,000 and 7,000. Cambridge and Taunton have each a population of 6,000. The former is celebrated as the seat of Harvard University, the oldest and richest of the colleges in the Union, having 24 instructors, and a library of 35,000 volumes. At Williamstown in the north west corner of the state, is Williams' College. Amherst is situated about five miles east of Connecticut river. Its scenery is highly picturesque and beautiful. It is the seat of Amherst College, the second literary institution in the state. Here are also a flourishing academy and a seminary for young ladies. Andover, twenty miles north of Boston, has 4,500 inhabitants, and is distinguished as the seat of Philips' Academy, the most flourishing in the state, and also, of a Theological seminary of the highest respectability. Plymouth, 36 miles south east of Boston, is the oldest town in New England. Here, December 22d, 1620, the Pilgrim Fathers, in number 101, first landed and established a colony. The rock on which they landed, has been removed from the sea shore into

the centre of the town, and the anniversary of this interesting event is here still celebrated.

Massachusetts embraces 80 academies and high schools, and 790 school districts; but is destitute of a school fund.

Works of internal improvement are going on. Several rail road companies have recently been incorporated. Three important canals have been completed, viz.: Middlesex canal, between the Merrimack and Boston; Blackstone canal, between Worcester and Providence; and Farmington canal, between Northampton and New Haven.

There are 491 Congregational churches, with 423 ordained ministers, of whom, 118 are Unitarians. There are also many Baptist and Methodist churches.

QUESTIONS.

See the Map of New England.

What are the boundaries of Massachusetts? Its general character? Its extent in square miles? Its population? The number of its counties and towns? What bays and capes on the coast? What two islands on the south-east? What great river passes through it from the north? What three counties are intersected by this river? What range of mountains crosses the western part? What county lies beyond it? What river rises in Berkshire county, and runs south into Connecticut? What river in the north east corner of the state, and what county? In what part of the state are Middlesex and Norfolk counties? What large county in the interior west of them? In what county is Boston? Ans. Suffolk. What two counties are islands? What county is a peninsula? What two counties lie west of Cape Cod bay?

Describe the surface of Massachusetts. The climate. The soil. The lands on the rivers. What are the chief agricultural products? In what valuable stones does the state abound? What is the condition of manufactures? What is the character of the harbors? In what maritime employments are the people extensively engaged? What is the state of learning? What institutions indicate the refinement and distinguished liberality of the inhabitants? What is the capital? How is Boston situated? What is its population? Which way from it is Salem? What is its commercial rank? For what trade is it distinguished? What is its population? Where are Charlestown, and Newburyport? What is the population of Charlestown? Of Newburyport? What is its commercial rank? Which way from Boston is Marblehead? Beverly? Gloucester? New Bedford? Nantucket? For what are they celebrated? Which of them have more than 7,000 inhabitants? Where is Lynn? Springfield? Lowell? For what are they distinguished? What is their population? Which way from Boston are Taunton and Cambridge? What is their population? What university at Cambridge? Describe it. Where is Williams College? Where is Amherst? What is the character of its scenery? What literary institutions does it contain? Where is Andover, and for what distinguished? Where is Plymouth, and for what celebrated? How many academies and high schools in this state? How many school districts? What works of internal improvement are in progress? What canals? How many Congregational churches and ministers? How many of these ministers are Unitarians? What other churches are numerous?

*Arcade, Providence.***RHODE ISLAND.**

Extent, 1,200 sq. ms.—Pop. 98,000—81 per sq. mile.

Rhode Island is the smallest, but in proportion to its size, the most manufacturing state in the Union. It also excels in commerce, but not generally in agriculture. The climate is healthy and delightful. The southern portion of the state is a sandy plain, and the western and northern parts are hilly, rocky, and unproductive; but the shores and islands of Narraganset Bay, are celebrated for their beauty and fertility, and have been called the garden of New England. They abound in the productions common in Massachusetts. Large flocks of sheep and many fine cattle are here raised. The island of Rhode Island, which gives name to the state, is about 15 miles long. It has a pleasant situation and most salubrious climate. Invalids and travellers have often resorted to it as a kind of Eden.

This state is divided into five counties, containing 31 towns, of which, Providence, Newport, Scituate, Warwick, Smithfield, Bristol, and Kingston, are among the most populous and important.

Providence, the capital, is handsomely situated on Providence river, at the head of Narraganset Bay, with a fine harbor, and embracing a population of 17,000, employed, chiefly, in commerce and manufactures, and rapidly increasing in wealth. It is the seat of Brown University. The flourishing manufacturing village of Pawtucket at Pawtucket Falls, is included within the limits of Providence.

Newport, on Rhode Island, is one of the most commodious places for shipping in the United States, but its commerce has declined. Pop. 8,000. Scituate is a manufacturing town, 12 miles west of Providence, containing nearly 7,000 people. Warwick is 10 miles south-west of Providence, embracing extensive cotton factories, and a population of 5,500. The population of Smithfield is about 4,000, and that of Coventry, Bristol, Cumberland, and South Kingston, between 3,000 and 4,000.

Common education has been neglected, but of late the laws respecting it are more favorable and encouraging. There are several flourishing academies, and about 700 schools.

The Baptists are the prevailing religious denomination.

The settlement of this state was commenced at Providence in the year 1636, by Roger Williams, who, with five associates, left Massachusetts on account of their religious opinions.

QUESTIONS.

How is the state of Rhode Island bounded? What large and beautiful bay waters it on the east? What large island in this bay, giving name to the state? What island in the Atlantic, south of this state and belonging to it? What are the extent and population of Rhode Island? The number of counties and towns? What three counties west of the bay? What county comprehends the isle of Rhode Island, and that part of the state east of the bay? Ans. Newport. What small county north of the bay? Ans. Bristol. In what does this state chiefly excel? Describe the climate. The soil. For what are the shores and islands of Narraganset Bay celebrated? What have they been called? In what productions do they abound? How long is the island of Rhode Island? Describe Providence. Newport. Scituate. Warwick. Where are Bristol and Warren? What is the population of Smithfield? Of Coventry, Bristol, Cumberland, and South Kingston? What rivers run into Narraganset bay? What canal connects Providence with Worcester in Massachusetts? What is the state of common education? What is the prevailing religious denomination? When and by whom was the settlement of Rhode Island commenced?



View of the Charter Oak, at Hartford.

CONNECTICUT

Extent, 4,700 sq. miles—Pop. nearly 300,000—64 per sq. mile.

Connecticut is a small, uneven, but fertile state ; with an enlightened and industrious population, composed chiefly of farmers, manufacturers, mechanics, and merchants. The people are distinguished for their civil, literary and religious privileges.

The climate is healthy, though subject to frequent and sudden changes of weather. The soil, generally, is good, and capable of rewarding the faithful labors of the husbandman. The meadow and arable lands, along the valley of the Connecticut, as far south as Middletown, are scarcely surpassed in beauty and richness by any in the Union.

The common productions are similar to those of Massachusetts, and other New England States.

The principal rivers, are the Connecticut, Thames and Housatonic, emptying into Long Island Sound. The Connecticut is more than 400 miles in length, and is the great river of New England. It rises near the borders of Canada, divides New Hampshire from Vermont, and intersects Massachusetts and Connecticut, winding through a long, rich and pleasant valley. It is one of the most beautiful and fertilizing streams in America.

The people of this state, as a community, are celebrated for ingenuity, general information, industry and good morals.

They are engaged in agriculture, and in manufactures of various kinds. Their commerce is considerable. It is carried on, chiefly, with the West Indies, and with various parts of the Atlantic coast.

Connecticut has eight counties, divided into 130 towns. There are five incorporated cities, viz.: Hartford, New Haven, New London, Middletown, and Norwich. At the two former, the General Assembly, alternately, holds its annual session.

Hartford is favorably situated for trade, at the head of sloop navigation, on the west bank of Connecticut river, 50 miles from its mouth. It is connected with an extensive and fruitful back country, and is in a flourishing condition. The American Asylum for the Deaf and Dumb, the Retreat for the Insane, the College, and other public buildings, add ornament to the town, and reflect honor on the citizens. It contains a population of 9,800, distinguished for mercantile, literary, and various enterprise. In the south part of the city stands the venerable Charter oak, so called, from the fact that the charter of the state of Connecticut was concealed and preserved in it, October, 1687.



View of Hartford.

New Haven has a handsome and healthy situation on a plain at the head of New Haven Bay, which sets up from Long Island Sound. It is regularly laid out in squares, adorned with a variety of rural scenery, and is yearly increasing in extent and beauty. Its elegant churches and college edifices, together with its newly erected state house and hospital, make a grand

and pleasing appearance. It is celebrated as the seat of Yale College, and other excellent literary institutions. Pop. 10,700. The Farmington canal opens a direct communication between New Haven and Northampton in Massachusetts.



View in New Haven.

New London near the mouth of the Thames, has a most excellent harbor, and employs considerable shipping. Pop. 4,400. Opposite to New London is the Groton Monument, erected to the memory of the heroes who fell at the taking of Fort Griswold by the British.

Norwich, on the Thames, 14 miles north of New London, is a pleasant, manufacturing, and flourishing town, with some commerce. Pop. 5,100.

Middletown has a beautiful situation, on the Connecticut, 15 miles below Hartford. Pop. about 7,000.

Farmington and Litchfield are rich and handsome country towns. The latter is the seat of a very celebrated Law school. Saybrook, Lyme, Groton, Litchfield, Danbury, and Fairfield, each contain between 4,000 and 5,000 inhabitants. Greenwich, Norwalk, Stamford, New Milford, and Wethersfield, have each nearly 4,000. At Wethersfield, near Hartford, is located the State's Prison, whose internal regulations are admirable and worthy of imitation.

There are three colleges in Connecticut. Yale College at New Haven, is venerable for its long standing and its very ex-

tensive and happy influence. It was founded in the year 1700. It is connected with a Medical and Theological institution and a Law school. It embraces about 355 academical students assembled from various parts of the Union. At Hartford is Washington college, recently established and with encouraging prospects. At Middletown is the Wesleyan University, under the superintendence of the Wesleyan Methodists. There are many flourishing academies in the state, and almost every town or village is supplied with common schools, which in a great measure are supported by the interest of a state fund, whose amount is 1,882,000 dollars. The number of children in the several districts between 4 and 16 years old, is 85,000.

The Congregationalists in Connecticut, have 236 ministers; the Baptists, about 80, and the Methodists 40.

The settlement of this state was commenced in the year 1635, by emigrants from Massachusetts, who settled at Hartford, Wethersfield, and Windsor.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Connecticut? Its extent and population? Give a general description of this state. What is the climate? The soil? What rich and beautiful meadow lands? What are the productions? What are the three principal rivers, and where do they empty? Describe the Connecticut? For what are the people celebrated? In what employments are they engaged? How many counties and towns in this state? Which four counties border on Long Island Sound? What is the shire town of each of them? Which four border on Massachusetts, and what is the shire town of each? What two counties are contiguous to Rhode Island?

How many cities in the state? Which are the two capitals? Where is Hartford? What public buildings has it? What is its population? Where is New Haven situated? How laid out and adorned? What public buildings has it? For what is New Haven celebrated? What canal is connected with it? Where is New London? Describe it. Where is the Groton monument? Where is Norwich? Describe it. Where are Farmington and Litchfield? Where is Saybrook? Lyme? Danbury? Fairfield? What is the population of each? Where is Greenwich? Norwalk? Stamford? New Milford? Wethersfield? What is the population of each?

Where is the State's Prison? What college at New Haven? Describe it. What college at Hartford? Where is the Wesleyan University? What is said of the academies and schools? How large is the school fund? How many congregational ministers? How many Baptist? How many Methodist? When, and by whom, was the settlement of Connecticut commenced, and at what towns?

REVIEW OF NEW ENGLAND.

See the Map.

Where is Buzzard's bay? Penobscot bay? Casco bay? Narraganset bay? Long Island sound? Where is cape Malabar? Cape Ann? Cape Cod? Cape Small Point? Montauk Point? Where is the island of Rhode Island? Nantucket? Martha's Vineyard? Long Island? Block Island? How is each New England state bounded? Which is the largest, and as large as all the rest? What is the extent of Maine in square miles? Which is the smallest, and of the most manufacturing character? Which the oldest, and the best cultivated? Which two are most noted for

commerce and fisheries? Which is the most rough and mountainous? In which are the White mountains? Green mountains? Mount Tom? How long is the longest river? What are some of the chief towns upon it? Where is the Kennebeck river? The Housatonic? Otter Creek? Merrimack? Thames? Piscataqua, or Salmon Falls? Saco? Where is Northampton? Plymouth, and for what noted? Where is Salem? Bennington? Bangor? New London? New Bedford? Rutland? Middletown? Portsmouth? Portland? Newport? Where is Cambridge? New Haven? Williamstown? Amherst? Hanover? What college in each of them? Which college is the oldest and richest? Mention the capital of each New England state. What are the three principal canals? What waters or places does each connect? How large is New England? Ans. It contains about 65,000 square miles. What state is about the same in extent? Ans. Virginia, the largest state? What is the population of New England? Ans. Nearly 2,000,000. What is the general character of the soil. Ans. It is not so much distinguished for its native depth and fertility, as some other parts of the Union, but is fruitful, under the diligent hand of cultivation. It is not, in general, adapted to wheat, but peculiarly so to grass, and produces good crops of Indian corn, rye, oats, barley, flax, and potatoes. What are the three great branches of industry in New England? Ans. Agriculture, Commerce, and Manufactures. What are the general character and condition of the people? Ans. They are distinguished for the general diffusion of knowledge, for economy and persevering diligence, for sobriety and good morals, and a decent respect to religious institutions, for a competence of the good things of life, and for the enjoyment of the blessings of civil and religious liberty.

MIDDLE STATES.

NEW YORK, NEW JERSEY, PENNSYLVANIA, DELAWARE.

NEW YORK.

Extent, 46,000 sq. miles—Pop. about 1,914,000—42 per sq. mile.

New York is a large and generally level and fertile state, containing the greatest population and wealth, of any state in the Union, taking the lead in internal improvements, unrivalled in her advantages for inland navigation, and distinguished for steady and prosperous enterprise, in agricultural, manufacturing, and commercial pursuits.

The surface is generally plain or undulating. The mountainous portions are on the north-east, the south-east, and the south-west. The northern part of the state is rough, cold, and barren. But the soil in general is rich and good, especially that of the large level tracts on the west.

The staple product is wheat, which is produced most abundantly in the central and western counties. Other kinds of grain, in many parts, succeed well, and the land, in general, is good for grazing.

The principal river of New York is the Hudson, which rises in the mountains west of Lake Champlain, and runs in a straight southerly course to the Atlantic, a distance of 300 miles. Though traversing a hilly and mountainous region, it is one of

the finest rivers for navigation in America, being navigable for ships to Hudson, 130 miles, for large sloops to Albany, 160 miles, and for small sloops, to Troy. This river is connected with the waters of Lake Erie by the Grand Erie Canal, which is 363 miles in length, commencing at Albany. The Champlain canal, 64 miles long, connects the Hudson with Lake Champlain. The Delaware and Hudson canal, 64 miles in length, opens a communication between the Hudson and Delaware. The Erie canal is connected with Lake Ontario, by the Oswego canal, which is 38 miles long; and with Seneca and Cayuga lakes, by the Seneca canal, which is 20 miles long. Several rail roads are in progress, or in contemplation.

This state abounds in limestone, iron ore, and marble. Numerous and valuable salt springs are found in Onondaga, Cayuga, and other western counties. The mineral springs at Ballstown and Saratoga, are famous throughout the country, and greatly resorted to by strangers.

The state of New York is divided into 56 counties, which are subdivided into 760 towns. There are five incorporated cities. Albany is the seat of government. It is situated on the Hudson, at the point where the Erie and Champlain canals meet that river. It is an ancient and venerable town, increasing in trade, wealth, and importance. Population about 25,000.



City Hall, New York.

The city of New York is the commercial capital of this state, and of the Union, and ranks the first among the cities of Ame-

rica. It is situated at the confluence of Hudson and East rivers, at the south point of Manhattan or New York island. Its advantages for commerce are almost unrivalled. Its public edifices are of superior elegance, especially the City Hall. The principal street, Broadway, is handsomely built, and extends three miles through the most central and elevated part of the city. Population 203,000.

The other incorporated cities are, Troy, Hudson, and Schenectady. Troy is a commercial and manufacturing town, six miles above Albany. Population 11,400. Hudson is 28 miles below Albany, and is a place of increasing commerce. Population 5,400. Schenectady is on the Mohawk, 15 miles northwest of Albany, known as the pleasant seat of Union college, a flourishing institution. Population 4,300. Rochester, on the Genesee river, has had a rapid growth in trade, manufactures, and wealth, and contains between 9,000 and 10,000 inhabitants. Of a similar description are Utica and Buffalo, which contain between 8,000 and 9,000 inhabitants. Poughkeepsie, Newburg, Manlius, Johnstown, and Salina, contain each about 7,000. Rome, Ithaca, Geneva, Canandaigua, Sacket's Harbor, and Plattsburg, are beautiful and flourishing towns; and others, too numerous to be specified.

There are four colleges in this state, viz. Union college, at Schenectady, Columbia college, in the city of New York, Hamilton college, at Clinton, near Utica, and Geneva college, at Geneva. At Auburn, is a Presbyterian Theological Institution, and at Hamilton, a Baptist Theological Seminary. At West Point, near Newburg, 58 miles above New York, is the celebrated Military Academy, under the superintendence of the government of the United States. General education is very flourishing. The academies are 57 in number, and are conducted with ability. Common schools are established, and well supported. The number of scholars contained in them is 500,000. The school fund is 1,700,000 dollars.

The religious denominations are chiefly Presbyterians, Congregationalists, Methodists, and Baptists.

The island of Long Island, south of Connecticut, belongs to the state of New York. Its length is 140 miles, the same as that of the sound. Its average breadth is 10 miles. The north side of the island is hilly; the south side, low, sandy, and stony, but a great proportion of the soil is rich, and adapted to grain, grass, and fruits. It is divided into three counties; Kings, Queens, and Suffolk, embracing 19 townships. Brooklyn, at the west end, opposite to New York, is a very flourishing city.

Population 12,000. Its population within ten years has been almost doubled.

The settlement of this state was commenced by the Dutch, from Holland, who, in 1614, began the building of a village where New York now stands, and called it New Amsterdam. To the surrounding country, they gave the name of New Netherlands.



Falls of Niagara.

QUESTIONS.

See Map of the United States.

What are the names of the four Middle States? What are the boundaries of the state of New York? Its number of square miles? Its population? What two lakes border upon it on the west and north-west? What two lakes on the north-east? What are the principal smaller lakes in the interior? What mountains in this state? What rivers in it empty into Lake Ontario? What rivers rise in this state and run south into Pennsylvania? What river connects lakes Erie and Ontario? What great natural curiosity in this river? Ans. The Falls of Niagara, the most celebrated in the world, and presenting one of the sublimest and most stupendous scenes in nature. Here the waters of the great lakes, compressed to the width of three quarters of a mile, are precipitated down the rocks, 160 feet into an unfathomable abyss. The rising cloud of vapor is seen at a great distance, and the tremendous rumbling or roaring of the cataract is heard for many miles around.

Give a general description of this state? Describe its surface? Where are the most mountainous parts? Where the most cold and barren? What is the general character of the soil? What is the staple production? What is the principal river? Describe it. What canal connects it with Lake Erie? What with Lake Champlain? What with the Delaware? What is the length of these canals? What other canals? What mineral productions? Salt springs? Mineral springs?

How many counties in New York? Towns or townships? Incorporated cities? Which is the seat of government? How situated? Describe it. Which is the greatest commercial city of the United States, and of America? On what island? At the confluence of what two rivers? Describe New York city. What is its

population? Describe Troy, Hudson, Schenectady. Where are Utica and Buffalo? What is their population? Where is Poughkeepsie? Newburgh? Manlius? Johnstown? Salina? What is their population? How much salt is annually manufactured at Salina? Ans 500,000 bushels. Where is Rome? Ithaca? Geneva? Canandaigua? Sacket's Harbour? Plattsburgh? What four colleges in this state, and where are they severally situated? What Theological seminaries? Where is West Point, and for what academy distinguished? What is the state of general education? How many academies in the state, and how conducted? How are common schools supported? What number of scholars do they contain? What is the amount of the school fund? What are the principal religious denominations? What large island belongs to New York? Where situated? What is its length? Breadth? Surface? Soil? Products? Counties and townships? Where is Brooklyn? What is its population? Where, and by whom, was the settlement of the state begun?

NEW JERSEY.

Extent, 7,800 sq. miles—Pop. 321,000—41 per sq. mile.

New Jersey is about one sixth as large as New York. It is one of the six smallest states, and is deficient in good harbors; yet it ranks high in point of agriculture, manufactures, and wealth.

The face of the country is greatly diversified, and the climate and soil are equally so.

The more northern portion is mountainous, or hilly, like New England, with a cool climate. It is a fine grazing country, abounding in cattle, and extensively overspread with rich orchards, and fields of wheat and other grain.

The southern half is low, sandy, and comparatively barren, with a more mild and moderate climate.

The middle section is very fertile, highly cultivated, covered with handsome towns and villages, embracing a dense population.

* This state abounds in valuable garden vegetables, and in apples, pears, and other fruits of the finest quality. Iron ore is very abundant, and is manufactured on a very large scale.

There are extensive establishments for making leather and shoes, especially in Trenton, Newark, and Elizabethtown. The cider of New Jersey is proverbially excellent.

This state embraces 14 counties, divided into 116 towns.

The capital is Trenton, a pleasant and flourishing town on the Delaware, near the falls, 30 miles above Philadelphia. Population 4,000. The largest town is Newark, on the river Passaic, nine miles west of New York. It is famous for fine cider, and various manufacturers. Population 11,000. New Brunswick, a commercial town on the Raritan, has nearly 8,000 inhabitants. So also has Patterson, a distinguished manufacturing town near the great falls of the Passaic, where the river, in one

entire sheet, suddenly plunges down the cleft of a rock, 70 feet in perpendicular descent; a spectacle equally grand and beautiful. Elizabethtown is pleasantly situated on a creek, six miles south of Newark, and is a flourishing place. Population 3,500.

At Princeton, a healthy and handsome town, 50 miles southwest of New York, is Nassau Hall, or the College of New Jersey, an old and valuable institution, together with a flourishing Theological Seminary. Rutgers College is located at New Brunswick. The state of common education has been lamentably low, but is now rising, in consequence of the zealous efforts of its friends. In 1828, more than 11,000 children were destitute of instruction, and 15,000 adults were unable to read. The annual income of the School Fund is \$22,000.

The prevailing religious denomination is the Presbyterian, embracing 85 churches, and 88 ministers.

The settlement of this state was commenced by the Dutch colonists, from the mouth of the Hudson.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of New Jersey? Its extent and population? Its rivers? Its comparative size, and its rank in point of agriculture, manufactures, and wealth? Describe the northern section of the state. The southern. The middle. In what vegetables and fruits does the state abound? What ore is abundant and manufactured on a large scale? What extensive manufacturing establishments? How many counties and towns in New Jersey? What is the capital? Where is it situated? What is the largest town? Where situated? For what famous? What is its population? Where is New Brunswick? What is its population? Where is Patterson? Where is Princeton, and for what celebrated? What college at New Brunswick? Describe the Passaic falls. What is the state of common education in New Jersey? What is the prevailing religious denomination? By whom was the settlement of this state commenced? What internal improvements are contemplated in New Jersey? Ans. Four rail roads, of which the most important are the Camden and Amboy rail road, and the Patterson and Hudson river rail road, now in progress. Besides which, there are two canals, in part completed, viz.: the Morris canal connecting the Delaware and Hudson, and the Delaware and Raritan canal.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Extent, 40,000 sq. miles—Pop. 1,348,000—29 per sq. mile.

Pennsylvania is a large state, rich in agriculture and manufactures, variegated with hills, valleys, and mountains, containing a great proportion of excellent soil, subject to a cultivation equal or superior to that of any of the United States.

Several ridges of the Apalachian or Alleghany chain, extend into the central parts of this State. The eastern portion of Pennsylvania is a beautiful, hilly country, thickly peopled, and cultivated with great care and skill, abounding in wheat, grass, vegetables, and a variety of fruits. The western portion is an uneven, but fer



Travelling in the Middle States.

tile region, less populous, but rapidly increasing in population and improvement. The central and northern tracts, comprising about half of the state, are in a great measure unsettled and covered with forests.

The climate is various and changeable, but generally healthy. The people are accustomed to tillage, and are distinguished agriculturalists. Wheat is the most important crop, and grows here in great perfection and abundance. Indian corn, rye, oats, and other grains, also flourish.

Iron ore and pit coal are found in vast quantities, and in some parts, quarries of beautiful marble. Salt springs are numerous and valuable.

Pennsylvania is not supplied, by nature, with peculiar advantages for inland navigation, but works of internal improvement, are promoted at great expense, and are advancing with wonderful rapidity. Millions of dollars have been expended, and are expending, in turnpike roads, rail roads, bridges, and canals. The whole extent of canal navigation in the state, is about 725 miles. The Pennsylvania Canal and Rail Road, the greatest of these works, is designed to connect the Susquehannah with the Ohio river. It is 320 miles long. The Schuylkill canal is between Philadelphia and the sources of the Schuylkill. Its length is 114 miles. The Union canal between Reading and Middletown is 80 miles long. A rail road is in progress between Philadelphia and the Susquehannah.

In this State there are 51 counties, subdivided into townships.

The population has been more than doubled within 30 years past. About half of the inhabitants are of English descent; the rest are chiefly Germans, Dutch, and Irish. Many of the people are employed in manufactures, which are yearly increasing in amount and interest. The internal trade is vigorous and of great extent, and the foreign commerce considerable.

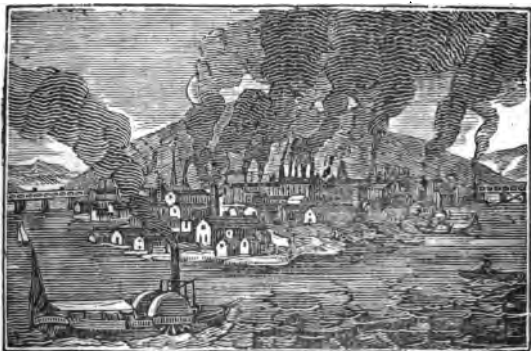


United States Bank, Philadelphia.

Philadelphia is the only seaport. It is situated near the confluence of the Delaware and Schuylkill rivers, more than a hundred miles, by the course of the river, from the sea. The streets are regular, broad, and pleasant, crossing each other at right angles, and the houses are neatly built of brick. It is the first manufacturing city in the Union, the second in point of magnitude and population, and the third in commerce. It is also celebrated as a seat of literature, and especially of medical science, and distinguished for various benevolent institutions. Population, including the suburbs, 168,000.

The capital is Harrisburg, situated on the east bank of the Susquehannah, about 100 miles west of Philadelphia. Pop. 4,300.

The city of Pittsburg is about 300 miles west of Philadelphia, finely situated for trade and manufactures, and noted for an abundance of iron and coal, for its rapid growth, and its numerous furnaces. Here are several large iron and brass foundries, glass works, cotton and other manufactories. Its population has been nearly doubled in ten years past, and is now, including the suburbs, 25,000. It is more than 2,000 miles, by water, from



View of Pittsburg.

New Orleans. Lancaster, distant from Philadelphia 62 miles, is a pleasant, flourishing, and wealthy town, surrounded by a rich and highly cultivated region. Population nearly 8,000. Reading, Easton, York, and Carlisle, are also respectable and growing towns.

The most important literary institutions are the following: The University of Pennsylvania at Philadelphia, embracing a most celebrated Medical school; Dickinson College at Carlisle; Washington College at Washington, Jefferson's College at Canonsburg, Allegany College at Meadville, and Mount Airy College at Germantown.

The prevailing religious denomination are the Presbyterians, who have 429 churches; the German Reformed, and Evangelical Lutherans, Methodists, Baptists, and Friends, are also numerous.

The first permanent colony in this state, was established by the celebrated William Penn, who, with a society of Friends or Quakers, in 1682, laid the foundation of the city of Philadelphia.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Pennsylvania? Its extent? Population? Mountains? Number of counties? What river divides it from New Jersey? What large river runs through it? Where does it rise and empty? What two rivers unite at Pittsburg and form the Ohio? Where do they rise? Give a general description of Pennsylvania. Of the eastern portion. Of the western portion. Of the central and northern tracts. What is the climate? The character of the people in respect to agriculture? What is the most important crop? What other grains flourish? What minerals are found? What are the facilities for inland communication? Enumerate the principal canals, and state their length. What rail road in progress? Of what

descent are the people? What is the condition of manufactures? Of the internal trade and foreign commerce? What is the only sea-port? Describe it. What is its population? What is the capital? Where is it situated? Where is Pittsburg? For what is it finely situated? For what noted? What manufacturing establishments has it? What is its population? How far is Lancaster from Philadelphia? Describe it. What is its population? Mention some other respectable and growing towns? Where are they situated? What, and where are the most important literary institutions? What are the most numerous religious denominations? When and by whom was the first colony planted in this state?

DELAWARE.

Extent 2,100 square miles—Pop. 77,000—36 per square mile.



Deep Cut in the Delaware and Chesapeake Canal.

Delaware is the smallest state, in respect to population, and the least in extent, except Rhode Island. It is divided into three counties. The climate is warmer than that of Pennsylvania. The northern part is hilly, but rich and fruitful, producing large quantities of grain, especially wheat, which is the staple product, and grows here in the greatest perfection. The southern part is a low, sandy plain, with a thinner soil, but, to a considerable extent, suited to grazing.

The principal streams are the Brandywine Creek and Christina Creek, which unite a little below Wilmington, and fall into the Delaware. They are rapid streams, affording excellent water privileges, and seats for numerous flour mills, and large manufactories of woollen and cotton. The flour mills on the Brandywine are the finest and most celebrated in the Union. Indeed, the raising of wheat and the manufacturing of it into flour, are the leading employments of the people.

Wilmington, two miles from the Delaware, and 28 miles southwest of Philadelphia, is the principal town, and now an incor-

porated city. Population 10,000. Dover, on Jones' creek, 48 miles south of Wilmington, is the capital. It is a pleasant town, with an elegant state house. Population 1,500. Lewistown, near the mouth of the bay, is distinguished for its salt works.

The Delaware and Chesapeake Canal crosses the northern part of the state, and connects the Delaware river with Chesapeake bay. It is very wide and deep, and traversed by steam boats, packets, and merchant vessels.

The Presbyterians, Methodists, and Baptists, are the prevailing religious persuasions. There is no college in this state, but there is a manual labor academy.

QUESTIONS.

How is Delaware bounded? What is its extent in square miles? Its population? Its comparative size? Its number of counties? Its climate? Describe the face of the country and soil. What bay and river separate this state from New Jersey? What are the two principal streams? Describe them. What is said of the flour mills on the Brandywine? What are the leading employments of the people. What is the chief town? Where is it situated? What is the capital? Where is it situated? Where is Lewistown? For what distinguished? What canal in this state? What are the prevailing religious persuasions?

REVIEW OF THE MIDDLE STATES.

What are the number and names of the Middle States? How are they bounded? How is each bounded? What sound, lakes, and bays, border on them? Which two of these states are the largest and nearly of a size? Which contains the largest population? Which excels in manufactures? Which in agriculture? Which, in common school education? Which in commerce? Which has the oldest and longest canal? Which has expended the most in rail roads and other internal improvements? Which has the most noted flour mills in the country? Which is the most remarkable for rich orchards and fine cider? Which for an abundance of iron and pit coal? What is the staple production of all the Middle States? What are the principal mountains? Rivers? Canals? Mention the capitals. The chief towns. The six largest towns in the order of their population. What river connects Lake Champlain with the St. Lawrence? How could you sail most directly from Erie in Pennsylvania, to Albany, and from Albany to Lake Champlain, and from Lake Champlain to Delaware river? What two remarkable cataracts or falls in the Middle States?

SOUTHERN STATES.

MARYLAND, VIRGINIA, NORTH CAROLINA, SOUTH CAROLINA, GEORGIA,
ALABAMA.

MARYLAND.

Extent 10,000 sq. miles—Pop. 477,000—45 per sq. mile—
Slaves 102,800.

Maryland, exclusive of water, is nearly of the size of Vermont. Chesapeake bay divides it into two sections, called the eastern and western shores. The eastern division is an extensive, low, sandy plain, containing eight counties. The western is partly plain and partly uneven and mountainous, containing 11 counties.

The climate is mild ; in the southern part, warm, and in the low lands, moist and unhealthy. There is a great proportion of good soil, adapted to grain. The richest tracts are in the hilly lands, and in the valleys between the mountains. Wheat, tobacco, and indian corn, are the chief agricultural productions. Iron ore abounds, and is manufactured in large quantities. The mines of coal are almost inexhaustible, especially on the Potomac. The soil is cultivated in many parts with much skill and to great advantage. The manufacturing of flour is carried on largely, and vast quantities are exported.

The commerce of Maryland is extensive. Baltimore is the commercial capital, and in population, the third city in the Union. It is situated on the north side of Patapsco river, 14 miles from the bay. It consists of two divisions, called the Town, and Fell's Point. The latter is the principal seat of commerce. The streets are neatly paved, and the houses, in general, handsomely built of brick, and many of them with superior elegance and taste. In an elevated part of the city, is a marble monument to the memory of Washington, 160 feet high, with a statue of Washington at the top. Baltimore has had a very rapid growth, and is distinguished for its amount of shipping. As a flour market, it is almost unrivalled. Population 80,600. The Baltimore and Ohio rail road is designed to extend from this city to Pittsburg, 325 miles.

The seat of government is Annapolis, on the Severn, 30 miles south of Baltimore. Population 2,600. Frederick is the second largest town in the state. Population 4,500. Hagerstown, in the north western part of the state, has a population of 3,400.

The state of education is considerably flourishing. There are a number of academies and distinguished schools of medicine and law. There is a college at Annapolis. At Baltimore, are St. Mary's College, Baltimore College, and a medical school of great celebrity.

The prevailing religious sect are the Roman Catholics, who have here one Archbishop, the metropolitan of the United States and about 35 churches.

The settlement of Maryland was commenced in the year 1634, by George Calvert, brother of Lord Baltimore, with 200 settlers.

QUESTIONS.

What are the number and names of the Southern states? Of what extent and population is Maryland? With what New England state may it be compared in size? How is it bounded? By what large bay divided? What are the two divisions called? How many counties in each? Describe the east division. Describe the west. What is the climate of Maryland? What is the soil? What parts are the richest? What are the chief agricultural products? What minerals? What is said of the manufacture of flour? Of the commerce of this state? What is the commercial capital? Where is Baltimore situated? How divided? Describe it. What rail road from this city? What and where is the seat of Government? Where is Frederick? Hagerstown? Bellare? Chester? What mountains enter this state? What river from the north runs into Chesapeake bay, and where does it rise? What river divides Maryland from Virginia? What is the state of education in Maryland? What colleges? What is the prevailing religious sect? By whom, and at what time was the settlement of Maryland commenced?

VIRGINIA.

Extent, 65,000 sq. miles—Pop. 1,212,000—18 per sq. mile—
Slaves 469,700.

Virginia is the oldest and largest of the states, and the third in population. The interests and pursuits of the inhabitants are chiefly agricultural. This state is traversed by several ridges of the Allegany mountains, and is divided by nature. into east, middle, and west Virginia. There are 105 counties. The surface, climate, and soil, are various.*

East Virginia is a low, flat country, sandy or marshy, and unproductive, except near the rivers. It is the smallest and least fertile, but the most populous of the three divisions. It has a hot and unhealthy climate.

Middle Virginia is an uneven, hilly, or mountainous region, cool and salubrious, and in general fertile, especially in the valleys between the ridges of the Allegany.

West Virginia comprises nearly half of the state, possessing a delightful climate, with a hilly or mountainous surface, containing much fine scenery and good soil, but a more scattered

population. Tobacco, wheat, and corn, are the chief productions. The southern part produces some cotton. Iron ore and coal are abundant, and gold has been discovered here. The soil is most skilfully cultivated in the hill country.

The slaves are principally in the middle and eastern divisions. Manufactures and commerce are not very extensive.

Richmond is the capital, and the largest town. It is delightfully situated, on the north bank of James river, at the head of tide-waters. It is an elegant and healthy city, flourishing in trade, manufactures, and commerce. Population more than 16,000.

Norfolk, on Elizabeth river, near the mouth of the James, is distinguished for its excellent harbour, and extensive foreign commerce. Population 10,000.

Petersburg, on the Appomatox, 25 miles south of Richmond, is a very flourishing commercial place. Population 8,300. Wheeling, on the Ohio, is the next largest town, and rapidly rising in population, and commercial importance. Population 3,500. Fredericksburg, Lynchburg, Staunton, and Winchester, are considerable towns.

York, or Yorktown, 11 miles from the mouth of York river, is famous for the surrender of Cornwallis.

Virginia is distinguished among the states, as having given birth to four Presidents, and her name is associated with the venerable names of Washington, Jefferson, Madison, and Monroe.

Mount Vernon, the celebrated seat of General Washington. is in this state, on the Potomac, nine miles below Alexandria.

Liberal provision is made in Virginia for the advancement of learning, by a fund of 1,100,000 dollars. The University of Virginia is richly endowed. It is handsomely located at Charlottesville, and is a recent but promising institution. Williamsburg is the seat of William and Mary College. In Prince Edward county, is Hampden Sidney College, near which is a Theological seminary. In Lexington county is Washington College; and there are many academies and schools in different parts of the state.

The settlement of Virginia was commenced by people from England, in 1607, at Jamestown.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Virginia? What is its extent? Population? Give a general description of the state. What river divides it from Maryland? What river from Ohio? What three rivers in this state empty into Chesapeake bay? What are the course and termination of the Shenandoah and Monongahela? What river besides

the Chowan rises in Virginia, and runs into North Carolina? Where does the great Kenhawa empty? By what mountains is Virginia traversed? What is the most eastern ridge called? Ans. The Blue Ridge. Into what three sections is Virginia naturally divided? How many counties does it contain? What is said of the surface, climate, and soil? Describe East Virginia. Middle Virginia. West Virginia. What remarkable curiosity deserves to be mentioned? Ans. The Natural Bridge over Cedar Creek, a branch of the James river, twelve miles south of Lexington. The bridge is naturally formed by a huge rock, 60 feet wide, covered with earth and trees, and lying across the top of a deep chasm, at the bottom of which flows the creek, 250 feet below. The view of this bridge from the margin of the stream, is represented as indescribably beautiful and sublime. What are the chief agricultural and mineral productions of Virginia? What is the number of slaves? What is the state of manufactures and commerce? What is the capital? Describe it. Describe Norfolk. Petersburg. Wheeling. What other considerable towns? Where is Yorktown, and for what famous? Mount Vernon, and for what celebrated? What four presidents were born in this state? What provision is here made to promote learning? What university and colleges, and where situated? When, where, and by whom was the settlement of Virginia commenced?

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

Extent, 10 ms. sq., or 100 sq. ms.—Pop. 40,000—400 per sq. m.

The District of Columbia lies on both sides of the Potomac, 120 miles from its mouth. It was ceded to the United States by Maryland and Virginia, in 1790, but the first session of Congress here, was held in 1800. The district is under the immediate control of the general government. It is divided into two counties, and the inhabitants reside, chiefly, in the three cities, Washington, Alexandria, and Georgetown. The surface generally is uneven, and the soil sandy, and not very productive.

Washington, the seat of the general government, is handsomely situated between the Potomac and its eastern branch, about 300 miles from the ocean. Its plan is regular and extensive, calculated for a magnificent city. The principal streets extend due north and south; and are crossed by others at right angles. The capitol, where Congress every winter holds its session, is located on an eminence, commanding a delightful view of the city and the surrounding country. About a mile and a half west of the capitol, stands the President's house, with four elegant brick buildings, occupied by the Secretaries or Heads of Departments. The capitol and the President's house are constructed of gray free-stone painted white, and make a magnificent appearance. The population is about 19,000.

Georgetown, farther up the river, north-west of the metropolis, has a delightful situation, and contains many fine brick buildings. It commands an interesting prospect of the city of Washington. Population 8,500.

Alexandria is a pleasant town, built on a regular plan, the streets cross at right angles, are neatly paved, and kept clean.

It is a little below Washington, on the south bank of the Potomac, and is a place of trade and commerce. Population 8,400.

There is a Catholic college at Georgetown; and at Washington is Columbia College, handsomely situated about a mile north of the President's house.

The Chesapeake and Ohio canal extends from the Potomac above Georgetown to Pittsburg, 341 miles.

QUESTIONS.

What is the situation of the District of Columbia? Its extent? Its population? To what two states did it formerly belong? When was it ceded to the U. States? When did Congress hold its first session there? How many counties and cities belong to it? What are the surface and soil? Describe the city of Washington. Its public buildings. What is the population? Where is Georgetown? Describe it. Alexandria? What college at Georgetown? What one at Washington? What canal commences near this city?

NORTH CAROLINA.

Extent, 50,000 sq. miles—Pop. 739,000—15 per square mile.
Slaves, 246,000.

This state is divided into 63 counties. It exhibits a great diversity of surface, soil, and climate. The eastern portion, for 60 or 70 miles from the Atlantic, is an extended, sandy, barren plain, covered with pine forests, with here and there strips of fertile land on the borders of the streams, where the climate is unhealthy. Farther west, on the declivity of the Alleghany, the country is hilly, healthy, and fruitful, and is the most populous part of the state. The most western parts are mountainous, and thinly inhabited, with very few slaves.

The pine barrens produce large quantities of pine timber, turpentine, and tar. Cotton and tobacco grow in the low country, near the rivers, and various kinds of grain are produced in the hill country. Iron ore is abundant on the mountains.

North Carolina is rich in gold.²⁴ It embraces the most productive section of the gold region of the United States, which is found to extend from Virginia, along east of the Blue ridge, through North and South Carolina, to Georgia and Alabama. In some instances the gold is found in pure particles, among the sand, as in the counties of Burke and Rutherford. In other parts it is found in mines, or in the form of ore, as in the counties of Mecklenburg, Rowan, Davidson, and Cabarras. A great multitude of labourers, chiefly foreigners, are here employed in the mining business. During the year 1831, gold to the amount of 294,000 dollars was received from North Carolina, at the mint of the United States.

Manufactures and commerce do not flourish in this state. The coast is flat and sandy. The mouths of the rivers are obstructed; and there is a want of good harbors.

Wilmington, 30 miles from the mouth of Cape Fear river, has the best harbor in the state, and carries on considerable trade in flour. Population 3,000.

Raleigh, the capital, is a handsome town, situated on the Neuse. The state-house is an elegant brick building. It contains a noble statue of Washington, erected at the expense of the state.

Newbern, situated near the mouth of the same river, is the largest town, and has considerable commerce. Population 3,800.

Fayetteville, on Cape Fear river, is favorably situated for trade. In 1831, it was almost destroyed by a fire which consumed 600 houses; but by the enterprise of its inhabitants, it is fast rising from its ashes. Washington and Edenton are commercial places.

Charlotte is a very flourishing village, in the neighborhood of some of the most valuable mines.

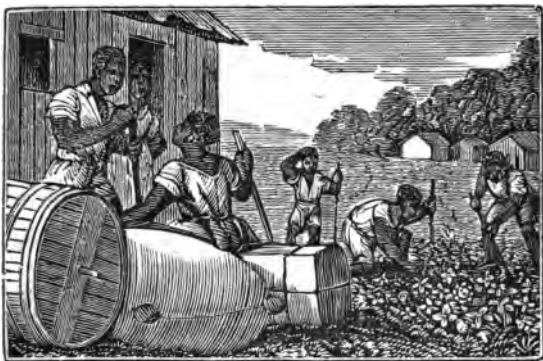
Chapel Hill, north-west of Raleigh, is the seat of the University of North Carolina, a flourishing institution. At Salem is a very flourishing female academy, under the care of the Moravians. This place is noted as being in the vicinity of Mount Ararat, or Pilot mountain, which is in the form of a pyramid, nearly a mile in height, and crowned at the top with a huge rock rising like a steeple 300 feet.

The Dismal Swamp canal, 22 miles long, crosses the boundary line between Virginia and North Carolina, and connects the waters of Albemarle sound with Chesapeake bay.

The state of education in North Carolina is generally low. The Baptists have 272 churches. Presbyterians and Methodists are also numerous.

QUESTIONS.

How is North Carolina bounded? What number of square miles has it? Counties? Inhabitants? Slaves? What sounds, capes, and inlets on the coast? What rivers? What mountains? Where is Dismal swamp, and what canal runs through it? Describe the eastern parts of the state. Describe the western parts. What are the products of the pine barrens? What of the low lands on the river? What of the hill country? In what different forms is the gold of North Carolina found? By whom are the mines chiefly worked? What other states are included in the gold region? What is the state of manufactures and commerce? What obstructions to commerce? Where is Wilmington? Raleigh the capital? Describe it. Which is the largest town, and how situated? Where is Fayetteville, and what is said of it? Where are Washington and Edenton? Charlotte? Chapel Hill, and of what is it the seat? What academy at Salem? Where is Pilot Mountain? Describe it. What is the general state of education? What are the prevailing religious denominations?



Gathering cotton in the Southern States.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

**Extent, 30,000 sq. miles—Pop. 581,500—20 per square mile.—
Slaves 315,000.**

South Carolina is about two thirds as large as North Carolina, and resembles it in surface and soil. It is divided into three distinct sections, viz.: the sandy plains and hills on the east, the rich uplands in the interior, and the mountainous region on the west.

Among the hills and mountains, the climate is salubrious, the population more scattered, the number of slaves less, the plantations smaller, and the mode of cultivation resembles in some measure that of the northern states. The low country is the more populous, though the land, except near the rivers, is sterile, and the climate unhealthy, especially to strangers.

Cotton is the principal product, and the chief source of wealth to the state. Rice is confined to the sea shore, or the low, marshy grounds. Sugar cane, oranges, &c., are found in the southern parts. The exports from this state are of great amount and value, but are generally conveyed in vessels belonging to other states.

South Carolina is politically divided into 29 districts. The seat of government is Columbia, on the Congaree, near the centre of the state, and is a handsome and flourishing town. Population 3,400.

Charleston is the commercial capital of this, and of all the southern Atlantic states. It is conveniently situated for com-

merce, on a peninsula between Ashley and Cooper rivers. The harbor is spacious and commodious, and the city regularly laid out, and handsomely built. It contains many elegant seats of the rich and opulent, and its citizens are characterized by hospitality, gayety, and politeness. Population 30,000. Beaufort, on an island, has an excellent harbor. Georgetown and Camden are considerable places.

There is a college at Charleston, and one at Columbia, which is peculiarly well endowed and flourishing. Common schools are encouraged by a state fund.

Large sums have been expended for internal improvements. A canal 22 miles long, connects the Santee with Cooper river and Charleston harbor. There is a rail road between Charleston and Augusta, a distance of about 140 miles. Another, between Charleston and Columbia, is in contemplation.

South Carolina became a separate province from North Carolina, in 1729.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of South Carolina? What is its extent? Its population? How is it naturally divided? Describe the hilly and mountainous parts. Describe the low country. What is the principal production? Is the amount and value of the exports large or small? In what vessels are they conveyed? How many districts in South Carolina? What, and where is the seat of government? Where is Charleston the chief city? Describe it. What is the situation of Beaufort? Of Georgetown? Of Camden? Of Savannah? What is said of the colleges and common schools? What are the rivers and mountains of this state? What canal? What rail road? What religious denominations? Ans. Baptists, Methodists, and Presbyterians. When were North and South Carolina separated?

GEORGIA.

Extent, 60,000 sq. miles—Pop. 517,000.—8 per square mile.
Slaves, 217,500.

Georgia is one of the largest states in the Union; thinly peopled, and greatly diversified in respect to soil and climate, but containing a large proportion of excellent land, and is rapidly growing in population and wealth. About one third of its inhabitants have been added since the year 1820.

The numerous islands on the coast, abound in sea-island cotton, distinguished for its superior quality. The marshy grounds overflowed by creeks and rivers, and extending 15 miles back from the sea, contain the rice plantations. Thence, gradually ascending towards the interior, are the sandy, pine barrens, and from these, the country rises into hills and mountains, embracing a very extensive and fertile region, which abounds in wheat and other kinds of grain. Cotton is the most generally and profit-

ably cultivated; but rice, tobacco, and sugar, are important products.

The gold region passes through the north-western section of this state, and here, also, as in North Carolina, it is becoming an object of great and increasing interest. In 1830, the value of gold received at the United States mint, from Georgia, was \$212,000, and in 1831, \$166,000.

Domestic manufactures are somewhat flourishing. The quantity of produce exported is large, and valuable, but the amount of shipping owned in this state is small.

Georgia contains 76 counties. The whites are principally settled in the eastern half of the state. The western and north-western parts are extensively occupied by the Creek and Cherokee Indians.

Savannah, on the Savannah river, 17 miles from its mouth, is the largest town, and the principal seat of commerce. Population 7400. Augusta, a flourishing place for trade, is situated on the same river, 300 miles above. Population 6,700. Milledgeville, the capital, is on the Oconee, 200 miles from the coast. Population 1,600. Macon and Columbia contain between 2,000 and 3,000 inhabitants each. New Echota is the capital of the Cherokee country. Athens is the seat of Franklin College. Darien and St. Mary's are flourishing sea ports.

General education has been greatly neglected, but its importance, of late, has been more duly appreciated, and something has been done to establish and support academies and schools.

The Baptists, Methodists, and Presbyterians, are the most numerous religious sects.

The settlement of Georgia was commenced at Savannah, by a colony from England, in 1733.

QUESTIONS.

How is Georgia bounded? Into how many counties divided? What are its extent and population? Give a general description of the state. What river divides it from South Carolina? What one partly divides it from Alabama? What four rivers, beside the Savannah, empty into the Atlantic? Where does the Flint river empty? What two branches has the Altamaha? What swamp lies partly in Georgia, and partly in Florida? What river rises in it, and runs east? What islands on the coast? What kind of cotton do they produce? What plantations are on the marshy grounds near the coast? What kind of land lies next, towards the west? Describe the country west of the pine barrens. What is the staple product of Georgia? What other crops are mentioned? Through what part of the state does the gold region extend? What amount of gold from this region was received at the United States mint in 1830 and 1831? What is the state of manufactures? What is said of the exports and shipping? In what part of the state are the whites chiefly settled? What Indians on the west and north-west? What missionary stations? What is the capital of the Cherokees? What, and where, is the most commercial town in Georgia? Where is Augusta? Where is Milledgeville, the capital? Where is Athens? What college in it? Where is Darien? Where is St. Mary's? What religious sects are the most numerous? What is the state of education? Who began the settlement of Georgia, and at what time and place?

ALABAMA.

Extent, 52,000 square miles—Pop. 309,000—6 per square mile.
Slaves, 117,000.

Alabama is a large and new state, with a scattered population, but favored by nature with much good soil, especially along the pleasant valley of the Tennessee, and on the banks of the other large rivers.

It is divided into 36 counties. The population has increased with almost unexampled rapidity. The northern parts are hilly or mountainous, but very fertile and healthy, and embrace the principal settlements. The middle section is more level, with an inferior soil. The southern portion is still more level, and covered with pine forests. The soil of the state in general, is well adapted to cotton and Indian corn, which are extensively cultivated, and grow luxuriantly.

The countries of the Creeks and Cherokees, on the east and north-east, occupy a considerable part of this state; and on the west is a small tract belonging to the Choctaws.

The capital of Alabama is Tuscaloosa, on the Tuscaloosa or Black Warrior river, and near the centre of the state. It is a new, but has become a flourishing town. Population 1,600. Mobile, the oldest and most commercial town, is beautifully situated on a plain, near the head of Mobile bay. Population 4,500. Cahawba, on the Alabama, and Huntsville and Florence, on the Tennessee, are pleasant and thriving towns.

Provision is made, and exertions are used, to promote internal improvements, and to establish respectable academies and schools in this newly settled state. The University of Alabama, at Tuscaloosa, is in its infancy, but is richly endowed, and of fair promise. There are two or three flourishing colleges. The Baptists and Methodists are the prevailing religious denominations.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Alabama? Its extent and population? Give a general description of the state. Into how many counties is it divided? Describe the northern parts. What mountains from the north east, terminate there? Describe the middle section. The southern. What Indians in this state? What great river crosses the state on the north? What crops are most flourishing? What two principal rivers unite and run into the Gulf of Mexico? What two branches has the Alabama? What river partly divides this state from Georgia? What river partly divides Alabama and Mississippi? What river rises here and runs into Florida? What is the capital? Where is it situated? Which is the largest town, and where situated? What town opposite to it on the other side of the bay? What flourishing towns on the Alabama and Tennessee? What is said of improvements, academies and

schools? What colleges? What are the prevailing religious denominations? When was Alabama admitted into the Union as an independent state? Ans. In 1820. What missionary stations in this state?

REVIEW OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.

Between what parallels of latitude does this section of the Union lie? What states bound it on the north? What ocean on the east? What land and water bound it on the south? What mountains in part separate it from the Western states? What bays, sounds, and capes, on the coast? What is the extent of Chesapeake bay? Ans. It is about 200 miles long, and 12 miles broad at the entrance. What large rivers does it receive? What are the principal rivers in this section, emptying into the Atlantic, south of Chesapeake bay? What rivers, empty into the Gulf of Mexico? What two large swamps, and where situated?

What are the boundaries of each of these states? Which state is the largest, and how large? Which is the oldest and most populous of the Southern states? Which is the most mountainous, fertile, and healthy part of this section of the Union? In what part are the sandy low lands or pine barrens? What is the most general employment of the people, and the most valuable crop in the Southern states? Are good harbors here very numerous? Why does not commerce flourish here, as well as in the Middle and Eastern states? Which two Southern States, and which two cities are the most commercial?

Where are the following rivers, and where do they empty? The Roanoke—St. Mary's—Potomac—Savannah—Santee—James—Altamaha—York—Chatahoochee—Tombigbee? What, and where is the capital of each of the Southern states? What great canal commences at Washington? What great rail road at Baltimore? What waters are connected by the Dismal Swamp canal? Near what river in Virginia does the gold region commence? Ans. The Roanoke. Which side of the Blue Ridge does it extend, and through what states? What number of men are supposed to be employed in all the mines within this region? Ans. 20,000. What amount of gold is thought to be produced annually? Ans. Four or five millions of dollars. Where is the greater part of it sent? Ans. To France and other parts of Europe. Which two states are at present most interested in the gold mines?

What are some of the leading traits of character in the Southern planters? Ans. They are descendants of rich planters from England, and like their ancestors, are fond of rural sports and exercises, and usually characterized by hospitality, and generosity, a high sense of honor, and an independence of spirit and deportment

WESTERN STATES.

LOUISIANA, MISSISSIPPI, TENNESSEE, KENTUCKY, OHIO, INDIANA, ILLINOIS, MISSOURI.

LOUISIANA.

Extent 49,000 square miles—Pop. 215,000—5 per square mile. Slaves, 109,600.

Louisiana is a level and naturally fertile state, embracing immense marshes, prairies, and pine forests. That part of the state which borders on the Gulf of Mexico, for 30 miles above the mouth of the Mississippi, consists of one continued marsh or swamp of reeds, generally destitute of timber and intersected by numerous streams or estuaries, connected with the Mississippi. In the

south-western part are vast prairies, occupying nearly one quarter of the state, peculiarly suited to purposes of grazing, and producing immense herds of cattle. The northern and north-western parts are broken and hilly, and contain large forests of pine. The richest and most cultivated portions of the state are the alluvial lands, on the borders of the Mississippi, Red river, and smaller streams.

Cotton, sugar, and rice, are the staple productions. Oranges, lemons, figs, pomegranates, and other tropical fruits, are plenty in the southern parts. It is estimated that there are in Louisiana, not far from 700 sugar plantations, producing, some years, 80,000 hogsheads of sugar, and that the average annual profit of the labor of each slave is about 400 dollars.

This state is divided into about 30 parishes. New Orleans, the capital, is situated on the east bank of the Mississippi, 100 miles from its mouth. The plan of the city is regular. The streets are wide, crossing each other at right angles. The suburbs are adorned with beautiful gardens and orange groves. As the ground on which the city is built, is lower than the surface of the river, the waters are confined by an artificial embankment, called the levee, which extends more than 100 miles, securing the low country from inundation.

New Orleans is favored with great commercial advantages. It is the grand depot or emporium for the wide and fruitful Mississippi valley. The number of ships, steamboats, and flat boats, which visit it, is immense. The population of this city is about 50,000, composed of French, English, and various other nations and languages, and it is easy to predict its future and rapidly increasing greatness and celebrity.

Baton Rouge, and St. Francisville, on the Mississippi, and Natchitoches, on Red River, are growing towns. Donaldsonville is an important town, and recently, for a short season, it was the seat of government. A rail road has been laid out, perfectly straight, and almost perfectly level, between New Orleans and lake Ponchartrain, a distance of about five miles.

General education has received but little encouragement. There is a Roman Catholic college at New Orleans, and academies are established in various places. The Roman Catholic is the prevailing religion; but the Baptists and Methodists are increasing in numbers. The French inhabitants in this state are numerous, and are distinguished for their rural simplicity and unenterprising genius and character

QUESTIONS.

How is Louisiana bounded? What is its extent? Its population? Give a general description of the state. What are its two largest rivers? What is the principal branch of the Red river? What small river partly separates it from the state of Mississippi? Mention some of the bays and lakes. Describe that part of the state which borders on the Gulf of Mexico. Describe the south western part. The northern and north western parts. What river divides Louisiana from Texas? What small river partly separates it from the state of Mississippi? What are the richest and most cultivated parts? What are the three staple products? How many sugar plantations? What amount of sugar do they annually produce? How many parishes in this state? What great city? What is the situation of New Orleans? Describe it. With what extensive fruitful valley is New Orleans connected? What other important towns? Where is each situated? What lake, 30 miles long, north of New Orleans? Describe the rail road between New Orleans and Lake Ponchartrain. What is the state of learning? What is the prevailing religion? When was Louisiana sold by France to the United States? Ans. In 1803. When admitted as a state into the Union? Ans. In 1812.

MISSISSIPPI.

Extent, 48,000 square miles—Pop. 137,000—3 per square mile.
Slaves 66,000.

Mississippi, in extent, is about equal to Alabama, Louisiana, or North Carolina. The population is comparatively very small, but rapidly increasing.

This state, in general, has a level or undulating surface, and a soil of distinguished fertility. The western border all along the Mississippi, is rich, hilly land, or, to a considerable extent, composed of river bottoms, which is annually inundated. The alluvial soil on the banks of the smaller streams, is very fertile. But a great portion of the state is covered with pine forests. The south-western corner contains the greatest quantity of good land, and the principal settlements of the whites. Settlements, however, are fast extending into the central and south-eastern sections.

The northern half of the state, is chiefly in the possession of the Choctaw and Chickasaw Indians, though many of the Choctaws have recently removed west of the Mississippi. Cotton, corn, rice, and sugar, are the principal productions. The number of counties is 26.

Natchez, the chief town, is beautifully situated, and has an extensive trade. Population 2,800. Jackson, on the Pearl river, is the seat of government. Port Gibson, Vicksburg, Woodville and Monticello, are thriving towns.

Provision is making for internal improvements, and for the advancement of education. Several flourishing seminaries are established; 8,000 or 9,000 children, however, are supposed to be destitute of instruction. At Washington and Shieldsborough, are two incorporated colleges. The principal religious denominations, are Methodists, Baptists, and Presbyterians.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Mississippi? What is its extent? Its population? By what two rivers is it chiefly separated from Louisiana? What river runs south near the line between this state and Alabama? What large river rises in this state and runs into Alabama? Where do the Yazoo and Big Black rivers empty? What is the general character of the surface and soil? What are the surface and soil of the western border? What soil on the banks of the smaller streams? With what is a great part of the state covered? Which corner contains the chief settlements? What two tribes of Indians on the north? What missionary stations in this state? What productions? How many counties? What are the chief towns, and where situated? What and where is the capital? Where are Port Gibson and Monticello? What is said of internal improvement and education? Of colleges and seminaries? What are the principal religious denominations? When was Mississippi admitted, as a state, into the Union? Ans. In 1817.

TENNESSEE.

Extent, 40,000 square miles—Pop. 682,000—17 per square mile.
Slaves, 142,000.

Tennessee originally belonged to the state of North Carolina. It is pleasantly diversified with hills, valleys, and mountains, affording much grand and picturesque scenery, and yielding luxuriant crops. It is divided into East and West Tennessee by the Cumberland mountains. The climate is pleasant and salubrious. The winter is short and mild. In West Tennessee, the surface is plain, or moderately hilly, and the soil deep and productive. East Tennessee is very mountainous, but the land in the valleys is often exceedingly fertile. The great business of the people is agriculture. Cotton, tobacco, wheat, Indian corn, and hemp, are staple commodities, and produced in abundance. East Tennessee furnishes vast numbers of cattle for the markets on the Atlantic.

Iron ore, gypsum, and marble, abound; and in some parts, there are lead mines, and salt springs. Gold is found in several places. The state is divided into 62 counties, of which, 40 are in West Tennessee. The largest town, and the seat of government, is Nashville, situated in the midst of a fertile and populous region. It is a beautiful place. Population 6,000. Knoxville is on the Holston river, in East Tennessee. Population 3,000. Murfreesborough, near the centre, was the former capital.

There are three colleges, viz.: at Nashville, Knoxville, and Maysville. The first of these, is an institution of great importance and promise. The Cherokee country extends into this state on the south-east, where Brainerd, the celebrated missionary station, is located.

QUESTIONS.

How is Tennessee bounded? What is its extent? Its population? To what state did it originally belong? Give a general description of the state. Into what sections is the state divided? By what mountains? What mountains separate it from north Carolina? What are the principal rivers? What is the climate? Describe West

Tennessee. East Tennessee. What is the great business of the people? What are the staple commodities? Which section furnishes vast numbers of cattle for the Atlantic markets? What are the mineral products? What is the capital and largest town? Where situated? On what river is Knoxville? Where is Murfreesborough? Where are the three colleges? In what part is the country of the Cherokees? What missionary station? When was Tennessee made a separate state and admitted into the Union? Ans. In 1796. What are the principal religious denominations? Ans. Methodists, Baptists, and Presbyterians.

KENTUCKY.

Extent 40,000 square miles—Pop. 688,000—17 per square mile.
Slaves 165,000.

Kentucky is extensively bordered and traversed by navigable streams, and is remarkable for the vast bed of limestone, which extends through the greatest part of the state, lying about eight feet below the surface of the soil, and containing numerous caves and chasms, which, at times, absorb the rivers and fountains, and contribute to a scarcity of water. Its rivers are generally rapid, and flow in deep channels. The northern border, all along the Ohio, next to the river bottoms, is hilly and broken, but often rich, valuable land. The south-eastern division is mountainous. The remaining parts of the state are of a plain, or undulating surface.

The soil, in general, is very fertile, especially on the north-east, producing in abundance, hemp, tobacco, wheat, and corn. Manufactures are very flourishing, and consist chiefly of hemp, cloth, ropes, cordage, and salt. Vast quantities of salt are manufactured from the numerous salt springs, affording a supply for this, and some of the neighboring states. In 1830, 137,000 bushels were made.

There are 83 counties in this state. One of the largest towns is Lexington, on the Elkhorn. It is handsomely built, surrounded by a most delightful country, and beautiful scenery, and distinguished for its manufactures, refinement, and wealth. Population 6,100. Louisville, on the Ohio, is now the most populous town in the state, and rapidly growing in commerce, manufactures, and opulence. Population 13,000. Maysville, on the Ohio, is also a flourishing commercial and manufacturing town. Population 3,000. The seat of government is Frankfort, on the Kentucky. Its state house is of superior elegance. Population 2,000.

There are several literary institutions in this state. Transylvania University, at Lexington, is of extensive reputation, and connected with a law and a medical school. At Bardstown, is St. Joseph's College, a Catholic seminary; at Danville, is Centre College, in a very flourishing condition. The privileges of common-school education are not extensively enjoyed. Baptists.

Methodists, and Presbyterians, are the principal religious denominations.

This state abounds in natural curiosities, among which, the Mammoth Cave is distinguished. It is eight or ten miles in length, and includes several apartments, the largest of which, contains eight acres, and is entirely overspread with one solid arch, 100 feet high, but destitute of any pillars for its support. The banks of the river Kentucky are, in some places, sublime beyond description, being 300 feet in perpendicular height, composed of solid limestone. The banks of the streams, in general, are very high and picturesque. In some parts of Kentucky, hundreds of huge bones, and enormous tusks of the elephant, mastodon, and mammoth, have been dug up from the depth of 20 feet below the surface, far below the roots of the largest forest rees. They are supposed by some, to be the relics of an antediluvian age.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Kentucky? What is its extent? Population? Number of counties? For what is this state remarkable? What river separates it from Missouri? What rivers from Kentucky flow into the Ohio? What mountains, in part, divide it from Virginia? Describe the northern border of the state. Which part is mountainous? What is the character of the soil in general? What are the principal productions? The manufactures? Where is Lexington? Describe it. What is the most populous town in the state? Where is Louisville? What is its population? Where is Maysville? What and where is the capital? What literary institutions? What is the state of common education? What are the principal religious denominations? Does this state abound in natural curiosities? Describe the Mammoth Cave. Describe the banks of the Kentucky river. What huge bones have been dug up in this state? From what depth? To what state did Kentucky originally belong? *Ans.* Virginia. When was the first settlement in it commenced? *Ans.* In 1773. When was it admitted into the Union as a state? *Ans.* In 1792.



View of Cincinnati.

OHIO.

Extent 40,000 square miles—Pop. 938,000—23 per square mile.

Ohio is a large and fertile state, inhabited by a people of distinguished enterprise in agriculture, manufactures, commerce, and internal improvements, and increasing with unexampled rapidity, in wealth, population, and importance. This state is principally settled by emigrants from various states and countries, especially from the northern and middle states of the Union.

The northern, central, and western portions of the state, are level, and in some places marshy. The eastern and south eastern parts are hilly and broken.

Ohio embraces extensive prairies, particularly on the head waters of the Muskingum and Scioto, and between the Scioto and the sources of the two Miami rivers. The high land in the middle of the state is the most wet and marshy. The most dry and richest is on the banks of the rivers. The numerous tracts of interval land along the Ohio and some of its branches are fertile and luxuriant in the highest degree. The country bordering on the Scioto and the Miami, is also noted for its fertility. The staple production is wheat; but other grains, grass, hemp, and flax, succeed well. Iron ore and pit coal are abundant, and there are many salt springs.

Ohio is divided into 73 counties. The north eastern part,

called the Western Reserve, contains seven counties and 3,000,000 of acres.

The capital is Columbus, on the Scioto, a flourishing manufacturing town. Population 2,500.

Cincinnati, on the Ohio, in the south west corner of the state, is the principal city, and the great metropolis of this part of the Union. The plan of the city is regular. The streets are handsome, and adorned with elegant public buildings and private dwellings. It has 24 churches, four markets, a Medical and a Theological seminary, and 18 public schools. Its manufactures and trade are extensive, and continually increasing. The building of steam boats is a great branch of business; no less than 130 have been built here. Immense quantities of flour, pork, tobacco and other produce, are every year conveyed down the river in steam boats to New Orleans. The growth of Cincinnati has been remarkable; 650 new buildings have been erected in one year. The population is now more than 30,000, nine tenths of which are contained within the compass of a mile square.

Steubenville, Zanesville, Chilicothe, and Dayton, are growing towns, containing each about 3,000 inhabitants. Marietta on the Ohio, and Cleaveland on Lake Erie, are also considerable places.

The great Ohio canal extends across the state, from Portsmouth on the Ohio, to Cleaveland, a distance of 320 miles. The Miami canal extends from Dayton on the Miami, to Cincinnati, 67 miles.

The principal seminaries are the Miami University at Oxford, the Ohio University at Athens, Kenyon College at Gambier, the Western Reserve College, and the Lane Seminary, a promising Theological Institution at Cincinnati. Common schools are generally established in the villages, and legal provision is made for their support and regulation.

The Presbyterians, Baptists, and Methodists, are the most numerous religious denominations.

The settlement of Ohio was commenced at Marietta, in 1788, by General Putnam, and a Company from Massachusetts. In 1802 it was made one of the states of the Union. It then contained about 50,000 inhabitants.

QUESTIONS.

How is the state of Ohio bounded? What are its extent and population? Give general description of the state. By whom is it principally settled? Describe the face of the country in the northern, central, and western parts. In the eastern and

south eastern parts. Where are the principal prairies in Ohio? Which is the wettest and most marshy part of the state? Where is the dryest and richest land? Where does the Ohio river commence and terminate? What is its length? What are its principal branches in this state? What vegetable and mineral productions? How many counties? What is the capital, and on what river? What is the largest city? What is said of the plan of Cincinnati? Of its streets? Of its manufactures and trade? Of the building of steam boats? Of the growth of the city? Of its population? Where is Steubenville? Zanesville? Chillicothe? Dayton? Marietta? Sandusky? Cleaveland? Athens? Portsmouth? Of what length is the Ohio canal, and what places and waters is it designed to connect? Of what length, and between what places, is the Miami canal? What are the principal seminaries? What is said of common schools? What are the most numerous religious denominations? When, where, and by whom, was the settlement of Ohio commenced? When did it become one of the United States?

INDIANA.

Extent, 35,000 sq. miles—Pop. 342,000—10 per sq. mile.

Indiana, in general, is a very level and fertile state, embracing some rich prairies. It is watered by numerous streams, and favored by nature in a high degree, with the advantages of internal navigation.

The great river of this state is the Wabash, which is navigable for steam boats to Lafayette, 370 miles. Its head waters approach near to those of the Maumee, emptying into Lake Erie, and a canal 200 miles long, is contemplated, to unite these two rivers. The trade on the Wabash is very great, and the number of flat boats employed is astonishing. The White river and east Fork are the chief branches of the Wabash. The northern half of the state is principally unsettled, or is occupied by the Indians.

The crops of Indiana are similar to those of Ohio. Pork, lard, corn, meal, and stock, are exported in large quantities.

The number of counties is 69. Indianapolis on White river is the capital. Population 1,400. New Albany, on the Ohio, is the most populous town, and in a pleasant and healthy situation. Population 5,000. Vincennes, on the Wabash, and Madison, on the Ohio, contain each about 2,000 inhabitants. Richmond, Corydon, and Salem, are flourishing places. Vevay, on the Ohio, is distinguished as the residence of the Swiss emigrants, who successfully cultivate the vine here. The village contains about 200 houses. Their vineyards, half a mile below the village, are said to produce annually, 8,000 gallons of wine.

Bloomington is the seat of a new college, whose prospects are promising. At Hanover, is a flourishing Theological academy.

This state has made an appropriation of lands for the support of common schools. The cause of education is liberally pa-

tronized, and a number of seminaries of respectable character are established in various places.

The principal religious denominations are Baptists, Methodists, and Presbyterians.

A public road, between Indianapolis and Michigan Territory is in progress; and a rail road from Indianapolis to Louisville, is projected. The national road from Columbus to St Louis, will pass through the centre of this state, and contribute to its prosperity.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Indiana? Its extent and population? Give a general description of the state. What are its principal rivers. Where does the Wabash empty, and what are its two chief branches? What river from this state enters Lake Erie? What canal is contemplated? What is said of the northern half of the state? What are the crops? What are the exports? What is the number of counties? What is the capital? On what river? What town is the most populous? Where situated? On what river are Vincennes and Madison? What other flourishing places? Where is Vevay? For what distinguished? What college in the state? What Theological school? What provision is made for the support of common schools? How is the cause of education patronized? What roads are contemplated? What are the principal religious denominations? Whence did the people of Indiana chiefly emigrate? Ans. From Kentucky, Tennessee, Virginia, and North and South Carolina? When was Indiana admitted into the Union? Ans. In 1816.

ILLINOIS.

Extent, 58,000 sq. miles—Pop. 158,000—nearly 3 per sq. mile.

Illinois is a large, level, and well watered state, whose general fertility is considered superior to that of any other in the Union. A great proportion of it consists of immense prairies and river bottoms. The prairies constitute nearly two thirds of the surface; and the fires which sweep over them in autumn, tend to perpetuate their existence. There is far less waste marshy ground, than in Ohio and Indiana, and the plains are more extensively adapted to cultivation, or pasturage. The extent of the prairies in the middle and northern parts, is often greater than the eye can reach, and they are generally destitute of forest trees, and covered in the summer with long grass, and innumerable splendid flowers. The forests are remarkable for heavy timber and furnish many examples of trees of enormous size.

The climate near the large rivers, is at certain seasons, foggy and unhealthy; but the interior, for the most part, is favored with a dry and healthy atmosphere. The winters are comparatively mild,

The staple products are wheat, indian corn, potatoes, tobacco, cattle, horses, and sheep. Indian corn, especially, has a very

luxuriant growth, and is raised with little labor. The number of swine fattened and exported, is almost incalculable. Considerable cotton, of a good quality, is raised, and manufactured for domestic uses. Honey and beeswax are produced in vast quantities. Coal and iron, are abundant. The lead mines near Galena, in the north western corner of the state, are of great extent and richness, occupying a tract of more than a hundred miles square, and have produced in a year 16 millions of pounds of lead. Near Shawneetown, on the south-east, are salt springs, and here are the United States' salt works, which annually produce about 300,000 bushels of salt.

The number of counties in the state is 58. The white inhabitants are settled chiefly in the southern part. The more northern parts are unsettled, or occupied by Indians. The capital is Vandalia, on the Kaskaskia. Population 1,200. The original French settlements were at Kaskaskia and Cahokia, the oldest towns in the state.

Edwardsville, Shawneetown, Jacksonville, and Albion, are thriving places.

A straight national road is now constructing, from Vandalia to Terre Haute, in the western part of Indiana, a distance of 90 miles. A canal is in contemplation, 70 miles in length, to unite the head waters of the Illinois, with Lake Michigan.

The Illinois College, at Jacksonville, promises great usefulness. At Rock Spring, is an interesting Theological Institution. Land is reserved for the support of common schools, of which there are, in the state, between 500 and 600, besides 50 sabbath schools. Still there are multitudes of men, women, and children here, unable to read. But the friends of education are awake, and making great efforts and sacrifices, to spread knowledge and virtue among the people.

The Baptists have about 70 ministers, the Methodists 45, and the Presbyterians, 13.

Illinois became a member of the Union in 1818, when it contained 35,000 inhabitants.

QUESTIONS.

How is Illinois bounded? What is its extent? Its population? Give a general description of the state. What is the climate? What are the staple products? Mention some other products of the state. What minerals are abundant? What lead mines? What extent of country do they occupy? How much lead have they produced in a year? What salt works? How much do they annually produce? Where are the white inhabitants chiefly settled? In what part are the Indians? What two rivers belong exclusively to this state? Ans. The Illinois and Kaskaskia. What river in part separates it from Indiana? What from Kentucky? What from Missouri? What is the capital, and on what river? Where is Kaskaskia? Edwardsville? Shawneetown? Jacksonville? Albion? What large lake touches the north eastern

corner of the state? What national road in progress? What canal is contemplated? What college in this state? What Theological institution? What is said of common schools? Of the religious denominations? When was Illinois admitted into the Union?

MISSOURI.

Extent, 65,000 sq. miles—Pop. 140,000—2 per square mile.
Slaves 25,000.

Missouri is one of the largest of the United States. It is variegated with plains, hills, and mountains, favored with a pure and temperate atmosphere, and a healthful climate, possessing a soil extremely various, but very fertile on the prairies, and along the rivers.

This state is distinguished for its extensive and inexhaustible lead mines, which, with the exception of those in Illinois, are supposed to be the richest in the world. They are in the eastern part of the state, occupying a district of several hundred miles in extent, employ 1,200 laborers, and produce three million pounds of lead annually. There are valuable beds of coal, and iron ore is found in large quantities.

The common products of the soil are wheat, corn, rye, and oats. The warmer districts produce cotton. Many cattle are raised on the prairies. Thousands of furs, deer skins, and buffalo robes, are collected at St. Louis. Agriculture and mining are the chief employments of the people.

There are 38 counties. The people are principally settled near the great rivers, on which many flourishing villages are springing up.

Jefferson, on the Missouri, is the seat of government. St. Louis is much the largest and most commercial town in this region, and bids fair to become an immense city. Its situation for trade is one of the best in the world. It is 1,200 miles from New Orleans. Several steam boats are employed, regularly running to and from this city, and perform the trip in about 24 days. There are also many others passing up the Mississippi and the Missouri, or ascending the Ohio, to Louisville, Cincinnati, and Pittsburg. The population of St. Louis is about 7,000.

Potosi is in the centre of the mining district. St. Genevieve, and Herculaneum, are the principal places for the trade in lead.

There is a Catholic college recently established at St. Louis, and another Catholic seminary in the southern part of the state, besides a number of convents for the education of young females. Near Palmyra is a new Presbyterian college.

The Baptists in this state have 67 ministers, the Methodists

23, the Presbyterians 10, and the Roman Catholic churches and priests are considerably numerous.

The state, of morals and religion in Missouri, is said to be improving. The country west of this state is now called the Osage District, and contains 92,000 square miles.

QUESTIONS

What are the boundaries of Missouri? What is its extent? Its population? Its number of slaves? What mountains from the south extend into it? What large river passes through it? What are some of the branches of the Missouri? What large river bounds it on the east? How is this state variegated? How is the atmosphere described? The climate? The soil? For what is Missouri distinguished? In what part are the lead mines? Describe them. What other minerals? What does the soil produce? What are the chief employments of the people? How many counties? Where are the people principally settled? What and where is the capital? The chief town? Describe it. How far from St. Louis to New Orleans? Where is Potosi? On what river are St. Genevieve and Herculaneum? What college? What other schools? What religious denominations? When was Missouri admitted into the Union? Ans. In 1821.

REVIEW OF THE WESTERN STATES.

Between what parallels of latitude is the western section of the Union situated? By what lakes and territories is it bounded on the north? By what mountains and states is it bounded on the east? By what gulf on the south? By what territories on the west? What is the general character of the surface and soil? What is the number of square miles and the population? Ans. About 370,000 square miles, and the population is 3,300,000, averaging nine persons to a square mile. What is the number, and what are the names of the Western states? What are the boundaries and capital of each? Which extends farthest north? Which farthest east? Which farthest south? Which farthest west? Which is the largest, and how large? Which the smallest, and of what size? Which is the second in size? Which three are about equal in extent, and how large is each? Which contains the most inhabitants? Which the most slaves? Which three contain the most prairie land? Which one contains the most good soil? Why are these states often said to belong to the valley of the Mississippi? By what three large rivers are they watered? What are the length and the principal branches of the Mississippi? Of the Missouri? Of the Ohio?

What is the largest town in each of the Western states, what its population and its direction from Washington, from New Orleans, and from Cincinnati? Which are the two largest and most commercial towns in all this region? Which is the largest town west of the Mississippi? What three rivers meet near St. Louis? Where is Lexington? Monticello? Jefferson? Jackson? Vandalia? Indianapolis? Marietta? Columbus? Murfreesborough? Knoxville? Nashville? and Louisville? What is the most common occupation of the people of the Western states? What are the most valuable productions of the southern part? What of the northern? Which of these states produce the most wheat and corn? Which the most cotton and sugar? Which the most hemp and tobacco? Which the most lead? Which the most salt? Which the most wine? Which sends the most pork to New Orleans? Which is most remarkable for limestone rock, vast caverns, awful precipices, and enormous bones and skeletons? How many steam boats are there running on the western waters? Ans. About 250.

TERRITORIES.

FLORIDA, MICHIGAN, HURON, ARKANSAS, MISSOURI, OREGON.

FLORIDA.

Extent, 55,000 square miles—Pop. 35,000—Slaves, 15,000.

Florida is a low, level, and sandy region, especially on the sea coast. The soil to a great extent is barren or indifferent, but very fertile near the rivers and lakes. The principal river is St. John's, flowing from the south into the Atlantic. There are numerous lakes, ponds, and marshes. The peninsula is intersected by a ridge of limestone rocks. The southern part is an extensive marsh, and terminates in the craggy rocks of Cape Sable.

The climate is warm, and suited to tropical productions, such as cotton, coffee, rice, sugar, oranges, olives, and figs. Some orange trees are supposed to be 150 years of age. There is a rich variety of flowering shrubs. The trees of the forests are beautiful and majestic, among which is an abundance of the live oak, remarkable for its durability, and its adaptedness to ship building. There is a large quarry of stone, consisting of a concretion of shells, which is esteemed valuable as building stone, and the houses in St. Augustine are generally built of it.

Florida is thinly peopled, and not extensively cultivated or explored. Tallahassee is the seat of government. Population 1,000. St. Augustine, on the east coast, is pleasantly situated and regularly laid out, favored with a salubrious atmosphere, and distinguished as the resort of invalids. Population 4,000. Pensacola, on the north west, is near a fine bay of the same name, on an elevated, dry, sandy plain. Population 3,000. The territory is divided into 15 counties. A great proportion of the inhabitants are Spaniards. Some fruitful districts are occupied by a remnant of the Seminole Indians.

QUESTIONS.

See the map of North America, and of the United States.

What are the names of the territories in the United States? Is Florida a peninsula or an island? How is it bounded? What are its extent and population? What cape at the southern extremity? What large swamp on the northern frontier? What two islands on the north-east? What cluster of islands at some distance south-east of Florida? What gulf between Florida and the Bahama islands? Ans. The Gulf of Florida. What remarkable stream passes through this gulf? Ans. The gulf stream, whose current is here so violent as to cause frequent shipwrecks. What river partly divides Florida from Georgia? What large river from Georgia crosses Florida on

the north-west? What long river in Florida running north-east? What are the surface and soil of Florida? Are there many lakes and marshes? Of what does the southern part consist? What are the climate and productions of Florida? What is said of the shrubs? Of the trees of the forests? Of the live oak? Of the quarry of stone? What is the capital? Where is it situated? Where is St. Augustine? Describe it. How is Pensacola situated? How many counties in Florida? Of what nation are a great proportion of the inhabitants? What Indians? When was Florida ceded by Spain to the United States? Ans. In 1821.

MICHIGAN.

Extent 38,000 square miles—Pop. 35,000—1 per square mile.

The Territory of Michigan is a peninsula, bordered by four lakes, and watered by numerous small rivers. It is divided into 36 counties. It is generally a level, and very fertile country, except along the eastern shore of Lake Michigan, where there are barren sand hills extending from the lake towards the interior.

The climate on the north is severely cold, but in the southern and eastern parts, where the principal settlements are found, it is mild and pleasant. The soil is of surprising depth and richness, and the vegetation most luxuriant. The territory is abundantly supplied with wild game and aquatic fowls, and with fish of the finest quality. Its advantages for commerce are peculiar; and the fur trade is very extensive and profitable. The tide of emigration is fast setting into this region.

Detroit, the seat of government, is situated on Detroit river, and rapidly increasing in population and business. Population 3,000. This river is about a mile wide and very deep. Mackinac, or Mackinaw, situated on an island of the same name, is important as a military post, and as the resort of fur traders. A flourishing Christian mission is established here.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries, extent, and population of Michigan territory? What three large lakes border upon it? What small lake on the east? Ans. St. Clair. What strait and island on the north? What two bays? What islands in Lake Michigan? What rivers empty into it from this territory? Describe the surface and soil. What is the climate? With what game is Michigan well supplied? What is said of its commerce and fur trade? What is the situation of Detroit? Of Mackinac or Mackinaw? For what is it important? Where is Fort St. Clair? Saginaw? Brownstown and Frenchtown? Jacksonburg? Byron?

DISTRICT OF HURON, OR N. W. TERRITORY.

Extent 120,000 square miles—Population 5,000.

This is an extensive territory, little explored, and inhabited chiefly by Indians. It is attached to Michigan. The northern

parts are cold, mountainous and sterile, but naturally rich in minerals, as iron, copper, and lead. The surface in general is level and often marshy. In some sections, there are immense prairies and large forests of pine.

A wide and noble field is afforded for hunting. The bison or buffalo, elk and deer, are numerous, as are also the beaver, otter, and muskrat, which are valuable for their furs. The shallow lakes, and low wet lands, abound in wild rice, which constitutes a great part of the food of the Indians.

On Green Bay, at the mouth of Fox river, is a settlement containing about 1,000 inhabitants; and on the Mississippi, is the village of Prairie du Chien, (Prare du Shen,) distinguished as a place of trade with the Indians. The lead mines on the southwest are of great extent and value.

QUESTIONS.

How is the District of Huron bounded? Ans. It is bounded on the north and northwest by Lake Superior, Rainy Lake, and the Lake of the Woods, on the east by Lake Michigan, and the river St. Mary's, on the south by Illinois, and west by the Mississippi. What is its extent? What bay and small lakes within this territory? What riverain it run into lake Superior? Into Lake Michigan? Into the Mississippi? Into Green Bay? By whom is this region chiefly inhabited? Describe the northern parts. What is the surface in general? What is said of the prairies and forests? What game is common? What kind of wild grain, and where does it grow? Where are the two principal white settlements? What tribes of Indians on the north? What on the south?

ARKANSAS.

Extent 60,000 square miles—Pop. 30,400—Slaves 4,500.

The western parts of this territory are bordered by the Ozark mountains, which extend into the District of Ozark. The eastern part is a low, level region, covered with thick forests, and possessing a moist and unhealthy climate. On the west are prairies of vast extent, reaching beyond the western boundary of the territory. A great proportion of the soil in Arkansas is extremely rich. The lands on the White river are accounted the best, and they are perhaps equal to any in the United States. Wheat, corn, oats, cotton, rice, and tobacco, are, or may be, produced here in great abundance. The prairies abound in tall grass, on which the bison, elk, deer, wild horses, and other wild animals, feed in immense herds.

Salt springs are very numerous, and there are many hot medicinal springs. A tract of salt, 100 miles wide, extends through the territory, from north to south, and includes a salt prairie several miles in extent, covered to the depth of six inches, with

pure, white, crystalized salt. The territory is divided into 23 counties.

The capital is Little Rock or Arkopolis, pleasantly situated on the Arkansas, 300 miles from its mouth. Population 600. Arkansas has an elevated situation on the same river. It is an old French settlement. Population 800. Dwight is a missionary station among the Cherokees. It is on a branch of the Arkansas, 130 miles from Arkopolis. Union is a missionary station on Grand river, among the Osages of the Arkansas, established in 1820. The moral and religious improvement of Arkansas is going on, through the instrumentality of the Methodists, Baptists, and the Cumberland Presbyterians. The District of Ozark lies west of this territory, and contains 83,000 square miles.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Arkansas? Its extent and population? Its principal rivers? By what mountains is it traversed? Describe the eastern part. The western. What is the soil? Where is the land the richest? What are the productions? In what do the prairies abound? What animals range over them? What kind of springs are found in this territory? Describe the salt region. How many counties in Arkansas? What and where is the capital town? Where is the town of Arkansas? Where are Dwight and Union, the two missionary stations? Where is Fort Smith? Spadra? Cadron? Davidsonville? Batesville? What religious sects here? Where is the District of Ozark?



Wild Horses.

MISSOURI TERRITORY.

Square miles, 800,000.

This territory is a vast wilderness, resembling a desert, extending from the state of Missouri and the river Mississippi, to

the Rocky mountains. It is a region of open elevated plains, generally destitute of forest trees, and interspersed with barren hills.

It is inhabited almost exclusively by various tribes of Indians, and traversed by herds of wild horses and buffaloes, which in some instances range by thousands in a drove, appearing almost to cover the face of the ground. The huge grisly bear inhabits the Rocky mountains. Wild game, in great variety, abounds in this territory, more, perhaps, than in any other part of the world; and on this account, it has been styled the paradise of hunters. Vast quantities of buffalo skins and furs are here collected. The richest and most valuable lands are found in the neighborhood of the great streams, which are usually bordered by well timbered forests. But in many parts, especially towards the Rocky mountains, there are extensive deserts of sand, and there is a general scarcity of timber, springs, and mill seats.

Council Bluff, a military post of the United States, is on the Missouri, 800 miles from the Mississippi. Harmony is a missionary station among the Osages.

The northern part of Missouri Territory, between the Mississippi and Missouri rivers, is now called Sioux District. It contains 162,000 square miles. The north western part, reaching to the Rocky mountains, has the name of Mandan District. It contains 295,000 square miles.

QUESTIONS.

How is the Missouri territory bounded? How many square miles is it supposed to contain? What kind of region is it? By whom inhabited? By what animals traversed? Why has this region been called the paradise of hunters? Where are the richest lands, and the principal forests? In what part do the sandy deserts most prevail? Of what is there a general scarcity in this territory? Where is Council Bluff, and what is it? What Indians in the south eastern part? What missionary station? Where are the Falls of St. Anthony? What great river in this territory? Where does the Missouri empty, and how long is it? What three rivers unite in its formation? What are its principal branches? What are the principal tribes of Indians? Where is the Sioux district? The Mandan district?

OREGON TERRITORY.

Extent, 300,000 square miles.—Population 80,000.

This territory extends westerly from the Rocky mountains to the Pacific ocean. It is a region but little explored by the whites. The number of Indians inhabiting it, has been estimated at 80,000. The climate is said to be milder than that of the same latitudes on the Atlantic.

The principal rivers are the Columbia and its branches. The soil on this river, for a great distance, is fertile, and abounds in

fir trees and pines, some of which are represented to be 200 or 300 feet in height, and 30 feet in circumference. The river produces vast quantities of salmon, which constitute no small part of the sustenance of the Indians on its banks. Eighteen miles above the mouth of the Columbia, is Astoria, an American settlement of fur traders.

Beaver are found in plenty, producing large quantities of valuable fur. The noble and extensive forests of Oregon, abound in the finest ship-timber, and are thronged with wild animals. Thousands of buffaloes have been seen within the compass of a mile. The wild horses are numerous, spirited, and elegant. The Indians are fond of taking and mounting them. There are many sheep on all the mountains, and large numbers of horned cattle, grazing on the hills toward the south.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Oregon territory? Who are the principal inhabitants? What is the estimated number of Indians? What is the climate? What are the principal rivers? Where does the Columbia rise and empty? What is the soil on its banks? What trees grow here? What kind of fish is abundant in this river? What American settlement on the Columbia? What is said of the beaver? Of the forests in general? Of the buffaloes? Of the horses, cattle, and sheep?

REVIEW OF THE UNITED STATES.

See Maps of North America and the United States.

In which of the two hemispheres are the United States? In which grand division of America? In what part of North America? Between what two oceans do they lie? How are they bounded on the north? How on the south? How many degrees north do they extend? How many degrees south? How many degrees from Louisiana, is the west coast? How many from Philadelphia? How many degrees from Louisiana is the east coast? How long would a straight rail road be from Boston to Astoria? What is the distance from Maine to Florida? How many acres are there in a square mile? Ans. 640: How many square miles in the whole extent of the United States? How many inhabitants? How many whites? How many colored people? How many Indians? How many states? How many territories? What districts?

What states touch the Atlantic? What the Gulf of Mexico? What the Mississippi river? What the Ohio? What do you understand by the valley of the Mississippi? What states and territories are included in it? By what great river is it watered? What are the four sections of the Union? How do they rank in size? How do they rank in respect to population? How much larger are the Western states than New England? Ans. About five or six times larger. Which is the largest of all the states, and about as large as New England?

Which is the largest of the territories, and about as extensive as the whole 24 states? Which is the second in size? Which the smallest? Which is the first state in the order of population, and containing about as many people as New England?

What is there peculiar in the surface and soil of New England? Of the western section? Of the middle section? Of the southern section? What is there remarkable in the products of Maine and Massachusetts? Of New York? Of New Jersey? Of Pennsylvania? Of Georgia and North Carolina? Of Louisiana? Of Kentucky? Of Ohio? Of Missouri? What section of the Union is most

thickly settled? In what part of the United States are the best harbors, the most shipping, and the most flourishing commerce? In what part, do manufactures flourish most? In what section of the country are common schools the most numerous, and the people best instructed in learning and religion? What are the name, population, and situation, of the largest city in the United States? Of the largest city in the Middle states? In the Southern states? In New England? In the Western states? What are the names and location of seven of the principal colleges in the United States? Where is William and Mary College? Williams College? Brown University? Transylvania University? The Western University? Hampden Sydney College? The University of Virginia? The University of Pennsylvania? Kenyon College? Hamilton College? The Western Reserve College? The Wesleyan University? What and where are some of the principal Theological seminaries? The most celebrated Medical schools?

BRITISH AMERICA.

White population, 1,000,000.

INTRODUCTORY QUESTIONS.

See Map of North America.

In what part of North America are the British possessions? What ocean bounds them on the north? What ocean and strait on the east? What country on the south? What mountains or countries on the west? What are the divisions of British America? Ans. New Britain, Upper and Lower Canada, New Brunswick and Nova Scotia, Newfoundland, and the islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. In what part of British America is New Britain? In what part are Upper and Lower Canada? Which of them extends west towards the lakes, and which east toward the Gulf of St. Lawrence? Between what state, and what gulf, is New Brunswick situated? Which way from New Brunswick is the peninsula of Nova Scotia? On which side of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, is the island of Newfoundland? What smaller islands in this gulf? What are the principal lakes in British America? What great lakes partly divide it from the United States? What rivers empty into Hudson's bay? What into James' bay? What great river, 2,000 miles long, flows from Slave lake into the Northern Ocean? What is the great river of Canada? For what is it remarkable? Ans. For the vast lakes which it serves to connect; for the magnitude and uniformity of its volume of water, and for its high tides, which sometimes rise 30 feet, and extend up the river for 400 miles. The valley of the St. Lawrence contains 500,000 square miles, naturally covered with dense forests.

NEW BRITAIN.

New Britain is the country lying round Hudson's bay, on the east, south and west. It is divided into Labrador, East Main, and New Wales.

Labrador is on the east coast. Its inhabitants, called Esquimaux, (Eskemo,) resemble the Greenlanders. Their number is about 1,600. They are of a dwarfish stature, and inferior minds. They dress in skins, feed on fish and the flesh of seals, and the reindeer, and travel in sledges drawn by large dogs.



Esquimaux Sledges.

The Moravians have four missionary stations among them, viz.: Okkok, Nain, Hopedale and Hebron. East Main lies on the east of Hudson's bay, and New Wales on the west and south.

The climate of New Britain is too cold for much vegetation. The surface is rocky; the soil barren and desolate. Wild animals abound, as beavers, bears, deer, and raccoons, which are taken in vast numbers by the Indians, who carry on an extensive and brisk fur trade with the English. Trading houses are established for this purpose, on the lakes and rivers. The English fur traders are divided into two companies, viz.: the Hudson's bay company, whose operations are confined near Hudson's bay, and the North West company, consisting of Montreal merchants, who extend their trade toward the Northern ocean, and the Rocky mountains. These enterprising traders, in their travels, make use of light birch bark canoes, which may be conveniently carried upon their shoulders, as occasion requires, in going round a rapid, or in passing from river to river. By this means they travel the country with their goods, for thousands of miles, in active and persevering prosecution of their trade.

QUESTIONS.

See Map of North America.

What is the situation of New Britain? How divided? In what part is Labrador? What are its inhabitants called? Whom do they resemble in person and manners? What is said of their persons, dress, and food? What is their mode of travelling? What are the names of the Moravian missionary stations on this coast? Where does East Main and New Wales lie? What is the climate of New Britain? The

surface? The soil? What are the wild animals? What kind of trade is largely carried on here? What are the two principal fur companies, and where do they trade? In what manner do the fur traders generally travel?

UPPER CANADA.

Extent, 100,000 square miles—Pop. 250,000—2 per square mile.

Upper Canada is bounded north by New Britain, north-east and east by Lower Canada, south-east and south by the United States. On the north-west, its boundaries are undefined. It is divided into eleven districts, whose subdivisions are counties and townships.

It has a very pleasant and salubrious climate, though subject to the extremes of heat and cold. In general the winter is milder and shorter, the spring earlier, the summer heat less oppressive, and the autumn more favorable, than in Lower Canada. A considerable portion of it is a rich and beautiful plain, and the soil excellent, especially in the townships along the river St. Lawrence, and on the lakes Ontario, Erie, and St. Clair, where the principal settlements and improvements are made.

The inhabitants generally are of English descent, and many of them are emigrants from the United States.

York and Kingston are the chief towns. The former is situated on the north-west part of Lake Ontario, and is the seat of government in this province. Population 8,000. The latter, is on the eastern shore of the lake, near the mouth of the St. Lawrence. It has a safe and convenient harbor, and is the chief rendezvous for the shipping on the lakes. Population 5,000.

Queenstown, near Niagara Falls, in the late war, was the scene of a bloody battle.

The principal articles of export are wheat, corn, fish, salt provisions, potashes, furs, timber, and lumber.

The Methodists are the prevailing religious denomination. Their missions among the Indians are flourishing.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Upper Canada? On what great river and lakes does it border? What is the climate? How are the seasons compared with those of Lower Canada? What are the surface and soil? What part of the province is the richest, most beautiful, and most settled? What is the number of inhabitants and of what descent? What is said of York? Of Kingston? Of Queenstown? What are the principal articles of export? What is the prevailing religious denomination? What is the state of their missions among the Indians?



View of Quebec.

LOWER CANADA.

Extent, 150,000 square miles—Pop. 512,000—3 per square mile.

Lower Canada is so called, because it lies lower down the river St. Lawrence, and nearer the gulf and the sea. It is bounded north by New Britain, and east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and the coast of Labrador, south by the United States, and west by Upper Canada, from which it is chiefly separated by the river Ottawas.

The extremes of the weather are more severe than in Upper Canada ; but the atmosphere is dry and pure, and the climate remarkably healthful. The winter is long, but serene and pleasant. The spring at Quebec commences six weeks later than at Montreal, and in some parts of Upper Canada. The summer heat breaks in suddenly upon the cool season, and though often excessive, it is of short continuance. Vegetation is rapid, with a brilliant verdure, and the products of the soil rise quick to maturity. The best and most cultivated lands, and the principal settlements, are along the valley of the St. Lawrence, which is bordered on both sides by elevated ridges of mountains, running in a north-east direction. The soil is very productive in grass and grain.

The number of settlers in this, and the neighboring provinces, is rapidly increasing, especially, as the tide of emigration is, every year, pouring in thousands. Since the year 1825, about 24,000 persons are said to have emigrated into this province.

Quebec is the seat of government for the Canadas, and for all British America. Here the Governor General resides, who has his commission from the king of England. This city is situated on a promontory, on the north-west side of the river St. Lawrence, about 350 miles from the sea. It is divided into the upper and lower town, which are separated by a line of steep rocks. The harbor of Quebec is sufficiently deep and capacious to contain 100 sail of the line; and its fortress, strengthened both by nature and art, is almost impregnable. Here the brave Gen. Wolfe fought and fell victoriously, in the conquest of Canada by the British, in 1759.

Montreal is situated on the island of Montreal, in the same river, 180 miles above Quebec. It is distinguished as the centre of a very extensive and valuable fur trade, and as the great channel of commerce between Canada and the United States. The population of Montreal is more than 25,000, and that of Quebec, nearly the same.

One of the most remarkable natural curiosities in Lower Canada, is the falls of Montmorency, seven miles below Quebec, where the waters of the river are precipitated, with astonishing beauty and grandeur, in an almost perpendicular fall of 240 feet.

Canada was taken from the French, who were the former owners; and about three fourths of the inhabitants, at present, are of French extraction, speaking the French language, and professing the Roman Catholic religion. Episcopacy and other branches of Protestantism, are increasing in influence. Common education is much neglected, and ignorance and vice are prevalent among the people. Not half of the children are taught to read and write. The number of scholars in all the seminaries and schools, is but about 49,000. Upper and Lower Canada became separate provinces in 1791.

QUESTIONS.

Why is Lower Canada so called? How is it bounded? What river separates it from Upper Canada? What is said of the weather and climate? Of the winter and spring? Of the summer heat? Of vegetation? Where are the chief settlements, and the best land? By what is the vale of the St. Lawrence bordered? In what is the soil productive? What is the seat of government? Where is Quebec situated? How is it divided? What is said of its harbor and fortress? When did the fall of General Wolfe, and the conquest of Canada take place? How is Montreal situated? For what distinguished? Where are the falls of Montmorency? How far does the water fall?

From whom was Canada taken by the British? What part of the present population are French? What is said of the religion? Of common education? What is the number of scholars in all the seminaries? When did Upper and Lower Canada become separate provinces?

NEW BRUNSWICK.

Extent, 30,000 square miles,—Pop. 80,000.

The surface of New Brunswick is level on the coast, and mountainous in the interior. The climate resembles that of Lower Canada. The soil near the rivers is fertile, and suited to the production of grass and grain. The mountainous tracts are extensively covered with valuable timber, and many tall, noble pines, have been procured here for the use of the British navy.

The principal river is the St. Johns, which abounds in salmon, shad, and herring, and there is a great variety of fish on the coast. Timber, lumber, and fish, are the chief articles of export, and the principal sources of wealth to the inhabitants.

The seat of government is Frederickton, at the head of sloop navigation on the St. Johns. Population 1,850.

St. John is much the largest town in the province, and one of the most thriving in British America. It is near the mouth of the same river, and about 80 miles below Frederickton. It has had a rapid growth, is favored with a convenient harbor, and is a place of lively and increasing navigation. Many people and much shipping are here employed in the fisheries, and in the lumber trade. Population 8,000. There are 36 English missionaries employed in New Brunswick.

QUESTIONS.

How is New Brunswick bounded on the north? By what gulf on the east? By what bay on the south? By what state on the west? Describe the surface. The climate. The soil. What are the extent and population? What do the mountainous tracts produce? What is the principal river? Where does it rise and empty? In what does it abound? What are the chief articles of export? What is the capital, and where situated? The chief town? Describe it.

NOVA SCOTIA.

Extent, 15,000 square miles—Pop. 155,000, including the population of Cape Breton.

The peninsula of Nova Scotia is about 300 miles in length. The bay of Fundy, which divides it from New Brunswick on the west, is about 200 miles long, and is remarkable for the height and rapidity of its tides, which in some parts rise 60 feet, and so suddenly as to sweep off animals from the shore.

The climate of Nova Scotia is peculiarly damp, by reason of the surrounding sea, whose influence also tends to moderate the coldness of the atmosphere. The soil, in some parts, is thin and barren, but to a great extent, it is fertile and productive, es-

pecially in the south-eastern counties, and along the shore of the bay.

This region is noted for valuable mines of gypsum or plaster of Paris, which is here produced in great abundance, and exported in large quantities. Gypsum, lumber, and fish, are important means of support and gain to the people. A great proportion of the inhabitants are emigrants from New England. They have good harbors and good roads; are industrious and enterprising, and generally in a prosperous condition.

The established religion is that of the church of England. Between 30 and 40 English missionaries are here employed among the destitute.

Education is encouraged. There is a college at Windsor with a valuable library, and the villages in general are supplied with common schools. Halifax, on Chebucto bay, is the seat of government, and an important naval station. Its harbor is accessible at all seasons, and spacious enough to accommodate 1,000 large vessels at once. It is the great rendezvous of British shipping in North America. Population 10,000.

St. John, or Prince Edward's Island, is north of Nova Scotia, in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It contains about 25,000 inhabitants. Its capital is Charlotte's town.

The island of Cape Breton contains about 30,000 people, chiefly employed in the mines of coal and gypsum. Louisburg is the principal town.

QUESTIONS.

By what gulf is Nova Scotia bounded on the north? By what ocean, on the east and south? By what bay and province on the west and north-west? How long is the bay of Fundy, and for what remarkable? What are the extent and population of Nova Scotia? What is its climate? Its soil? For what mines is this region noted? What are the chief exports and means of subsistence and wealth? What is said of the inhabitants? Of their harbors, roads, &c.? What is the established religion? The state of education? What is the seat of government? Where situated? For what important? What are its advantages as a naval station? What is its population? What island is north of Nova Scotia? What is its chief town?

NEWFOUNDLAND.

Length, 350 miles—Circumference, 900 miles—Pop. 70,000.

The Island of Newfoundland is situated east of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and is a bleak, barren region of hills and mountains. The coast all around, is indented with fine bays, and favoured with excellent harbors, but is subject to almost perpetual fogs, clouds, and storms.

This island is chiefly noted for the valuable cod fisheries on

its coast, which are the most celebrated in the world, and afford employment in the summer season for thousands of vessels and men. 60 or 70 miles south-east of the coast, are what are called the Banks of Newfoundland, which are, really, vast mountains in the sea, covered with shallow water, in general, not more than 40 or 50 fathoms deep. The Grand Bank is more than 300 miles long, and 75 miles broad. The Green Bank, farther east, is about 250 miles in length. On these banks, the fish are caught one by one, with a hook, by men on board of vessels. They are frequently exposed to sufferings, from the inclemencies of the weather.

The capital town is St. Johns, on the south-east coast of the island. Population 12,000. Bonavista and Placentia are also worthy of notice.

QUESTIONS.

Where is the island of Newfoundland situated? What is its latitude? What are its length, circumference, and population? By what strait is it separated from Labrador? What kind of region is it? With what is the coast indented? For what is this island chiefly noted? Where and what are the Banks of Newfoundland? How large is the Grand Bank? How long is the Green Bank? How are the fish caught? What and where is the capital? What other towns worthy of notice?

REVIEW OF BRITISH AMERICA.

What are the names of its principal provinces? How is each bounded, or situated? What province is around Hudson's bay? What two straits lead into this bay? Where is Repulse bay? James' bay? Chesterfield inlet? Slave lake? Lake Winnipeg, and what river connects it with Hudson's bay? Where is the bay of Fundy, and for what distinguished? What are the principal rivers, and where do they empty? Under what European government is British America? What city is the seat and centre of the British government in North America? Where is Quebec? Montreal? Halifax? Kingston? York? Louisburg? Nain? Frederickton? Where are the two cities called St. John? Which of all these places is the most strongly fortified? Which is the centre of a great fur trade? What is there remarkable in Halifax? What form of religion prevails in British America? How great a proportion of British America is still occupied by the Indians? Ans. About nine tenths. What country is separated from Labrador by Davis' straits?

GREENLAND.

Greenland is now supposed to be an island, detached from the continent. A great proportion of it is inaccessible and unknown, on account of the perpetual ice and snow upon its mountains. No inhabited region in the world, probably, is more cold and desolate, or less productive of vegetable nourishment. The summer is short, but intensely warm. The winters are very long and severe, but the northern lights relieve the gloom. The trees are few and stunted, appearing like mere shrubs.

The animals are not numerous, but of the most hardy species; as the rein deer, the fox, the wild dog, and the white bear, which is a remarkably fierce and voracious animal.

The dwarfish, puny inhabitants, strikingly resemble the Esquimaux. They are confined chiefly to the coasts, and are now reduced to the number of 10,000 or less, and derive a miserable subsistence from seals, fishes and birds. The catching of seals is a leading employment, and the people pride themselves upon their skill in this exercise, and vie with each other for the superiority. They dwell in huts built of turf or stone, and travel about swiftly, over the ice and snow, in sledges drawn by dogs trained to the harness.

This people were, formerly, ignorant and stupid pagans; but through the efforts of Moravian missionaries, they have recently been, to a certain extent, enlightened and evangelized. The New Testament has been translated into, and printed in, their language, and received with joy. New Hurnhut, Lichtenpels, Litchternau and Frederickstall, are the missionary stations.

Greenland is subject to the government of Denmark. A valuable whale fishery has, for many years, been carried on upon this coast.

QUESTIONS.

In what ocean does Greenland lie? By what strait is it bounded on the west? In what cape does it terminate on the south? What is the latitude of Cape Farewell? What is Greenland now supposed to be? What kind of region is it? What is said of its trees? Of its animals? Of its inhabitants? What is their number? What are their means of living? What is their leading employment? What are their dwellings? What is their mode of travelling? What missionaries have been employed among them? What are the names of the missionary stations? Under what government is Greenland, and what valuable fishery is off this coast?

ICELAND.

Extent, 30,000 square miles—Pop. 50,000.

Iceland is situated about 100 miles east of Greenland, and 330 west of the coast of Norway. Notwithstanding its wintry and icy appearance, no country perhaps is more celebrated for burning mountains, and boiling, spouting springs. Mount Heccla, the famous volcano, rises to the height of 5,000 feet. Its eruptions formerly were frequent and dreadful.

The Geysers, or hot springs, in the vicinity of the mountain, have been known to throw out boiling water 100 feet into the air.



Geysers or Hot Springs.

The people are subject to the Danish Government, and profess the Lutheran religion. They are simple and virtuous in their manners, living chiefly on fish, and are remarkably attached to their native isle, and fond of books and learning. Though schools are rare among them, education is cultivated in every family, so that scarcely an individual can be found, unable to read. The Gothic, their native language, has here been preserved, almost in its original purity, and some interesting books, in poetry and history, have been composed in it. Many copies of the Bible, in the Icelandic version, have been distributed among them, and received with the liveliest gratitude by the poor natives.

QUESTIONS.

Where is Iceland? What are its extent and population? For what is it celebrated? What noted volcano is found here? How high is it, and what is said of it? What are the Geysers? How far have they been known to throw up water? To what government are the people subject? What is their religion? What are their character and manners? What is said of their education? Of their native language? Of distributing the bible among them?

RUSSIAN AMERICA.

Population 1,000 whites, 50,000 Indians.

The Russian Possessions in North America, are bounded north by the Arctic Ocean, east by Mackenzie's River and the Rocky Mountains, south by Oregon Territory, and west by the Pacific Ocean.

This region is of great extent, but hitherto, little known. The coast is rugged and mountainous, resembling the coast of Norway. It is diversified with lofty mountains, covered with perpetual snow, and deep chasms or cavities filled up with glaciers of ice. Mount Elias rises 18,000 feet, or more than three miles in height, and is considered the highest peak in North America.

The native Indians are said to resemble the Greenlanders, and are principally employed in hunting and fishing. The white population, in general, are Russian fur traders, who barter with the natives for furs, and give in return, tobacco, beads, and other similar articles interesting to Indians.

QUESTIONS.

See the map of North America.

How is Russian America bounded? What is said of this region? Describe the coast. What lofty mountain near the coast, and how high is it? Whom are the Indians said to resemble? What is their number? What are their employments? Who constitute the white population? What do they give the natives in exchange for furs? What strait separates Russian America from Asia? How wide is it in the narrowest part? Ans. 40 miles.

MEXICO.

PART FIRST.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

Length 1,800 miles—Breadth 800 miles—Extent 1,500,000 square miles—Population 8,000,000—5 per square miles.

The whole territory of Mexico is about two thirds as large at that of the United States. It is traversed from south-east so north-west, by the Cordilleras mountains, which constitute a part of the grand American chain which extends from Cape Horn to the Arctic Ocean. The general surface of the Cordilleras, is remarkable, being spread abroad into vast elevated plains, called Table lands, which are clothed with a rich, luxuriant

soil, and contain many towns and inhabitants. The length of these mountain plains, is 1,700 miles, their breadth increases toward the north, and their general elevation is from 6,000 to 8,000 feet above the level of the sea. From these plains, here and there, an insulated peak of a mountain is found shooting up, twice that height, into a region of eternal snow. The two most noted of these peaks, Orizaba and Popocatepetl, are volcanoes, three or four miles high, and considered the loftiest volcanoes on the globe.

Along the sea coast on each side of Mexico, the land is low, and the climate hot, oppressive, and unhealthy. From the coasts toward the interior, the land gradually rises, and the atmosphere becomes more pleasant and salubrious. At the height of 4,000 or 5,000 feet, are found the abodes of perpetual spring. Upon the table lands, generally, the air is dry and pure, and the climate temperate, cool, and healthful, while on the highest summits of the mountains, the reign of winter is rigorous and uninterrupted.

The soil, in general, is distinguished for fertility, though subject to occasional and severe droughts. It yields in great abundance, the various productions both of tropical and of temperate regions. Indian corn, in particular, here finds a most congenial soil and climate, grows rapidly, and in its utmost perfection. Not unfrequently, two or three crops of it are produced in a year.

The Mexican mines of gold and silver are universally celebrated. They are numerous, and are reckoned among the richest in the world. The gold is collected from the veins of rocks, or found mingled in small particles with alluvial sands. Silver is generally obtained in the form of ore, exhibiting a variety of colors. But sometimes, large masses of pure silver are discovered, and the whole amount of this precious metal produced in Mexico, annually, is computed at not less than 20,000,000 of dollars.

This country is divided into 15 provinces, and is on the whole very thinly inhabited. The principal settlements are in the more central parts around the capital, or south of the latitude of 25 degrees. The northern or internal provinces, embrace the largest half of the territory, but contain only a small portion of the population, being inhabited chiefly by scattered tribes of savage Indians. About one fourth of the people of Mexico are whites, principally of Spanish origin; one third, are civilized or subdued Indians, in a state of servitude, and the rest are, generally, a mixed race, called Mestizoes.

The prevailing form of religion is the Roman Catholic. The people at large, and especially the whites, are ignorant, superstitious, indolent and profligate. The state of society is turbulent and unhappy. The corrupt propensities and passions are, in a great measure, uncurbed. Human life is in continual peril. Murders are of frequent occurrence. The vices of the inhabitants often render them miserable, amidst all the surrounding luxuries and beauties of nature.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Mexico? What are its length, average breadth, square miles, and population? To what lake and latitude does it extend on the north? Which is the farthest north, the city of New York, or the north line of the Mexican territory? To what latitude on the south, does it extend? On what gulfs and bays does it border? What are its principal rivers emptying into the gulf of Mexico? What rivers empty into the gulf of California, and the Pacific ocean? By what mountains is Mexico traversed, and of what are they a part? What is there remarkable in the surface of the Cordilleras mountains? What are the mountain plains called? What is said of their length, breadth, and height? What are the two most noted peaks or volcanoes, which rise above the Table lands? What is their height? Describe the surface and climate along the coasts. From the coasts towards the interior. At what height is there perpetual spring? What is the climate on the Table lands? What is it on the mountain tops? What is the soil of Mexico? What are its agricultural productions? What mines in Mexico? Where is the gold collected? In what form is the silver generally found? What is the annual amount obtained? How many provinces in Mexico, and in what part are the chief settlements? What is said of the northern provinces? What part of the people are Spaniards? What part subdued Indians? What are the Mestizoes? What are the religion and general character of the people? Describe the state of society.

MEXICO.

PART SECOND.

The principal cities and towns are Mexico, Puebla, Guanajuato, Queretaro, Zacatecas, Guadalajara, Catorce, Santa Fe, Vera Cruz, and Acapulco.

The city of Mexico is situated nearly half way between the Gulf of Mexico and the Pacific ocean. It is in the vicinity of the lake Tezcucó, and in the midst of a very delightful valley. This valley is 200 miles in circumference, and elevated 7,000 feet above the sea. The city is regularly laid out, and magnificently built. Its form is that of a square, extending four miles on each side. The streets cross at right angles, are broad and well paved, and adorned with numerous edifices of superb and beautiful architecture. There are more than 100 churches, splendidly decorated with silver and gold. The people are supplied with water by means of two aqueducts, and furnished with almost every variety of vegetables, from floating gardens on the lake. The principal manufactures of the citizens, relate to workmanship in gold and silver. The Mexican Mint is the

largest and richest in the world. Mexico is one of the most ancient and splendid cities in America. Its population is 150,000.

Puebla is also a great city of the mountain plain, 70 miles south-east of Mexico. Its temples and other edifices are magnificent. It is chiefly distinguished for its manufactures of iron, steel, and earthen ware. Population 75,000. Guanaxuato is 150 miles north-west of the metropolis, and equally elevated in its situation. The population amounts to about 70,000, nearly 30,000 of whom are connected with the gold and silver mines in the neighborhood. These mines are celebrated as the most productive ever known, having yielded, for a number of years, at the rate of \$4,000,000 or \$5,000,000 a year.

Zacatecas and Catorce are also noted for valuable mines; the former is located in a mountainous region, 240 miles north-west of Mexico. Population 33,000. Queretaro is about 100 miles north-west of the capital. Population 40,000. Santa Fe is in the northern part of the country, 1,000 miles north-west of New Orleans, and carries on considerable trade, by land, with the United States. Population 10,000. Vera Cruz is the principal port on the Gulf of Mexico. Though its situation is very unhealthy, and its harbor inconvenient, it is the great channel of the European trade, and a distinguished magazine of Mexican treasures. Population 15,000. Acapulco is opposite to Vera Cruz, on the Pacific ocean. It is favored with a fine harbor, and is the port through which the commerce with the East Indies is chiefly carried on. But the air around it is hot and pestilential, and infected with insects. The unfortunate people also suffer much from hurricanes and earthquakes. Population 4,000.

The original inhabitants of Mexico were a brave and hardy people, yet more refined and better acquainted with the arts of civilized life, than any other of the native Americans. They are represented as having been worshippers of the sun and planets, and in the practice of offering human victims on their altars. The most remarkable remaining monument of their civilization and idolatry, is the great temple of Cholula, 80 miles east of Mexico. It is built of brick and stands on the top of an artificial mountain or pyramid, nearly 200 feet high.

The conquerors of Mexico were the treacherous and cruel Spaniards, who, stimulated by a thirst for gold, under the notorious Fernando Cortez, invaded the country, took possession of her treasures, and compelled the affrighted inhabitants to submit to the yoke of the king of Spain, about the year 1521. From that period, for 300 years, Mexico was under the Spanish govern-

ment. It is now an Independent Republic, but unsettled, and agitated with internal commotions.

QUESTIONS.

What is the metropolis of Mexico? What other principal cities and towns? What is the situation of the city of Mexico? Describe the city. How are the people supplied with water and vegetables? What are their manufactures? What is said of the Mexican mint? Where is Puebla? For what distinguished? What is the situation of Guanajuato? How many of its inhabitants are connected with the mines? What is said of these mines? Where is Zacatecas and for what distinguished? Queretaro? Santa Fe, and what is said of it? Where is Vera Cruz? Where is Acapulco? How are the original inhabitants of Mexico described? What constitutes its importance? What was their religion? What remarkable monument of their civilization and idolatry still remains? Describe the temple of Cholula. What people from Europe were the conquerors of Mexico? When did they invade this country, and what was the consequence? How long did the people remain under the Spanish yoke? What is the present government and condition of Mexico?

GUATIMALA, OR CENTRAL AMERICA.

Extent 200,000 sq. miles—Pop. 2,000,000—10 per sq. mile.

Guatimala lies in the central part of America, between the Pacific ocean and the Caribbean sea, and extends from Mexico on the north-west, to the province of Panama, near the isthmus of Darien, on the south-east. The lands on the sea coasts are low and unhealthy. The interior, through its whole length, consists of a lofty range of mountains, where the climate is salubrious and pleasant. The soil in general is very rich, better cultivated, and supports a more dense population, than is usual in Mexico and other portions of Spanish America. This arises from the fact, that there are here but few mines, and the attention of the people is more devoted to agricultural pursuits. The productions of the soil are abundant, and similar to those of the Mexican provinces.

This country, however, is remarkable for volcanoes and earthquakes. Of the former, there are no less than 20 in perpetual operation, and the latter, not unfrequently, have been very destructive. Guatimala, the capital, lies near the Pacific ocean, and has an excellent harbor. This city contains a flourishing university, and numerous churches, magnificently built, and famous for their costly decorations and treasures of gold and silver. In the year 1775, it was almost destroyed by an earthquake; but its population is now estimated at 50,000. The other principal towns are Leon, Truxillo, Vera Paz, and Chiapa. The bay of Honduras is noted for the British settlements made upon it, for the purpose of procuring mahogany, logwood, and various materials for dyeing, found in the neighboring provinces.

Guatimala, like Mexico, was formerly in the possession of Spain, but, within a few years, has become independent.

The province of Panama, which lies next below Guatimala, is attached to the Republic of Colombia in South America. The isthmus of Darien is composed of low valleys and lofty mountains. It is about 37 miles wide in the narrowest part, which is between Porto Bello and the town of Panama, on the Pacific shore.

QUESTIONS.

How is Guatimala situated? What are its extent and population? Describe the country on the coasts. The interior. What is the soil? Why is it better cultivated than in other parts of Spanish America? What is said of the productions? For what is this country remarkable? How many volcanoes in it? What and where is the capital city? What is said of its university and churches? What great calamity befel this city in 1775? What are the other principal towns? Where is Amatique bay or the bay of Honduras, and for what noted? What large lake in Guatimala? What is the situation of this country, in respect to government? Of what province lies next below it, and to what Republic is it attached? What does the isthmus of Darien consist? What is its latitude? What is its width? Between what two towns is it situated?

ISLANDS.

WEST INDIES AND BERMUDAS.

Population, 2,800,000.

The West Indies are situated in the waters between Florida and South America. They are divided into four groups or clusters, viz. The Great Antilles, Lesser Antilles, the Bahamas, and the Caribbee Isles. The Bahama islands are farthest north, the Caribbees farthest east, the Lesser Antilles on the south, and Cuba, one of the four Great Antilles, extends farthest to the west. There is a general range of mountains extending circuitously from the west end of the island of Cuba, through Hayti, Porto Rico, and the Caribbees, towards South America.

The seasons in the West Indies are either extremely wet or extremely dry. In the summer, the climate is sultry and sickly. Early in the autumn, there are frequent and tremendous earthquakes and hurricanes, and dreadful thunder storms. The winter season is, in a good degree, salubrious and agreeable.

The soil, for the most part, is remarkable for fertility. Sugar cane is the staple production. Coffee, tobacco, cocoa, cotton, ginger, allspice, &c. are abundant, together with the common tropical fruits, oranges, lemons, figs, and pine apples. Yams,

sweet potatoes, and Indian corn, are much used as articles of food.

In the most of these isles, three fourths of the population are negroes. These negroes were all slaves. But, the 1st of August, 1834, slavery was abolished throughout the British colonies.

St. Domingo or Hayti, is an Independent Republic of blacks. The other islands belong to several of the European powers, principally to Great Britain, France, and Spain. The British islands are the most numerous. The chief of them are Jamaica, Trinidad, the Bahamas, St. Lucia, Barbadoes, Tobago, St. Vincent, Grenada, Antigua, Montserrat, and St. Christophers. The Spanish islands, are Cuba, Porto Rico, and Margarita. The French islands, are Martinique, Guadaloupe and its dependencies. The Danish islands, are Santa Cruz, St. Thomas, and St. Johns. The Dutch islands, Curacao, St. Eustatia, and St. Martin. St. Bartholomew is a Swedish island.

QUESTIONS.

Where are the West Indies situated? Into how many groups are they divided and what are they? Which cluster is on the north? Which on the east? Which on the south? Which island farthest west? Describe the course of the mountains. What is said of the seasons? Of the climate in the summer? In the autumn? In the winter? What is the soil? What are the chief productions? What part of the population in most of the islands are negroes? When was slavery abolished in the British islands? Which island is independent? To whom do the other islands belong? Which are the principal British isles? Which are the Spanish? The French? The Danish? The Dutch? The Swedish island?

CUBA.

Extent 56,000 square miles—Pop. 705,000—Slaves 256,000.

Cuba is the largest of the West India islands, being between 700 and 800 miles long, and nearly equal in size to the state of Georgia. The chief towns are Havana, Matanzas, and St. Jago de Cuba. Havana is the most distinguished port in the West Indies. The harbor, though approached through a narrow channel, is one of the best in the world; being capable of containing 1,000 ships, and is defended by almost impregnable fortifications. The commerce of Havana is immense, and the exports of great amount and value. Population 140,000.

HAYTI, FORMERLY CALLED HISPANIOLA, OR ST. DOMINGO.

Extent 28,000 square miles—Population 935,000.

Hayti is the second West India island in size, and about half as large as Cuba. The island, in general, exhibits a great

fertility of soil, and a rich variety of productions, suited to the climate. It was formerly divided between the French, who held possession in the western part, and the Spaniards, in the eastern. The French were expelled by their slaves. The inhabitants of the island now constitute the Haytian Republic, whose independence was established in the year 1801. The chief towns are St. Domingo, Port au Prince, and Cape Henry, which is the seat of government. St. Domingo is the oldest city built by the Spaniards in America, but its importance has become small. Population 12,000. Port au Prince, the former French capital, contains a population of 25,000.

JAMAICA.

Extent 6,500 square miles—Population 386,000.

Jamaica, next to Hayti in size, is a rich and important island. It is diversified by lofty mountains and extensive declivities and plains, exhibiting much excellent soil and delightful scenery. It is cultivated with skill and enterprise, and abounds in sugar cane, coffee, and other valuable agricultural products. Spanish-town is the capital. Kingston is a place of active commerce. Population 33,000. Port Royal was formerly very wealthy and celebrated; a thousand ships might be accommodated in its harbor; but, by an earthquake, a fire and a hurricane, it has been reduced, and is now a place of little importance, except as a naval station.

BAHAMA ISLES.

Population 16,300.

The Bahama Islands are numerous, but generally small, rocky and barren, with few inhabitants. 'Turks' Island is noted for the salt ponds which have produced large quantities of excellent salt. Guanahani or St. Salvador, is remarkable for being the first land discovered by Columbus in the New World. The channel between the Bahamas and the coast of Florida, is distinguished for the violence of its currents, and is the scene of many dreadful shipwrecks.

BERMUDAS.

Population 11,000.

The Bermudas or Somers' Islands belong to Great Britain, and are generally reckoned among the West India Islands, though their situation is some distance north of them. They are in number about 400, lying 600 miles east of Cape Hatteras.

They are in general very small, rocky and uncultivated. Many of them are uninhabited and without names. St. George, the largest island, is 15 miles long. It has a capital of the same name. The climate of these isles is very salubrious and inviting. There is no winter, but spring prevails in almost perpetual mildness and verdure. Hence the Bermudas have become a common resort for invalids in the pursuit of health. Large quantities of valuable timber are found here, and the leading employments of the people relate to ship building and navigation.

CARIBBEES.

Martinique and Guadaloupe are among the richest and most important of the Caribbee Isles. The capital of the former St. Pierre, is built in a style of European elegance. The seat of government, in the latter, is Basse Terre. Population 12,000.

Barbadoes is at the eastern extremity of the West Indies. Its capital is Bridgetown, whose population is 18,000.

Trinidad is at the southern extremity. Its capital, Port Spain, has 13,000 inhabitants.

QUESTIONS.

Which is the largest of the West India Islands and the farthest west? What are the latitude, extent, and population of Cuba? What are the chief towns? Where is Havana situated? Describe it. In what part are Matanzas and St. Jago de Cuba? What large island is next east of Cuba? What are the extent and population of Hayti? What is said of the soil and productions? Between what two European powers was this island formerly divided? What is the government of the whole island now called? When did it become independent? What are the chief towns? What is the situation of St. Domingo? Of Port au Prince? Of Cape Henry? Which is the third West India island in size? Which way is Jamaica from Cuba and from Hayti? What are its extent and population? How is its surface diversified? How cultivated, and in what does it abound? In what part is Spanishtown the capital? What is the population of Kingston? What is said of Port Royal? Where are the Bahama islands? Describe it. For what is Turks island noted? For what is St. Salvador remarkable? For what is the Bahama channel distinguished? Where are the Bermudas? To whom do they belong? What is their number? Which is the largest? What is the climate of these isles? What is the principal business of the people? What is said of Martinique and Guadaloupe? What are their capitals? Which is the most eastern of the West India isles? Which the most southern? What is the capital of each?

SOUTH AMERICA.

Length, 4,600 miles—Extreme breadth, 3,000 miles—Extent,
6,500,000 sq. miles—Pop. 15,000,000.

INTRODUCTORY QUESTIONS.

See the Map.

What are the boundaries of South America? What cape is at its northern extremity, near the gulf of Venezuela? What strait and island at its southern extremity? What cape at its most eastern point? What cape at the most western point? *Ans.* Cape Blanco. What is its length from the isthmus of Darien to the straits of Magellan? What is its extreme breadth from Cape Blanco on the west to Cape St. Roque on the east? What is its average breadth? *Ans.* About 1,500 miles. Between what degrees of latitude and longitude is South America situated? *Ans.* Between 12° north latitude and 54° south latitude, and between 35° 45' and 81° west longitude. To which of the zones does it chiefly belong? What islands near the north coast of South America? What three islands in the Pacific ocean near the south western coast? What islands near the south eastern extremity? What are the extent and population of South America?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART FIRST.

CIVIL DIVISIONS—MOUNTAINS—RIVERS—SURFACE—CLIMATE—SOIL—PRODUCTIONS.

The grand civil divisions of South America are eight, viz. Colombia, Guiana, Brazil, Peru, Bolivia, United Provinces, Chili, and Patagonia. That part of the great American chain of mountains which is included in South America, is called the Andes. It extends along the Pacific shore from the Straits of Magellan to the Isthmus of Darien, a distance of about 5,000 miles. It generally follows the direction of the coast, and its distance from the ocean is between 100 and 200 miles. The principal ridges of the Andes are reckoned among the highest on the globe. They are literally, "mountains piled on mountains to the skies." Their elevation is generally abrupt. Their sides present many awful precipices. Their summits extend into the clouds, and are concealed by them, or are seen rising majestically into the aerial regions above them. Chimborazo, in Colombia, near the equator, has usually been considered the highest peak. It is 21,440 feet, or more than four miles, above the level of the sea. But, by a late traveller, Mount Sorato in Peru, and

Mount Illimani in Bolivia, have been represented as still higher. Many of these heights of the Andes are volcanic in their nature. Between Cape Horn and the equator, there are more than 40 volcanoes in perpetual operation. Cotopaxi, Antisana, and Pichincha, in the region of Quito, are the most noted, being three or four miles high, and the most elevated volcanoes in the world.

The Andes have three principal branches extending eastward into the interior of South America. The first branch is north of the river Orinoco, and stretches north easterly toward the island of Trinidad. The second separates Brazil, in part, from Colombia and Guiana. The third runs south easterly in the south western part of Brazil.

The rivers of South America are numerous, and many of them are of distinguished magnitude and grandeur. The Amazon or Marañon, the Rio de la Plata, and the Orinoco, are the three largest. The Amazon is the largest river in the world. It rises in the Andes, and empties into the Atlantic, at the equator. Its whole length is between 3,000 and 4,000 miles, its depth in some parts, 600 feet, and its breadth at the mouth, 50 miles. It receives the contributions of 200 considerable rivers, several of which are very large, and no river on the globe discharges into the ocean so mighty a volume of waters. The basin of the Amazon, or the region watered by it and its branches, is generally level and of vast extent, being 2,000 miles long, and embracing nearly 3,000,000 square miles, a territory equal to the whole of Europe. The banks are covered with vast and impenetrable forests, where rarely, or never, the foot of man has trod, but where multitudes of wild and ferocious animals, as tigers, bears, boars, and leopards, roam at large; where venomous reptiles crawl, apes and baboons play, and birds of various notes and beautiful plumage fly about and sing, undisturbed, in the evergreen woods. The Rio de la Plata is formed by the union of the Parana and the Uruguay. It exceeds all other rivers in breadth, being 150 miles wide at its mouth, and 30 miles wide at the distance of 200 miles from the sea. Its navigation however is dangerous, on account of numerous rocks, shoals, and shallows, and also, on account of the winds which sweep with amazing violence across the wide, neighboring plains or Pampas.

South America, in respect to its surface, may be further described as follows. The western section generally, is a broad, elevated mountain plain, crowned by the still more lofty tops or ridges of the Andes. The eastern or north-eastern section is

also mountainous, especially the eastern portions of Brazil, near the coast. The middle or interior section, from north to south, is in general, level or marshy, and watered by almost innumerable streams. The varieties of climate in South America, are very striking. They arise not merely from the different degrees of latitude, but also from the vast difference in the degrees of elevation, between its lowest and its highest lands. The low lands, especially those within the tropics, experience the heat of a perpetual summer, and exhibit, in general, a constant and most luxuriant vegetation. The declivities and plains of the mountains, have a temperature mild and spring-like, or cool and agreeable, like the season of autumn; while on the lofty, snowy summits, lie the domains of winter, rigorous and unyielding, as in the polar regions.

The soil of South America is equally various and remarkable. It is, in the main, highly distinguished for its fertility, and for the variety, richness, and abundance of its vegetable productions. This part of the American continent surpasses every other grand division of the globe, as an inexhaustible treasury of nature. Whatever is valuable in the products of other countries, it supplies, and often in greater quantity and perfection. It plentifully yields many important shrubs and plants, which are unknown or rarely found in other parts of the world. Many exotic or foreign plants, here introduced, grow and flourish as in their native soil. Some of the most delicious fruits of South America grow spontaneously, and in the greatest plenty, as oranges, citrons, pine apples, pomegranates, pears, apples, figs, and grapes.

QUESTIONS.

Into what number of states or grand civil divisions, is South America divided? What are their names? What are the boundaries and capital of Colombia? Of Guiana? Of Brazil? Of Peru? Of Bolivia? Of the United Provinces? Of Chili? Of Patagonia? Which of the great divisions is at the northern extremity? Which at the southern? Which extends farthest east? Which of the South American states border on the Pacific ocean? Which on the Atlantic? Which of them is wholly included between the Andes and the Pacific? Which one extends from the Pacific to the Atlantic? Which two extend across the widest part of South America? Which two are intersected by the equator? Which three by the tropic of Capricorn? What are the great mountains of South America? About how long is the chain of the Andes? What is its general direction? What its distance from the sea? What is said of the principal ridge or ridges? What has been considered the highest peak? Where is it? How high is it? What two peaks have lately been represented as still higher? How many active volcanoes in South America? Which three are most noted? How high are they? How many principal branches has the Andes extending eastward into the interior? Describe the first branch. The second. The third. What, in general, is said of the rivers of South America? Which are the three largest? What is the largest river in the world? Where does it rise and empty? How long is it? How deep and broad? How many considerable rivers run into it? Mention four of its largest branches on the south. Mention some flowing into it from the north. How large is the basin of the Amazon? What is its general surface? How are the banks of the river covered? How are its forests

described? What two rivers unite to form the La Plata? In what respect is this river distinguished? What is its breadth? What is said of its navigation? Where does it rise? Where does it empty? Where is the Oronoco? Where does it rise? What is its course? Where does it empty? Where does the river Para or Tocantins, rise and empty? The Magdalena? The Madeira? The Francisco?

Describe the surface in the western section of South America. In the eastern section. In the middle section or interior. What is said of the varieties of climate in South America? From what do they arise? What climate is found in the lowlands? What, on the sides or plains of the mountains? What, on the loftiest summits? What is said of the soil? In what respect does South America surpass every other grand division of the globe? What is said of its shrubs, plants, and fruits?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART SECOND.

MINERALS—ANIMALS AND BIRDS—INHABITANTS —EDUCATION—MORALS—GOVERNMENT— RELIGION.

South America has long been celebrated, for the abundance of its gold and silver, and precious stones, as diamonds, pearls, amethysts, and emeralds, objects which have been so eagerly grasped by some European nations, and which have here been obtained, almost to the full gratification of their blinded avarice and pride.

Among the most valuable animals, are the Lama of Peru, a species of camel, and the Vicuna, the Peruvian sheep. The Chinchilla is valuable for its fur. The Jaguar is a kind of tiger, of great strength and ferocity. The Ocelot is a most beautiful species of cat. The alligators of this country, and some species of serpents, are represented as of a monstrous and almost incredible size. Among the birds, the Condor is of singular magnitude, strength, and genius. Though celebrated as the largest flying bird in the world, he soars with facility to the utmost height of the Andes, and with equal ease descends in search of prey, often seizing and carrying off sheep and calves, and even children, which his eye may chance to light upon. Parrots and Paroquets are numerous. Many birds of extraordinary beauty and brilliancy of colors are found here, but not an equal number, distinguished for melody of song.

The population of South America is composed of various races and nations. The greatest proportion of the people are Indians, many of whom are civilized and independent, but the majority are slaves, under cruel bondage to the whites. The South American natives, compared with the North American, have probably less natural courage, activity, and energy, but they have made greater advances in knowledge and civilization, are more accustomed to tilling the soil, and many of them are intel-

ligent and enterprising in the useful employments of life. The whites are chiefly Spaniards or Portuguese. Besides which, there are multitudes of negroes and mulattoes, and many descendants of whites and Indians, or of Indians and negroes.

The general state of education and morals in South America, is low. There is a wide prevalence of ignorance, superstition, and vice. Many of the whites, however, in high rank, have enlightened and cultivated minds, but are, to a lamentable extent, dissipated and depraved in morals. The state of learning is, on the whole, rising.

As the political condition and prospects of certain portions of South America, have of late been improved and brightened, unusual attention has been paid to education, universities and schools have been established, books and newspapers circulated, and extraordinary efforts made, to instruct and enlighten the population.

The South American provinces, for 200 years, have been principally under the governments of Spain and Portugal. The Spaniards established themselves chiefly on the west; and the Portuguese, on the east side of the peninsula. The Spanish provinces, after long and severe struggles, have achieved their independence, and are taking active measures to strengthen and secure it. Brazil, the largest of the Portuguese provinces in South America, is now an independent empire.

Guiana is divided among the British, Dutch, and French; and several independent tribes of Indians still retain possession of immense tracts in the interior, generally comprehended in Amazonia and Patagonia. The prevailing religion is the Roman Catholic. The priests are very numerous. Many of them possess great wealth and influence, live in palaces, ride in chariots, and minister in magnificent and sumptuously ornamented churches.

QUESTIONS.

For what has South America long been celebrated? What are some of its most valuable animals? For what is the Chinchilla valuable? What is the Jaguar? The Ocelot? What is said of the alligators and serpents? Of the great bird called the Condor? Of the parrots and paroquets? For what are the South American birds distinguished? Of what race are the greatest part of the people? Which are the most civilized, the North American or South American Indians? Of what nations are the whites in North America? What other classes of people are found here? What is the general state of education and morals? To what European governments have these provinces been subject, and for how many years? On which side of South America are the Spaniards chiefly settled? On which side the Portuguese? What provinces have now become independent? Among what governments is Guiana divided? Where are the independent Indians chiefly settled? What is the prevailing religion in South America? What is said of the Catholic priests?

COLOMBIA.

Extent, 1,100,000 sq. miles—Pop. 3,000,000—3 per sq. mile.

Colombia is composed chiefly of the two former provinces, New Grenada and Venezuela or Caraccas, which became united under a Republican government in 1819. In 1830, Venezuela separated itself from the government, and Colombia is now divided into three distinct and independent states, viz.: New Grenada, Venezuela, and Equador. New Grenada, on the west and north west, comprehends the most mountainous parts. Venezuela, including Spanish Guiana, is on the east and north-east.

The surface of Colombia on the west, rises to a stupendous height. It embraces the most elevated ridges of the Andes, and exhibits some of the grandest mountain scenes in nature. Chimborazo, the most celebrated summit, is 100 miles south-west of Quito, and always white with snow. Forty miles south-east of Quito, is Cotopaxi, reputed the loftiest volcano in the world; about three and a half miles high, whose explosions have sometimes been tremendous, inundating the adjacent plains with burning lava, and torrents of suddenly melted snow.

The eastern surface of Colombia, consists of immense plains or llanos, including the wide and verdant valley of the Oronoco. These plains extend along that river, for 600 miles, and appear like an ocean of green grass.

The climate of Colombia is exceedingly various. In the low lands, it is hot, sultry, and pestilential. At an elevation of one mile, or about 5,000 feet above the level of the sea, there is continual spring, in all its healthfulness, verdure, and beauty. And from this point, to the greatest height of the mountains, there is a gradual and regular increase of cold. The plains and valleys, whether low or elevated, have, for the most part, a soil extremely fertile, and rich in tropical and other productions. Cotton, tobacco, corn, coffee, cocoa, indigo, and a variety of fruits, are abundant. The valley of the Oronoco, affords luxuriant pasturage for immense herds of cattle. There are rich mines of gold and silver, particularly in New Grenada. The most populous parts of Colombia, are the mountain plains on the west.

The principal cities, are Quito, Santa Fe de Bogota, Popayan, Panama, Porto Bello, Carthagena, and Caraccas, with its port La Guira.

Quito is the great city of the mountains. It is situated on the equator, about 10,000 feet, or nearly two miles above the ocean level, and in the immediate vicinity of the volcano Picbinca.

The seasons here, are temperate and delightful the year round. But thunder, lightning, and earthquakes, often suddenly spread consternation among the inhabitants. In the earthquake of 1797, 40,000 persons were, in a moment, launched into eternity. The population of this city is estimated at 70,000.

Santa Fe de Bogota is the seat of government, elegantly built on an elevated and fruitful plain. Population 40,000. At the distance of 15 miles south-east of this city, is the famous cataract of Tequendama, in the river Bogota, which is here suddenly compressed from the width of 140 feet to that of 35 feet, and descends at two successive plunges, into an awful chasm in the mountain, a depth of 600 feet. This is probably the highest cataract in the world. The cloud of vapour rising thence, may be seen from the immediate environs of Bogota, and being embellished by the various colours of the rain-bow, it presents an object equally sublime and beautiful.

Popayan, is 200 miles south-west of Bogota, situated on an extensive plain at the height of 6,000 feet above the level of the sea, and in the neighborhood of two great volcanoes. Population 25,000.

Panama and Porto Bello are sea ports opposite to each other, on the isthmus of Panama. The former was once distinguished for its pearl fishery.

Caraccas, is near the Caribbean sea, and elevated 3,000 feet above it. Twelve thousand of its inhabitants, in 1812, were buried by an earthquake. Population 30,000.

There are four universities in Colombia. Education is in a progressive state. The religion is Roman Catholic.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Colombia? Its latitude and longitude? What is its extent in square miles? Its population? What lake and gulf on the north? What two great provinces does Colombia include? When were these provinces united, forming the Republic of Colombia? When did Venezuela separate herself from this republic? Into what three states is Colombia now divided? In what part of Colombia is New Grenada? In what part is Venezuela? Describe the surface of Colombia on the west. On the east. What and where is Chimborazo? How high is it? What and where is Cotopaxi? How high is it? What great river from Colombia, runs north-east into the Atlantic ocean? What river runs north-west? What is said of the great plains or llanos? What is the climate of Colombia in the low lands? What in the more elevated parts? What is the soil? What are the principal products? What mines? In what part are they chiefly situated? Which are the most populous parts of Colombia? What and where are the chief cities? Describe Quito. Bogota the capital. What falls near it? Describe them. What is the situation of Popayan? What is its population? Where are Panama and Porto Bello? For what was Panama once distinguished? What is the situation of Caraccas? How many of its inhabitants were in 1812 destroyed by an earthquake? What is its population? How many universities in Colombia? What is the state of education? What is the religion?

GUIANA.

Population 180,000.

Formerly the tract of country under the name of Guiana was of vast extent, embracing Spanish Guiana, which now belongs to Colombia, and Portuguese Guiana, now included in the Empire of Brazil. At present Guiana includes only the British, Dutch, and French possessions.

The face of the country is almost uniformly level and low along the coast, and for some distance into the interior. The chief settlements are near the sea, and on the banks of the rivers. The climate is moist, hot, and unhealthy, but no country in the world possesses a more luxuriant soil.

The soil is best cultivated in British and Dutch Guiana, on the rivers Essequibo, Demarara, Berbice, Saramica, and Surinam. Here are extensive and delightful meadows, and plantations of unexampled fertility, abounding in sugar, cotton, cocoa, and indigo. The fruits are of great variety, and most delicious flavor. The shrubs and plants of the country are innumerable, many of them possessing rare and valuable qualities. The trees of the wood often rise to the height of 100 feet, and are remarkable for their precious properties, and for their rich blossoms, and fruit, which perpetually adorn them.

British Guiana is divided into three districts; Essequibo, Demarara, and Berbice, corresponding to the names of their rivers.

Dutch Guiana, is often called Surinam, and French Guiana, has the name of Cayenne. It is famous for its pepper. The chief towns, are Essequibo, Stabroeck, and New Amsterdam, in British Guiana; Paramaribo in Dutch; and Cayenne, in French Guiana.

The whole population is estimated at 180,000. It is composed principally of negro slaves. The warlike Indians occupying the interior, are not reckoned.

QUESTIONS.

How is Guiana bounded? What mountains separate it from Brazil? What are its three divisions? Which division is farthest west? Which farthest east? Which comprises the middle section? Describe the face of the country. Where are the principal settlements found? What is the climate? The soil? What are the principal rivers? Where do they empty? Where is the soil best cultivated? What are the productions? What is said of the fruits? The shrubs and plants? The trees? What three districts in British Guiana? What is Dutch Guiana often called? What name is given to French Guiana? For what is it noted? What are the five chief towns? Which three belong to British Guiana? Which to Dutch? Which to French Guiana? At what is the whole population of Guiana estimated? Of what is it principally composed? What inhabitants occupy the interior?

BRAZIL.

Extent, 2,200,000 sq. miles—Pop. 5,000,000.—2 per sq. mile.

This country derives its name from the Brazil wood, in which it abounds. The Empire is of vast dimensions, and extends from north to south 2,500 miles, and about the same distance from east to west, containing a territory equal to that of the United States, and comprising nearly a third part of South America. It is divided into 19 provinces, or Captainships. It is traversed from west to east by the Geral mountains, or the Andes of Chiquitos, and the eastern coast is lined by mountains, called the Brazilian Andes.

No country in the world is watered by more numerous or fertilizing streams. The tributary waters of the Amazon, flow down the northern declivity, and several branches of the La Plata rise in Brazil, and descend toward the south. The main body of Brazil is one immense wilderness, being, almost universally, overspread with forests in a state of nature, and to a great extent unexplored. Not one hundredth part of the empire is settled or cultivated.

The Portuguese settlements are almost wholly confined to the southern and eastern coasts. The interior, formerly called Amazonia, in its vast length and breadth, is occupied by hostile Indians, wild beasts of prey, and herds of innumerable wild cattle and horses, which last, are hunted for their hides.

The surface of a great proportion of the country is low and level, especially in the more northern region bordering on the Equator. And there the climate is oppressive and sickly, and subject to hurricanes, and dreadful deluges. But in other parts, the surface is pleasantly diversified, by hills and valleys, elevated plains, and lofty mountains. Toward the south and west, the climate is exceedingly healthy and pleasant; being refreshed by the sea breezes, or tempered by the cool and salubrious mountain zephyrs.

The soil is as rich as that of any other region of the globe; but the wonderful resources of nature are but poorly improved, on account of the extreme indolence of the inhabitants. Cotton, sugar, coffee, &c. abound in the northern and equatorial tracts, and wheat and other grains, are natural to the southern provinces, and the elevated mountainous districts. Horned cattle are raised in this country, almost without number, and with little care.

The forests abound in rich and valuable materials for dyeing, and for cabinet ware. But the gold and diamonds of Brazil,

are her peculiar boast. They are found lying in the beds of the mountain streams, or are washed out from among the gravel or pebbles of the deep valleys.

The diamond country is in the eastern part, in the province north of Rio Janeiro. It contains more than 1,000 square miles, and is perpetually guarded on all sides, by an army of cavalry, appointed for the express purpose of defending the precious treasures from the hands of smugglers; or of escorting them when conveyed to the capital city. The collection of diamonds in the royal treasury of Portugal, is the richest in the world. It is valued at more than three millions sterling. Portugal has received from Brazil more than 15,000 cwt. of gold, and more than 2,000 lbs. of diamonds.

The principal towns, are Rio Janeiro, Pernambuco, Bahia of St. Salvador, Porto Seguro, which are sea ports, and St. Pauls, Villa Rica, Tejuco, and Villa Boa, which are situated in the interior among the mines.

Rio Janeiro is the capital. It is situated at the head of a large bay, and at the foot of lofty mountains. Its harbor is capacious and secure, and its commerce extensive. It is the grand mart of Brazil. Population 150,000.

Bahia, or St. Salvador, is situated on the bay of All Saints, and like Quebec, has an upper and lower town, and is strongly defended by nature and art. It has an excellent harbor, and is a place of great trade. Population 100,000.

Pernambuco is a commercial town, increasing in wealth and importance. Population 30,000. Tejuco, is the capital of the diamond country. The inhabitants of these cities are chiefly negroes and mulattoes. The whites and Indians are less in number. Of the population of the Brazilian empire, about one sixth are Portuguese in their origin. The rest are negroes, mulattoes, and independent Indians. The number of slaves is about 1,800,000.

The state of education is low. Ignorance and superstition prevail. Agriculture and manufactures are greatly neglected. Commerce is far from being in a prosperous and flourishing state. The indolence and listlessness of the Portuguese here, are most obvious. In them, the passion for mining swallows up almost every laudable passion. The love of gold, and diamonds, and the love of sloth, are paramount to the love of liberty, learning, industry, and virtue, which are the only true sources of solid wealth and happiness. Though their country is naturally one of the richest and finest in the world, their condition is unen-

viable. The people generally are far behind most others in the enjoyment of the common comforts and conveniences of life.

The prevailing religion is the Roman Catholic. The government is monarchical, and is in the hands of one of the royal family of Portugal, who is styled emperor.

Brazil was first discovered by Americus Vesputius, in 1498, but the settlement of it by the Portuguese, was not commenced till about 50 years after, when they founded the city of St. Salvador.

QUESTIONS.

From what does Brazil derive its name? How many degrees north of the equator does it extend? How many south? What are its boundaries? Its length and breadth? Its contents in square miles? What is its extent compared with that of the United States? How great a proportion of South America does it comprise? What capes on its coast? Into how many provinces is it divided? What mountains traverse it from west to east? What mountains line the eastern coast? Is the country well watered? What rivers flow down the northern declivity into the Amazon, or into the Atlantic? What toward the south, into the La Plata? What is the main body of Brazil? What proportion of the whole country is settled? To what parts are the Portuguese settlements chiefly confined? What name has usually been given to the interior or central region? By what is it occupied? For what are the wild cattle and horses hunted?

What is the surface of the country toward the equator? What is the climate in those parts? How is the surface diversified in other tracts? What is the climate toward the south and west? What is the general nature of the soil? What productions are common in the northern parts? What in the southern? In what do the forests abound? What kind of treasures are the peculiar boast of Brazil? Where are the diamonds and gold generally found lying? In what part is the diamond country situated? How large is it? How is it guarded? At what sum are the diamonds in the royal treasury of Portugal valued? What are the principal towns of Brazil? Which of these are sea-ports? Which are in the interior among the mines? Which is the capital? What is the population of Rio Janeiro? Of St. Salvador? Which way are St. Salvador and Pernambuco, from Rio Janeiro? Of what is the population of these cities chiefly composed? What is the whole population of Brazil? What proportion are Portuguese? What are the rest? What is the general state of education, agriculture, manufactures, and commerce? What is the character of the Portuguese? What is their religion? What is the government of Brazil? What is the chief ruler styled? When and by whom was Brazil discovered? When and by whom was its settlement commenced?

PERU:

Extent, 480,000 sq. miles—Pop. 1,600,000—3 per sq. mile.

Peru is divided into High and Low Peru, by two chains or Cordilleras of the Andes, intersecting the country from north to south.

Low Peru extends along the coast 1,000 miles, between the west chain of the Andes and the Pacific ocean. It is a low, sandy, desert region, about five miles wide, generally destitute of rain, parched with drought, and oppressed with excessive heat.

High Peru is situated between the two ridges of the mountains, and is elevated from 8,000 to 10,000 feet above the level of the sea. The soil is generally fruitful, and the climate temperate, serene and healthy, with little or no change. In this as in other tropical countries, it is a curious fact, that in going up from the sea shore, to the summits of the mountains, you may experience as great, and regular changes from heat to cold, on the same parallel of latitude, as in the various seasons of the year in a temperate zone, or as would be felt, in traveling from the equator to the polar circles.

The eastern portion of Peru, beyond the Andes, consists of extensive grassy plains or Pampas.

Peru is subject to frequent and desolating earthquakes. It affords the usual vegetable productions of tropical and temperate regions. Here is found that valuable drug, the Jesuits' or Peruvian bark. Here also, are those remarkable animals, the Lama and the Vicuna, both useful for their wool, and the former, a species of camel, is of great importance as a beast of burden, in the transportation of goods over the mountainous regions. In its mines of gold and silver, and quicksilver, this country surpasses every other of its extent. The yearly amount of gold and silver obtained here, is estimated at six millions of dollars. The mines engross the attention of the people, to the great neglect of the soil and internal improvements, and to the exclusion of many important branches of industry. Good roads and bridges are unknown; markets are very difficult of access. A spirit of enterprise scarcely exists. The arm of useful industry is unnerved.

Peru is greatly dependent, for the necessaries of life, on other nations. Its population consists of civilized Indians, Spaniards, Negroes, Mestizoes, &c. In 1828, slavery was totally abolished.

The government is unsettled. There has been a long and severe struggle for independence. The chief cities are Lima, and Callao its port, Cuzco, Arequipa, Guamanga, Guanica Velica, and Truxillo.

Lima is the metropolis. It is situated in the midst of a delightful valley, about six miles from the sea, and from Callao, which is an excellent port belonging to it. Lima is distinguished for the magnificence of its public buildings, the rich and splendid ornaments of its churches, and the fondness of its citizens for luxury in dress, and pomp in their equipages. It suffered a dreadful overthrow by an earthquake in 1786. Population 60 000.

Cuzco, south east of Lima, in the interior, is distinguished as the ancient capital of the Peruvian empire. It was founded by one of the Incas or Indian kings, nearly 500 years before it was taken by the Spaniards in 1534. Here was found a splendid temple of the sun, and other edifices truly magnificent and astonishing. It is still a large town, and retains monuments of its original grandeur. Population 30,000.

Guanca Velica is east of Lima, and has an elevation of 12,000 feet, or more than two miles above the level of the sea, being the loftiest city either in South America, or on the globe. It is also noted for quicksilver and other valuable mines. Guamanga is a handsome town, and the seat of a university.

The conqueror of Peru was Pizarro, a native of Florence, who invaded the country in 1531, and laid the foundation of the city of Lima, in perfidy and blood.

QUESTIONS.

How is Peru bounded? What are its extent and population? Into what two parts is it naturally divided? By what mountains? What is the situation, the length, and breadth of Low Peru? What kind of region is it? Where is High Peru? How high above the sea is it? What are its soil and climate? What occasions a great variety of temperature in this country on the same parallel of latitude? What is the surface of the eastern portion of Peru? To what peculiar calamity is Peru subject? What is said of the vegetable productions? What valuable medicinal bark is found here? What remarkable animals are found here? What mines? What engrosses the attention of the people to the neglect of the soil and of internal improvements? What is said of the government? What are the chief cities? Which is the capital? Where is Lima situated? What is its port? For what is Lima distinguished? Where is Cuzco? For what distinguished? When and by whom founded? What remarkable temple was found in it? Where is Guanca Velica? For what is it remarkable? What is the situation of Callao? Arequipa? Guamanga? Truxillo? Which way are they from Lima? Who was the conqueror of Peru? When did he invade the country, and what city did he begin to build?

BOLIVIA.

Extent, 320,000 sq. miles—Pop. 1,200,000—4 per sq. mile.

This country was formerly included within the limits of Peru. In 1825 it became an independent republic, and was named after Bolivar, the celebrated South American general.

The surface, generally, is rough and mountainous, especially on the west, and the climate cold and unfruitful; yet in some districts, there are fertile plains and valleys, where the climate is pleasant, and highly favorable to the production of grain and wine. In the south western corner, between the ocean and the Andes, is the desert of Atacama, 300 miles long, represented as entirely destitute of the appearances of vegetable and animal life. On the north west, is lake Titicaca, more than 200 miles



Inhabitants of Bolivia.

in circumference, in the midst of surrounding mountains. Three considerable rivers rise in Bolivia, and run toward the north, and two toward the south.

The gold and silver mines of this country, have long been celebrated, as incomparably rich and productive. In the midst of a dreary and barren region, these mines are the great sources of wealth. They occupy the chief attention of the people, and are the means of supplying from other countries, a rich variety of necessaries and luxuries.

Potosi is the centre of the mining operations. It is situated on the declivity of a mountain of silver mines, whose treasures are inexhaustible. These mines are said to produce several millions of dollars, annually. This city is the centre of trade between the United Provinces, and the Pacific, and is distinguished equally for its immense wealth, and for the dissoluteness and depravity of the people. Population 40,000.

The other principal towns are La Paz, Chuquisaca or La Plata the capital, Oropesa, and Tarija.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Bolivia? What its extent and population? In what province was it formerly included? When did it become an independent republic? Whence is its name? Describe the climate and surface. Describe the south western corner. What lake on the north-west? What is its circumference? What three rivers rise in Bolivia and run north? Where do they empty? What two run towards the

south? Of what are they branches? What is said of the mines of Bolivia? In what kind of region are they situated? What are the great source of wealth to the country? What are they the means of supplying from other nations? What city is the centre of the mining operations? In what part of Bolivia is it? In what direction is Potosi from Lima? From Rio Janeiro? Are the mines of Potosi, gold, or silver mines? How much are they said to produce annually? What is the character of the people of Potosi? What are the other principal towns? Which way are they from Potosi? What is the capital of Bolivia? What division of South America lies south of it?

UNITED PROVINCES OF LA PLATA.

Extent 1,000,000 sq. miles—Pop. 2,000,000—2 per sq. mile.

This vast country extends across from the Andes to the Atlantic. It is about 1,400 miles long, and contains an area of not far from a million of square miles. The northern and north-western parts are mountainous and barren, and to a great extent, inhabited by native Indians. Valuable mines are found in the northern section. On the east and north-east, are extensive fertile lands, variegated with hills and valleys, and embracing most of the white inhabitants.

Between the Paraguay and the Parana, in the province of Paraguay, is produced abundantly, the famous Paraguay tea, or matte, which constitutes an important article of commerce, and is in common use in a great part of South America.

There is nothing more striking to the traveller, in the United Provinces, than those immense open plains or Pampas, which extend south-westerly to the Andes, and toward the south, indefinitely, into Patagonia. They are nearly 1,500 miles in length, and 500 in breadth, presenting the appearance of an unbounded ocean of coarse luxuriant grass, where neither tree, shrub, nor perennial plant can scarcely be found; where there are few, or no inhabitants, but innumerable herds of wild cattle and horses, range for pasturage. These cattle are hunted for their skins, and the hunters on horse back are wonderfully dexterous at catching them, by the neck or leg, with a rope.

In this large division of South America, there is a great variety of climate. As a general fact, it is warm towards the north, especially in the low lands, and towards the south, the seasons are temperate and delightful. The high lands and mountains are cold in proportion to their height. Hides, horns, and tallow, are the chief articles of export.

The chief cities and towns, are Buenos Ayres, Monte Video, Assumption, Maldonado, Mendoza, Cordova, and Tucuman.

Buenos Ayres, is situated on the south shore of the La Plata, where the breadth of the river is 30 miles, and at the distance of nearly 200 miles from the sea. The city is regularly laid out,

and the streets are broad. Some of the public buildings are large and splendid, but the houses are mostly of one story, and present a mean appearance. It is the grand emporium of trade, for the wide valley of the La Plata, but the harbor is inconvenient, and the navigation of the river here is greatly endangered by rocks and shoals, and by the impetuous pamperos or sweeping blasts of wind. Population 80,000.

Monte Video, is on the north shore of the La Plata, 120 miles from Buenos Ayres, and nearer the mouth of the river, which is here 80 miles wide. Its harbor is comparatively good, and its trade in hides, tallow, &c. extensive. Population 20,000.

The people of the Provinces are very ignorant and vicious, but the cause of education and morals is advancing. The government is free and independent, but still unsettled and fluctuating.

QUESTIONS.

How is the territory of the United Provinces bounded? How long is it? What is its extent in square miles? Between what parallels of latitude is it? Within what zone does it chiefly lie? What mountains border on it? What great river with numerous branches intersects it? What are the two grand branches which uniting form the Rio de la Plata? What branches has the Parana? What rivers towards the south run into the Atlantic? Describe the northern and north-western parts of the country? By whom are they chiefly inhabited? What section contains valuable mines? What are the surface and soil of the eastern and north eastern sections? Which section contains most of the white inhabitants? What famous herb is found in the province of Paraguay? Describe the plains of the United Provinces. What animals graze upon them? What is the climate towards the north? What towards the south? What on the highlands?

What are the chief cities and towns? Where is Buenos Ayres situated? How broad is the river there? How far from thence to the sea? Describe the city. Describe its commercial importance. Where is Monte Video? How wide is the river there? What trade has this city? Where is Maldonado? Mendoza? Cordova? Tucuman? What is the population of the United Provinces? What is the state of education and morals? What is said of the government? What country is west of the United Provinces?

CHILI.

Extent 175,000 sq. miles—Pop. 1,000,000—6 per sq. mile.

Chili is, in many respects, a remarkable and interesting country. It has been denominated the Switzerland of America. It is a long narrow tract, included between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean, being 1,250 miles in length, 140 in breadth, with a population of about 1,000,000, exclusive of independent tribes of Indians. From the extended range of high lands and mountains on the east, nearly a hundred, short but rapid rivers flow down into the western ocean, several of them being navigable, a considerable distance, for the largest ships. These rivers serve to irrigate and fertilize the numerous valleys which lie here and there enclosed between lofty ridges of mountains. Through

these ridges are narrow openings, passable only for mules, through which, there is a communication from one valley to another. Nine or ten such passes lead from Chili through the Andes, into the eastern and other parts of South America.

The climate of Chili generally, is, in a remarkable degree, salubrious and delightful. In the northern half of the country, for 700 miles in length, rain is very rare, but the dews are abundant. Thunder is never heard. A serene and unclouded sky is enjoyed, without interruption, for six months together. The soil in that section of the country is comparatively unfruitful in vegetables; but the mineral treasures are rich and abundant. The mines of tin, copper, and gold, have been peculiarly valuable. In the middle and more southern provinces, rain occasionally falls, with little or no thunder, and the soil produces grain, wine, oil, and fruits in rich profusion. There are lemon and orange groves, and extensive forests of apple, pear, and peach trees, with fruit of extraordinary size, and of the finest quality. The pastures are very luxuriant, the grass tall, and the cattle numerous and usually large. The earthquakes in Chili, are unterrifying and harmless. Though there are 14 volcanoes in constant activity, they are so remotely situated, in the heights of the Andes, that their eruptions are not dreaded.

Chili was formerly a Spanish colony; but in 1818, the people declared their independence. About one third of the country, viz. all south of Conception, except Valdivia, is occupied by the Araucanians, a brave and independent tribe of Indians, remarkable for their native eloquence, good taste, and advancement in civilization.

The people of Chili are intelligent and hospitable, and more distinguished for industry, than the South Americans in general. They are deficient in education and learning; but their agriculture is conducted with a good degree of skill.

Santiago or St. Jago, the capital, is situated in a beautiful plain, near the mining region. Population 50,000. Valparaiso the port of Santiago, 75 miles distant from it, has a fine harbor and an extensive, flourishing commerce. Population 10,000. Conception and Valdivia are considerable places. The latter has one of the finest harbors on this coast. Chillan, Coquimbo, and Copiapo, are also towns worthy of notice. Near the southern extremity of Chili is the island of Chiloe, surrounded by numerous smaller isles, all inhabited by natives, under the government of this country. Three hundred and sixty miles west of Valparaiso lies the island of Juan Fernandez, distinguished as the solitary residence of the Scotchman, Alexander Selkirk,

whose singular adventures gave rise to the celebrated novel of Robinson Crusoe.

The government of Chili is republican. The religion is Roman Catholic. The monks and nuns are represented as amounting to the number of 10,000, and the religious institutions with which they are connected are said to possess nearly a third of the landed property of Chili, together with 10,000,000 of dollars in money at interest.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Chili? Between what degrees of latitude is it situated? In what zone? What are its length and breadth? Its contents in square miles? Its population? What are the number and character of its rivers? Where do they rise and empty? How are the valleys situated? How do the inhabitants pass from one valley to another? How many narrow passes are there leading out of Chili through the Andes? What is the climate, generally? What is it in the northern part? What is the soil in the northern part? What are the most important mines there? What are the soil and productions in the more southern provinces? What is said of the earthquakes in Chili? How many volcanoes are in constant activity? Why are they not dreaded? What colony was Chili formerly? When did the people declare themselves independent? What Indians occupy the south part? For what are they remarkable? What is the character of the people of Chili? What is the capital? What other principal towns? Where is each situated? What island near the southern extremity of Chili? What island 360 miles west of Chili, and for what distinguished? What is the government? The religion? How many monks and nuns and how wealthy? What country forms the southern and narrowest part of the peninsula of South America?

PATAGONIA.

Of Patagonia little is known. It extends from the United Provinces to Cape Horn, and from the Southern Pacific to the Southern Atlantic Ocean; being situated between the parallels of about 40° and 56° south latitude. Its length is not far from 1,100 miles. The northern part of Patagonia includes a portion of the plains or Pampas, extending from the United Provinces, and the soil and productions are similar to those of that country. In the southern part, the climate is cold and inhospitable. The country is thinly occupied, by various tribes of native inhabitants, usually described as possessing a copper color, a tall gigantic stature, and a savage ferocity of manners. They are active and hardy, and habitually clothed with the skins of animals. They are skilful in the use of the sling, and of the bow and arrow. Both men and women are expert riders, and are much on horseback; sometimes attacking and plundering the caravans on the Pampas, and frequently, in pursuit of the rhea, a species of ostrich, and various other game. The Puelches are the prevailing tribe on the Atlantic side of the peninsula, and the Moches on the west toward the Pacific. Terra Del Fuego, which signifies the land of fire, is a comfortless and dreary region, consisting of stupendous rocks covered with perpetual snow.

QUESTIONS.

How is Patagonia bounded? Between what parallels of latitude is it? What is its length? What bays or gulfs on its coasts? What is the surface of the northern part? The soil and productions? What is the climate of the southern part? By whom is the country inhabited? What are the complexion, stature, and character of the inhabitants? Mention some of their manners and customs. What large kind of bird are they fond of pursuing? What tribe prevails on the eastern side? What on the western? Describe the island of Terra del Fuego. What islands north east of it?

REVIEW OF AMERICA.

See the map of the Globe, and the maps of North America and South America.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of the American continent? Of North America? Of South America? Which has the greatest extent, North America or South America? What parallel of latitude divides them? Which of them embraces the greater proportion of tropical region and warm climate? What are the most eastern and western points of North America? Of South America? How far south is Cape Horn? In what direction from it is Cape St. Roque? Cape Blanco? Cape Farewell? Cape Sable? Which way from Beering's Straits, are the straits of Magellan? Davis' Strait? Hudson's Strait? Which way from the Gulf of Mexico, is the Gulf of St. Lawrence? The Gulf of California? Hudson's Bay? Baffin's Bay? The Gulfs of Darien and Panama? How would you sail from New York to Panama? To Valparaiso? To Halifax? To Quebec? How would you sail from Acapulco to Havana? From Vera Cruz to Providence? From Rio Janeiro to New Orleans? From Baltimore to Callao? From Bahia to Demerara? From the Bermuda isles to the island of Juan Fernandez? Describe the extent of the grand American chain of mountains. What is the whole length of this chain? Ans. About 11,000 miles. What name is given to the South American part of this chain? What name is given to the Mexican part? What, to the more northern portion? How many feet are contained in a mile? Ans. 5,280 feet. If the peak of Chimborazo, be about 21,000 feet high, how many miles high is it? Where is Chimborazo? Where and how high is the peak, Antisana? Cotopaxi? Popocatepetl? Mount Elias? Which of these are volcanoes? What are the immense plains of North America called? What, those of South America? In what country are the llanos of the Orinoco? In what, are the pampas of the La Plata?

Where is the river Amazon? Where is the Tocantins? What island and what towns near their mouths? Where is the La Plata? The Magdalena? The Parana? The Essequibo? The Uruguay? The Surinam? Mackenzie's? The Colorado? The Rio del Norte? What are the most noted falls in North America? In South America? Where are the whites in South America chiefly settled? What people inhabit the vast central regions and the southern part of South America? What was the most ancient Indian city in South America? Where was it situated? What was the Indian metropolis in North America? What monuments of aboriginal civilization and skill, are found in Mexico and Cuzco? Is it in North or in South America, that the Indians generally are more acquainted with agriculture and the arts of civilized life? Is it in North or in South America, that agriculture, commerce, manufactures, and education, are special objects of attention? Why have these objects been so much neglected among the whites in South America?

In what part of America do you find the most free and salutary government? In what countries of America does the Roman Catholic religion prevail most? If you were stationed on the top of Chimborazo and could survey the whole American continent, in what direction would you point to mount Elias? To the white mountains? To the mouth of the Amazon or Maranon? To the Brazilian Andes? To the mouth of the La Plata? To Cape Horn? To Cape Blanco? To the isthmus of Panama? To the island first discovered by Columbus? What is the name of that island? Where is it situated? To what group does it belong? How long since Columbus

first set foot upon it? On what large island did he and his companions commence the settlement of the New World? How many square miles in all America? Ans. About 15,000,000. How many inhabitants? Ans. Between 35,000,000 and 40,000,000. How many whites? Ans. About 14,000,000. How many Indians? Ans. 8,000,000. How many negroes? Ans. 6,500,000. How many of mixed races? Ans. 6,500,000. How many people in America are supposed to use the English language? Ans. Not far from 12,000,000. How many the Spanish? Ans. 10,000,000. How many the Indian? Ans. More than 7,000,000. How many the Dutch? Ans. Between 3,000,000 and 4,000,000. How many the French? Ans. More than 1,000,000. How large a population, is it computed the whole of America is naturally capable of supporting? Ans. More than 500,000,000.

EUROPE.

Length 3,000 miles—Breadth 2,500—Extent 3,300,000 square miles—Pop. 215,000,000—65 per square mile.

INTRODUCTORY QUESTIONS.

See the Map.

Which is the smallest grand division of the globe? What are the boundaries of Europe? What is its length from east to west? Its breadth from north to south? Its number of square miles? Its population? What is the most northern cape? The most southern? The most western? What mountains on the east divide Europe from Asia? Is Europe in north or in south latitude? In what zones is it? Between what degrees of latitude and longitude is it situated? Ans. It extends from 36° to 71° north latitude, and from $91^{\circ}20'$ west to 60° east longitude. What parts of the United States correspond in latitude to the southern point of Europe? Ans. The northern parts of North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas. What parts of Europe correspond in latitude to Canada, or to the northern parts of the United States?

What sea separates Europe from Africa? What strait connects this sea with the Atlantic? What sea on the north east, connected with the Arctic Ocean? What two large seas on the south east of Europe? What two small seas are connected with the Black Sea? Which of them is between the Black Sea and the Grecian Archipelago? What large gulf east of Italy? Where is the gulf of Taranto? Of Genoa? Of Lyons? What two capes south east of Spain? What cape on the south west of Spain? What one on the north west? What large bay north of Spain and west of France? What channel and strait between France and England? What channel and sea between England and Ireland? What sea next east of England and Scotland? What sea and large gulf north of Prussia and east of Sweden? What two smaller gulfs, connected with the Baltic, on the east? Mention three or four of the principal lakes in the north of Europe. What two large British islands between the North Sea and the Atlantic? What are the principal islands in the Mediterranean? What peninsula between the Mediterranean and the Gulf of Venice? Between the Mediterranean and the Archipelago? Between the Mediterranean and the Atlantic? Between the North Sea and the Baltic? Between the Atlantic and the Gulf of Bothnia? Between the Black Sea and the sea of Azof?

What are the boundaries and capital of Norway? Sweden? Russia? Lapland? England? Scotland? Wales? Ireland? France? Spain? Portugal? The Netherlands? Denmark? Germany? Prussia? Poland? Switzerland? Italy? Turkey? Greece? What is the situation of the Ionian Isles? Ans. They are situated along the south west coast of Greece. What five divisions of Southern Europe, lie chiefly south of the latitude of 45° ? Which of the European countries lie principally between the parallels of 45° and 50° ? Which, between 50° and 55° ? Which north of 55° ? Which is farther north, England or the Gulf of St. Lawrence? Which of the United States is in the latitude of France, Switzerland, and Germany?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART FIRST.

FACE OF THE COUNTRY—MOUNTAINS—RIVERS.

The general direction of the high lands in Europe is north east and south west. They extend from the Ural mountains to Spain and the Atlantic Ocean. Switzerland is the most elevated region. From this mountainous tract, the rivers descend the north western declivity, into the Atlantic, the North sea, and the Baltic; and the south eastern declivity, into the Mediterranean and Black seas. The principal portions of low and level land, are situated near the southern and eastern shores of the Baltic and of the North Sea, including the northern parts of France and Germany, the Netherlands, Denmark, the northern sections of Prussia and Poland, and the south western parts of Russia. A great part of Holland is so depressed below the level of the sea, as to be naturally exposed to inundations, and is secured only by embankments. Russia in the main is a level region, abounding in steppes or extensive open plains.

The names of the six principal chains of European mountains are, Alps, Appenines, Pyrenees, Carpathian, Hæmus or Balkan, Dofrafield or Scandinavian.

The Alps divide Italy from France, Switzerland, and Germany. They extend in a semicircular form, from the Gulf of Genoa, to the Gulf of Venice, about 600 miles. They are generally from 4,000 to 12,000 feet, or from one to two miles in height. They present to view many lofty peaks, with narrow valleys intervening, and chasms of awful depth. Their summits are often covered with snow and involved in clouds. From sources thus elevated, many sweeping torrents descend, and numerous lakes and rivers are formed. Mount Blanc in Savoy, is the most celebrated peak of the Alps, being nearly 16,000 feet high, and discernible at the distance of 140 miles.

The Appenines extend through the middle of Italy, from north west to south east. They may be considered as a branch of the Alps, but are not so lofty. They are frequently covered with trees, at their greatest elevations; and it is evident from the volcanic rocks and lava, and desolate appearances which here and there are found on them, that they have formerly been active volcanoes.

The Pyrenees are situated between France and Spain, extending from the Mediterranean to the bay of Biscay, 250 miles.

The highest or western part of this chain, rises to the height of two miles, or 11,000 feet above the level of the sea, and like the Alps, contains glaciers, and is subject to destructive avalanches.

The Carpathian mountains are north and east of Hungary, extending from the borders of Germany to the Black sea, a distance of 500 miles. Their summits are but a mile and a half in height, and covered with perpetual snow.

Mount Hæmus, or the Balkan mountains, are in European Turkey, and extend across the country from west to east, and terminate at the Black sea.

The Dofrafield mountains separate Sweden from Norway. They run from south to north towards the northern ocean, more than 1,000 miles. The more southern part of this chain is the highest, but is not equal in height to several other mountains of Europe. The Dofrafield mountains furnish immense quantities of pine timber, and abound in valuable minerals, as copper, iron, and marble.

There are three famous volcanoes in Europe, Vesuvius in Italy, Etna in Sicily, and Hecla in Iceland.

The European rivers are not remarkable for length or magnitude. In this respect, they are inferior to the rivers of America and Asia. The Volga and the Danube are the longest, the former being about 2,000 miles in length, and the latter 1,500 miles. The Dnieper is about 1,000 miles in length, the Don 900, the Rhine 700, the Dniester 600, and the two Dwinas, the Elbe, the Rhone, and the Loire about 500.

QUESTIONS.

What is the general direction of the high lands in Europe? Which is the most elevated country? Where do the rivers which descend the north western declivity, empty? Where those which descend the south eastern declivity? Where are the principal portions of low and level land? What is the surface of Holland? Of Russia? What are the principal chains of mountains? Where are the Alps? Between what two gulfs do they extend? What is their length? Their general height? What is the most celebrated peak of the Alps? How high is it? Where are the Appenines? Describe them. Where are the Pyrenees? What is their length? Which part of them is the highest? How high is it? Where are the Carpathian mountains? What is their length? Their height? Where are the Hæmus or Balkan mountains? What is their length? What three celebrated volcanoes in Europe? What is the size of the European rivers compared with those of America and Asia? Which are the two longest? How long are they? What course do they run? Where do they empty? What is the length of the Dnieper? The Don? The Rhine? Where do they empty? Where is the Dniester? How long is it? Where is the Dwina? The Duna or Western Dwina? The Elbe? The Rhone? The Loire? What is the length of each? What are the principal rivers flowing from Europe into the Caspian sea? Into the Black sea, and the sea of Azof? Into the gulf of Venice? From Italy, France, and Spain, into the Mediterranean? From Spain, into the Atlantic? From France, into the bay of Biscay? From Germany, and the Netherlands, into the North sea? From Russia and Poland, into the Baltic? Into the gulfs of Finland and Riga? Into the gulf of Bothnia? Into the White sea and the Arctic Ocean?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART SECOND.

CLIMATE—SOIL—CULTIVATION—PRODUCTIONS.

The climate of Europe is various, but generally of a moderate temperature, and highly favorable to health and vegetation. The winters and summers are more temperate than in the corresponding latitudes of North America. Especially is this true of the western parts, which are rendered milder by the breezes and vapors proceeding from the waters of the Atlantic. The eastern parts are rendered colder by their exposure to the chilling winds which blow from the snowy and icy mountains of central Asia. The southern parts are warmer, and the climate more oppressive, than it naturally would be, on account of the hot pestilential winds from Africa. England, Ireland, and a part of the Netherlands, are remarkable for a moist atmosphere, and are subject to frequent changes of weather, but not to the extremes of heat or cold. France, Southern Germany, Italy, Turkey, and Greece, are distinguished as enjoying the most salubrious and delightful climate.

Europe is not so distinguished for natural richness of soil, as for the skill and industry with which it is cultivated. The art of agriculture, in many parts, is brought to a very high degree of perfection, and large tracts of land, by nature rough and unpromising, are improved to advantage. In other parts, naturally rich and fertile, the inhabitants are so oppressed, or so indolent, and negligent of the soil, that much land is suffered to lie unimproved.

In the south, as in Spain, Portugal and southern Italy, the soil is luxuriant, and congenial to the growth of wheat, the vine, the fig, and the olive, which are cultivated, but much of the ground is left a mere waste through indolence.

In the middle regions, Great Britain and the Netherlands, have long been celebrated for agricultural skill and industry, particularly in the raising of wheat and the pasturage of cattle. France and the north of Italy are fertile, agricultural countries, abounding in wheat, wine, and olive oil. Switzerland, notwithstanding the ruggedness of its surface, is well cultivated, and very rich in pasturage. Germany, Austria, Prussia and Poland, are in general, much less distinguished for skill in agriculture; but the soil is good, and produces vast quantities of wheat and rye.

In the north, as in Norway, Sweden, and northern Russia, the climate is so cold that very little grain can be raised, except rye, barley, and oats. Potatoes, nemp, and flax, are extensively cultivated, and the pasturage, throughout large tracts, is excellent. Grazing is there the principal occupation, especially among the Russian Tartars, whose flocks and herds are almost innumerable.

QUESTIONS.

What is the general character of the climate of Europe? How is it compared with that of the corresponding latitudes in North America? Which parts are mildest? Why? What winds render the eastern parts colder? What countries are remarkable for a moist atmosphere and frequent changes of weather? What countries are distinguished for the most salubrious and delightful climate? For which is Europe most distinguished, luxuriance of soil, or agricultural skill? What is the state of her agriculture? What are the soil and productions of the south of Europe? Of the middle parts? Of the northern parts? What, in these parts, is the principal occupation?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART THIRD.

COMMERCE—ARTS—MANUFACTURES—LANGUAGE—AND LEARNING.

Europe has peculiar facilities for inland navigation, and for foreign commerce. The navigable rivers are numerous, and flow in various directions, from the interior to the surrounding seas. Their are also many canals connecting one sea and river with another. By these means, an easy and direct communication is opened to the ocean, from almost every part. Some of the principal canals are the following: The canal of Languedoc in France, connecting the river Garonne with the Mediterranean, 140 miles in length; the Central canal of France, 71 miles long, uniting the Saone and Loire; and the Orleans canal connecting the Loire and Seine. In England, are the Leeds and Liverpool canal, 140 miles long; the Grand Trunk canal, 140 miles long, and the Grand Junction canal, 100 miles long. In Scotland is the Caledonian canal, between the Atlantic and Murray Frith; and in Ireland the Grand Irish canal, between the Shannon and the Liffy.

The sea coast is very extensive and remarkably indented with gulfs and bays, thus furnishing numerous and excellent harbors. These commercial advantages are extensively improved. The nations of Europe in general are engaged in active commerce, and some of them, particularly England, France, and Holland, have distinguished themselves for commercial skill, enterprise,

and intrepidity. Of England, it may be said, that her ships are in almost every sea, and visit almost every shore, and that she has long manifested a determination to visit every habitable and accessible corner of the world, wherever there are rational beings to barter with, or any desirable commodity to be procured.

The arts both useful and ornamental, are brought to greater perfection in Europe, than in any other grand division of the globe. By the ingenuity and industry of the people, manufactures in almost endless variety are here produced, and hence distributed, by means of commerce, among other nations. England, France, the Netherlands, Saxony, and Prussia, excel in woollen manufactures. Great Britain, France, and Austria, in cottons. Ireland, Bohemia, Moravia, Holland, and Silesia, in linens. Spain, Italy, and the South of France, and of Austria, in silks. England, Wales, and Germany, are highly distinguished for their metallic manufactures; and Germany and Holland, are unrivalled in the making of toys. Clocks and watches of superior quality are made in England, and in vast numbers in Switzerland, France, and Germany. Italy excels in music, sculpture, and painting.

Europe is the seat and centre of literature and the sciences. These are cultivated, especially, and with the highest success, among the more elevated ranks of society; but common learning is more neglected, and not so generally diffused among the mass of the people as in the United States. Multitudes of the poor are unable to read or write. Elementary village schools are comparatively rare. Knowledge is more confined to high schools, colleges, and universities. The European universities, are far more extensive establishments than the colleges in America, and conducted upon other principles, and very different customs. They are endowed with immense funds, furnished with large libraries and all necessary philosophical apparatus, and with botanical gardens exhibiting as far as may be, specimens of the various species of shrubs, plants, and flowers. Each university embraces a number of colleges, a great variety of buildings, and professors in every branch of science. Thither learned men resort, or there reside, to enjoy the scientific advantages which they afford. The students are usually uncontrolled, in the choice and in the pursuit of their studies. Little or no discipline is established for the regulation of their moral conduct. They may, or may not, suffer themselves to be stimulated by the high literary prizes and honors which are held out to their ambition.

The nations most distinguished for their proficiency in litera-

ture and science, are Germany, Great Britain, and France; while Switzerland, Scotland, Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, are among the most remarkable for the encouragement of common schools, and the general diffusion of knowledge. In the Protestant countries, and in those favored with a mild and liberal form of government, the mass of the people are more enlightened and better informed, than in those where the Roman Catholic is the prevailing religion, or where the government is despotic and oppressive.

The most celebrated European universities, are those of Oxford and Cambridge, in England, that of Edinburgh in Scotland, those of Gottingen, Leipsic, Berlin, and Halle, in Germany, and those of Utrecht and Leyden, in the Netherlands. The University of Oxford is famous for its antiquity. It embraces 20 colleges, 1,400 students, and a library of 500,000 volumes. Its buildings are beautiful and magnificent; rivalling in splendor the most elegant royal edifices. The University of Edinburgh is celebrated for its high standing in medical science, in which respect it is supposed to excel all other universities in the world.

The languages spoken in Europe are derived chiefly from four principal stocks, or original tongues, viz.: The Gothic or Teutonic, the Celtic, the Latin, and the Slavonic.

QUESTIONS.

What facilities has Europe for internal commerce? What are some of the principal canals in Europe? What facilities has Europe for foreign commerce? Are the nations of Europe, generally, engaged in commerce? Which are most distinguished in this respect? Which nations excel in woollen manufactures? Which in those of cotton? Which in linens? Which in silks? Which in metallic manufactures? Which in making toys? Which in clocks and watches? Which in music, sculpture, and painting? What is the state of literature and the sciences? What is the state of common learning compared with that of the United States? Describe the European universities. What European nations are most distinguished for proficiency in literature and science? Which for common education? Under what religion and government are the mass of the people the most enlightened? What are the most celebrated European Universities? For what is Oxford famous? How many colleges does it embrace? How many students? How many volumes in its library? From what four stocks are the languages of Europe chiefly derived?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART FOURTH.

DISTINCTIONS OF RANK—MORALS—FORMS OF GOVERNMENT AND RELIGION—EUROPEAN CHARACTER—INFLUENCE AND POWER—CITIES.

As learning is very unequally distributed in Europe, so is property. Great distinctions of rank exist in society, and va-

rious orders of nobility are established. In the United States, especially in New England, almost every man is possessed of some land, or some property which he can call his own, and some personal independence; but in most parts of Europe, the rich and the noble are exalted to immense estates and revenues, while the common people are depressed as mere tenants or menial servants. The wealthy, and the great, live in palaces, and ride in coaches, with dazzling equipages, and splendid retinues, while the poor peasantry lodge in thatched cottages, or mud huts, and with difficulty procure a scanty subsistence by the sweat of the brow. Nor are these vast distinctions of riches and honor, confined to mere worldly offices, or interests; they are found among men, who, by profession, are worshippers of the same God, followers of the same Saviour, and votaries of the same humble and spiritual religion.

Though Europe is more distinguished for Christian knowledge and morality, than any other great division of the world, except the United States, there is still a lamentable moral darkness and impurity in the mass of her population. War and political commotion have shed there, a wide, demoralizing influence. The means of religious instruction, are less perfectly enjoyed, so that infidelity, superstition, vice and crime, are more common than in the enlightened portions of America.

The prevailing forms of religion in Europe, are the Greek, the Roman Catholic, the Protestant, and the Mohammedan, all of which, except the last, are denominations of Christianity. The Greek church is found principally in Russia and Greece. The Roman Catholics are most numerous in the middle and south of Europe, as in Italy, Spain, Portugal, France, Germany, Austria, Poland, and Ireland. The principal Protestant sects in Europe, are Lutherans, Calvinists, Episcopalians, Presbyterians, Methodists, Baptists, Quakers, and Moravians or United Brethren. The Lutherans prevail in Norway, Sweden, Lapland, Denmark, Prussia, and Hungary. The Calvinists, in Scotland, Switzerland, and Holland. The Presbyterians, in Scotland and Holland. The Episcopalians, Methodists, Baptists, and Quakers, in England. Mohammedanism is the established religion in Turkey and South Russia.

Europe is computed to contain about 115 millions of Roman Catholics, 50 millions of Protestants, 42 millions of the Greek church, 3 millions of Mohammedans, besides nearly 2 millions of Jews. The Jews are scattered among the various nations, in Germany, Poland, Turkey, and Holland.

The prevailing form of government is monarchical, and it is

either an absolute monarchy, where an emperor, king, or prince holds the unlimited control, as in Turkey, Russia, Austria, Prussia, Denmark, and Naples, or a constitutional monarchy, where the ruler's power is restrained by an established constitution, or legislative Assembly, as in Great Britain, France, Holland, Belgium, Spain, Portugal, Sweden, and Norway.

The native character of the Europeans, except of the most northern dwarfish tribes, has long been distinguished for intelligence, enterprise, and energy. From the very nature of their climate and soil, they are constitutionally active and hardy; and by their extensive acquaintance with the various branches of learning and industry, they have been led to acquire superior wealth, influence, and power, compared with most other families of mankind. They have aspired to, and accomplished great enterprises, at home and abroad. As the head or the heart is to the animal frame, so, in several respects, is Europe to the rest of the world. Her influence extends throughout the terrestrial system. By her sons, a new world has been discovered, peopled, cultivated, and planted with growing empires. Many large and distinct portions of the globe have been subjected to her power and sway. Intelligent nations, and especially those of America, watch with peculiar interest the affairs of Europe. Every vibration of her pulse is, as it were, felt on this side of the Atlantic; and the various news which is wafted on each successive breeze, concerning the movements of her councils, or armies, is received with avidity, and either rejoices or saddens the hearts of her descendants here.

The European states which rank highest in the scale of national influence and importance, are Great Britain, France, Russia, Austria, and Prussia.

The European cities are far more numerous and populous, than the cities of America, and though less regular in their plans, they are more compactly, and magnificently built. They abound more in splendid public edifices, such as towers, palaces, hospitals, universities, and churches, which are stupendous works of architecture, and striking monuments of national taste, wealth and pride. The houses are generally constructed of stone or brick, and are frequently seven or eight stories in height. The streets, especially in the cities of the continent, are often very contracted and dirty, without side walks, and crowded with horses and carriages, and foot passengers.

The Roman Catholic cities are noted for the multitude and magnificence of their churches, built and ornamented in the most costly style, and also for a singular parade of crucifixes,

statues, and pictures of saints, which are not only displayed in the houses of worship, but are often seen set up at the corners of the streets, where each passenger has an opportunity to stop and repeat his devotions.

Many interesting and pleasant rural scenes are found in the cities of Europe. There are parks, and gardens, and summer bowers, with delightful walks, adorned with rows of trees; and in many instances there are public aqueducts and fountains, which are peculiarly grateful in the more southern climates, as they tend to assuage the heat of summer, and refresh the citizen and the traveller.

QUESTIONS.

Describe the state of society in Europe. What are the prevailing forms of religion in Europe? In which countries is the religion of the Greek church prevalent? In which are the Roman Catholics most numerous? In which the Lutherans? In which the Calvinists? In which the Presbyterians? In which the Episcopalians, Methodists, Baptists, and Quakers? In what countries of Europe is Mohammedanism the established religion? Where are the Jews chiefly found? What number of Catholics in Europe? Of Protestants? Of the Greek church? Of Mohammedans? Of Jews? What is the prevailing form of government in Europe? In what countries is the monarchy absolute? In what constitutional or limited? For what has the native character of the Europeans long been distinguished? What renders them constitutionally active and hardy? By what have they been led to acquire superior wealth, learning, influence, and power? Describe the relation of Europe to the rest of the world. Mention some of the most powerful European states. Describe the European cities as compared with the American. For what are the Roman Catholic cities noted? What rural scenes are found in the cities of Europe? What is the largest city in Europe? Ans. London. What is its population? Where is it situated? In what latitude is it? In what country, and in what latitude is Paris? Constantinople? Petersburg? Naples? Vienna? Lisbon? Dublin? Berlin? Amsterdam? Moscow?

On what waters is Cadiz? Oporto? Brest? Hague? Toulon? Marseilles? Amsterdam? Naples? On what river is London? Paris? Rouen? Hamburg and Dresden? Lyons? Warsaw? Bordeaux? Toulouse? Vienna?

BRITISH EMPIRE.

The British Empire is equal or superior to any on the globe, especially in wealth, commerce, political influence, and power. It comprehends the United Kingdoms of Great Britain and Ireland; also great foreign possessions in Asia, America, Africa, and Australia, embracing nearly 150 millions of the human family. Great Britain is composed of England, Scotland, and Wales.



View of London.

ENGLAND.

PART FIRST.

Extent, 50,000 sq. miles—Pop. 13,000,000—262 per sq. mile.

England is one of the finest and most beautiful countries in the world. Its natural features are interesting, and it exhibits a very happy and striking combination of the works of nature, with the effects of extraordinary human diligence and skill. Its length is about 400 miles, and its breadth, in some instances, 300. It is divided into 40 counties.

The climate is very moist and variable, but peculiarly moderate and mild, considering the high latitude of the country. Neither the winter nor the summer is here found in extremes, both heat and cold being greatly tempered by the influence of the surrounding seas. The face of the country is uneven, or

undulating, neither elevated into lofty mountains nor depressed by deep valleys; but beautifully diversified with hills, vales, and plains, presenting on all sides a rich variety of interesting landscapes.

The soil is good and fruitful, being economically improved, and highly cultivated. By the hand of labor, the ruggedness of nature has been smoothed, her deficiencies supplied, and many a barren heath, or useless marsh, made to smile with verdure, or to wave with golden harvests. The chief productions are wheat, barley, oats, rye, beans, and peas. The pasturage is verdant and plentiful, and the flocks and herds very numerous.

The climate is peculiarly adapted to grazing; and often through a great proportion of winter, the fields are arrayed in green, and the smaller cattle range and need but little foddering. Unwearied pains have been taken to improve the flocks, and to increase the number of cattle and horses of the finest and most valuable qualities.

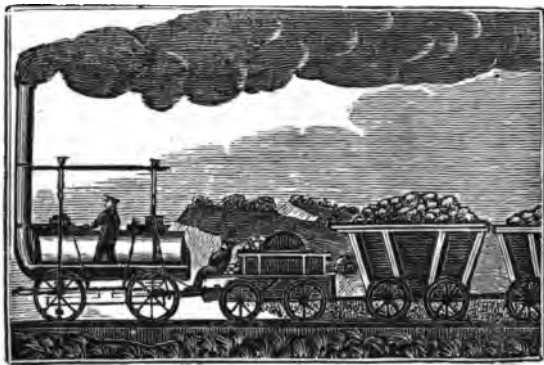
In no country, perhaps, in the world, is the art of agriculture better understood, or practised, than in England. She also excels in almost every mechanical art and European manufacture, and to a great extent, she supplies herself with the materials for her manufactures. Millions of fleeces of wool are here annually produced, and made into cloth. Immense quantities of cotton and other materials are imported from other countries and here manufactured.

The commerce of England consists chiefly, in conveying her manufactures to foreign nations, and exchanging them for raw materials of various kinds, which are brought home and manufactured by the industry of the people, into valuable articles, and then sent abroad to be sold, or exchanged. In this way industry and enterprise are the life and soul of England's policy, and the leading causes of all her unexampled wealth and greatness.

The principal minerals are tin, copper, coal, iron, and lead, which are produced in astonishing abundance, and exported in great abundance to other parts of the world.

The country is well watered and highly beautified by rivers and canals. The rivers are not long nor large, but they afford great conveniences for inland navigation. They are well supplied with fine fish, and by their various courses and meanderings, give liveliness to the general landscape. The principal rivers are the Thames, the Severn, the Medway, the Trent or Humber, and the Ouse. The most important canals, are the Leeds and Liverpool, the Grand Trunk, the Oxford, and the

Grand Junction. The last connects London and the river Thames, with the system of internal canal navigation towards the centre of the kingdom.



Rail Road Cars.

A great excitement has recently been produced in England, as well as America, in favor of rail roads. The rail road from Liverpool to Manchester, is the most celebrated in England. It is 32 miles long, and cost 35,000 pounds sterling per mile. The rail road cars for the transportation of passengers and merchandise, are propelled by steam at the rate of 25 miles an hour. The general system of roads and bridges in England is good, and worthy of imitation.

QUESTIONS.

For what is the British empire distinguished? What countries does it comprehend? Of what countries is Great Britain composed? What part of North America nearly corresponds with it in latitude? How is England bounded? What are its length, and its breadth? What is its extent in square miles? Its population? Into how many counties is it divided? Describe the climate. The face of the country. The soil. What are the chief productions? To what is the climate peculiarly adapted? What attention is given to the improvement of flocks and cattle? What is the state of agriculture? Of the mechanic arts and manufactures? In what does the commerce of England especially consist? What is done with the raw materials when imported? What are the principal minerals? By what is England watered and beautified? Give a general description of the rivers. What are the names of the principal rivers? Where does each empty? What are the most important canals? What is the most celebrated rail road in England? What is its length? How much did it cost per mile? At what rate do the cars on it move? What is the state of roads and bridges in England generally?



View of St. Paul's Church, London.

ENGLAND.

PART SECOND.

Some of the principal cities in England, are London, Manchester, Liverpool, Birmingham, Leeds, Bristol, Norwich, York, Portsmouth, and Plymouth.

The situation of London, in its widest extent, including Westminster, and the borough of Southwark, is on both sides of the Thames, 60 miles from the sea. It extends along the banks of that noble river seven miles, and its circumference is computed at thirty miles. Rising regularly from the water on the north, in the form of an amphitheatre, it exhibits to view a vast assemblage of magnificent edifices, a prospect inexpressibly grand and beautiful.

Near the centre of the city, stands that sublime structure, St. Paul's Church. It was 37 years in building, under the superintendence of one man, Sir Christopher Wren, who laid the first stone. It occupies six acres of ground, and there is no church in Europe, or in the world, to be compared with it, for magnificence, except the Cathedral of St. Peter's at Rome. Westminster Abbey is celebrated as the burial place of the deceased British kings and nobility, and as containing numerous monuments sacred to the memory of the illustrious dead.

The tower of London has been noted for ages as a royal prison, or a place of confinement for criminals of state; from this tower several distinguished individuals have been led forth, to lose their heads upon the block—solemn examples of the instability of earthly thrones, and of the frailty of human greatness.

The bridges in London are objects peculiarly imposing and wonderful. The Waterloo bridge, erected in commemoration of the battle of Waterloo, and the downfall of Napoleon, cost one million pounds sterling.

From London as the centre, there is a brisk circulation of trade by sea or by land, throughout the British Empire. The commercial parts of the city, are alive with business and traffic. Daily, or hourly, ships arrive, laden with the luxuries of distant nations, and others depart to carry the surplus produce of the country, and numberless samples of British ingenuity and manufacture to foreign climes.

The suburbs of London, for several miles around, are adorned with numerous villas and country seats of noblemen and gentlemen of fortune, displaying a great variety of rural scenery, and embracing almost every object, which can gratify the taste, or please the imagination.

Liverpool, on the Mersey, about 200 miles north-west of London, in a commercial point of view, is the second city in the kingdom. But Manchester is the second in population and the first in manufactures; and York has for ages been ranked next to London in point of honor and dignity. Liverpool possesses almost every commercial advantage, and carries on a very extensive trade, especially in cotton, with the United States and other foreign parts. Immense quantities of cotton are landed at Liverpool, and thence hurled upon rail road cars, to Manchester, where, with the magic power of machinery, it is briskly wrought up into different species of fabrics, which, from that central point, are circulated over the United Kingdom, Europe, and the world. The population of Manchester is 197,000.

Birmingham is highly distinguished for manufactures of iron and brass. Here iron is formed into almost every kind of useful implement. Here are extensive manufactories of muskets and of buttons and pins, which employ an astonishing system of intricate machinery and curious workmanship.

Leeds, Wakefield, and Norwich, are celebrated for manufactures of woollen.

Bristol, west of London, on the river Avon, is next to Liverpool in commerce. York is the metropolis of the north of England. It is a city of great antiquity and venerable rank; the

seat of an archbishop, and a magnificent cathedral, which is 500 feet in length, and was 200 years in building.

Portsmouth and Plymouth are noted as naval stations. The former presents impregnable fortifications, and its harbor is sufficiently capacious and secure to permit the whole royal navy, at once, to ride there in safety.

Greenwich, about six miles east of London, is celebrated as the seat of the Royal Observatory, from which longitude is usually reckoned; and also as containing a noble hospital, with accommodations for 3,000 seamen.

Bath, Wells, Brighton, Buxton, are famous as places of resort for thousands, in pursuit of health or of amusement, pleasure and dissipation.

Oxford and Cambridge are the venerable seats of the Universities, where multitudes have been educated who have attained to high degrees of eminence in the republic of letters.

QUESTIONS.

Mention some of the principal cities in England. On what river is London situated? How far from the sea? What are the length and circumference of the city? What noble structure stands near the centre? Who built it? How long was it in building? How many acres of ground does it occupy? With what other cathedral, may it be compared in magnificence? For what is Westminster Abbey celebrated? For what is the tower of London noted? What was the Waterloo bridge erected to commemorate? How much did it cost? Describe the commercial importance of London. How are the suburbs of the city adorned?

On what river is Liverpool? What is its distance and direction from London? In what respect is it the second city in the kingdom? Which is the second in population and the first in manufactures? Which is the second in honor and dignity? How is Liverpool situated for commerce? What article does it extensively trade in? Whither and how is the cotton carried from Liverpool? Where is Manchester? Where is Birmingham, and for what distinguished? What places are celebrated for woollen manufactures? Where is Bristol? What is its commercial importance? What is the metropolis of the north of England? What venerable building at York? Where are Portsmouth and Plymouth? For what are they noted? What is said of the fortifications and harbor of Portsmouth? Where is Greenwich? For what is it celebrated? What cities are famous as places of resort for health or pleasure? Where is each situated? Where are Oxford and Cambridge? For what are they celebrated?

ENGLAND.

PART THIRD.

In regard to common education, England has not ranked so high as several other European countries. One sixth part of the population are wholly uneducated. A fourth part are entirely dependent upon Sunday schools for education. The cause of education, however, is gaining ground. Especial efforts to promote it, have recently been made. Schools on the Lancasterian plan have been instituted, promising great usefulness.

There are about 5,775 Sunday schools, which are exerting a wide and salutary influence.

In exertions to propagate Christianity, England has taken the lead, and has set an illustrious example to the Christian world. By means of Bible, missionary, and tract societies, she has published and distributed the sacred volume in many different languages, and has sent the glad tidings of redemption to many heathen and benighted nations. More than eight millions of bibles and testaments have been distributed by the British and Foreign Bible Society, and 180 millions of religious tracts, in 70 different languages, have been circulated.

The established Church of England is the Protestant Episcopal Church, which is under the government of two archbishops, and 24 bishops, who are ranked with the peers of the realm, and are entitled to seats in the House of Lords, in parliament. The archbishop of Canterbury is the highest dignitary in the church, and in rank next to the royal family.

There are great numbers of Methodists, Baptists, Independents, and Friends or Quakers, who are all called dissenters. They are however tolerated in the free and conscientious enjoyment of their religious opinions.

The government of England, is a constitutional hereditary monarchy. The executive power is vested in the king. The legislative power is divided between the king and parliament. The parliament consists of two houses. First, The House of Lords, containing 425 members, composed of the hereditary peers of the realm, together with the bishops and the representative peers from Scotland and Ireland. Second, The House of Commons, consisting of 655 representatives chosen by the people. The representatives from counties are called knights; those from cities are styled citizens; and those from towns or boroughs, burgesses. The five orders of English nobility, are dukes, marquises, earls, viscounts, and barons.

The principal islands on the English coasts are the following: The Isle of Wight in the British Channel near the southern coast, possessing a salubrious climate and a fertile soil, abundant in the production of grain; the Scilly Isles off Lands End, on the south-west coast; the Isle of Anglesea, and the Isle of Man, in the Irish sea, on the west coast. The Isle of Anglesea is remarkable for its copper mines, and abounds in grain and cattle. The Isle of Man is considerably mountainous, and its soil by nature poor, but by laborious and faithful cultivation it is rendered fruitful in wheat, barley, and oats, and produces many fat cattle. Population 30,000.

The national character of the English stands high for intelligence, generosity, enterprise, and valor.

The naval force of Great Britain, consists of 606 vessels of war, of which 165 are vessels of the line. The number of men belonging to the navy and army is not far from 277,000.

QUESTIONS.

What is the state of common education in England? What part of the population are wholly uneducated? What efforts have recently been made to improve the state of education? What efforts has England made to propagate Christianity? What is the established religion of England? How is the Episcopal church there governed? What other denominations are there found? What is the government of England? In whom is the executive power vested? In whom, the legislative power? Of what does the parliament consist? Who compose the house of lords? Who compose the house of commons? What are the principal islands near the English coasts? Where are they situated? Describe them. How many vessels of war has Great Britain? How many men in the army and navy?

WALES.

Extent, 8,000 sq. miles—Pop. 805,000—100 per sq. mile.

Wales is situated in the western part of the island of Great Britain. Its length is 150 miles. It is divided into North and South Wales, and contains 12 counties. It is a mountainous region, especially in the north; but it embraces many fertile valleys, and affords many grand and delightful prospects.

The soil, generally, is fruitful in the necessities of life. The principal mountains are Snowdon and Plinlimmon. The vegetable and animal productions are similar to those of England. The cattle are smaller. The horses also are diminutive, but hardy and patient of labor. Numerous flocks of goats feed upon the mountains.

Wales is very abundant in mines of iron and coal, and in quarries of slate and marble. It embraces no very large cities, or towns, but many pleasant villages and agreeable dwellings,—the abodes of industry and contentment, scattered here and there among the mountains and valleys.

The Welch had their origin from the ancient Gauls. They are proud of their antiquity, and fond of tracing back their pedigrees. They are of quicker passions than the English, but sincere and faithful in disposition, simple in manners, industrious in their habits, and remarkably jealous of their liberties.

The chief towns are Cardigan, Caermarthen, and Pembroke.

The Isle of Anglesea belongs to Wales. The immediate government of Wales usually devolves on the eldest son of the king of England, who is hence styled the Prince of Wales.

QUESTIONS.

How is Wales situated? What is its extent in square miles? What is its population? How is Wales divided? How many counties does it contain? What kind of region is it? What is the soil? What are the principal mountains? What are the vegetable and animal productions? What are the mines and quarries? What are the principal towns? Whence do the Welch derive their origin? Describe the character of the Welch. What island belongs to Wales?

SCOTLAND.

PART FIRST.

Extent, 30,000 sq. miles—Pop. 2,366,000—79 per sq. mile.

Scotland is more than half as large as England, but not more than one third of it is under cultivation. It is divided into 33 counties.

The Highlands on the north, and the Lowlands on the south are separated from each other by the Grampian Hills, which run from east to west across the middle of Scotland.

The Highlands are mountainous and dreary. The climate is cold and tempestuous. The country abounds in beautiful small lakes or lochs, with here and there a verdant fruitful valley intervening. The Lowlands very much resemble England, in the face of the country, the climate, soil, and productions. There are extensive and fertile plains yielding abundant herbage, and sustaining great numbers of flocks and herds. Scotland, generally, is far better adapted to pasturage than to tillage. The most common kinds of grain are oats, rye, and barley. The minerals are coal, iron, and lead.

The country is watered by numerous short rivers, which are generally not navigable. The principal are the Loch, the Tay, the Spey, the Dee, Don, Tweed, and Clyde. The most noted lakes are, Loch Lomond, Loch Tay, Loch Ness, and Loch Awe. The scenery around these lakes is highly picturesque and romantic. It has excited the admiration of the traveller, and awakened the song of the bard. There is scarcely a lake, fountain, valley, cliff, or torrent, in Scotland, that has not been delightfully sung by the poets of this interesting country.

The constitution and character of the Scotch Highlanders correspond with the wild and rude scenes of nature among which they are bred. They are manly and robust, patient of hardship, but impatient of control, being of a bold and independent spirit, but generous and hospitable in their dispositions. They are averse to tilling the soil, yet fond of the pastoral life.

The Lowlanders are more mild, sober, and refined, distinguished for vigorous intellect, common education, and upright morals. There is no people in Europe more generally instructed from childhood, or more virtuously and piously brought up. Many of the Scotch have shone in literature and science with superior lustre. The state of agriculture is improving. Manufactures and commerce receive industrious attention.

QUESTIONS.

Between what parallels of latitude is Scotland? In what part of the island of Great Britain is it? How is it bounded? How large is it compared with England? How many square miles does it contain? Into how many counties is it divided? What is the population? What proportion of Scotland is cultivated? What separate the Highlands from the Lowlands? Which of them are north of the Grampian Hills? Which way do the Grampian Hills run? Describe the Highland country. The Lowland country. To which is Scotland best adapted, pasturage or tillage? What are the most common kinds of grain? What are the minerals? What kind of rivers water the country? What are the names of the principal rivers? Where does each empty? What are the most noted lakes? What scenery around them? What have been its effects upon the traveller and the bard? Describe the character of the Scotch Highlanders. Of the Lowlanders. What is the state of agriculture, manufactures, and commerce, in Scotland?



View of Edinburgh.

SCOTLAND.

PART SECOND.

The principal cities and towns are, Edinburgh, Glasgow, Aberdeen, Dundee, St. Andrews, Greenock, Perth, Paisley, and Sterling.

Edinburgh, the metropolis, is situated on three grand eminences, about a mile and a half south of the Frith of Forth, and

about 400 miles north west of London. It is composed of the Old and the New Town, between which lies a deep valley, once the bed of a lake, over which are constructed a mound and a bridge, connecting the two towns. The old town is irregularly built, on a lofty, rugged hill. The houses are very compact, and elevated from eight to twelve stories in height, each story containing rooms sufficient for the accommodation of a family.

The new town north of the valley, is laid out in squares, and is as regularly and handsomely built as any city in the world. It is the residence of the nobility and gentry, and men of opulence, whose seats are adorned with all that is beautiful and elegant in architecture. West of the vale, and on a lofty precipitous rock, stands the Castle, which as it were, looks down with awful majesty upon the whole city, and surveys the numerous hills, villages, and fields that surround it. The University of Edinburgh is of great celebrity, embracing 2,000 students, a great number of professors and teachers, and a library of 50,000 volumes. The medical department is particularly celebrated. This city also abounds in courts of justice, and the various institutions connected with the profession and practice of law. Indeed, literature and law are the grand pillars of support to Edinburgh. Manufactures and commerce are inferior objects of concern. The population is about 162,000. Leith, about a mile and a half distant, is the port of Edinburgh.

Glasgow, on the Clyde, 44 miles west of Edinburgh, is distinguished for regularity, beauty, and magnificence, and for its extensive commerce and manufactures, as well as for its University. It is the most populous and commercial city in Scotland. Population 200,000.

Aberdeen is on the Don, 100 miles north of Edinburgh. It is divided into Old and New Aberdeen. Its trade and manufactures are extensive and flourishing. It contains two colleges. St. Andrews is distinguished for a commodious harbor and a university.

Greenock, on the Clyde, is the most lively and important seaport in Scotland. Ship building, and various manufactures connected with navigation, are carried on here with great spirit. The town has had a very rapid growth, and is fast increasing in population. Perth, on the Tay, is an elegant city, flourishing in manufactures of linen and cotton, and famous in history. Paisley, is celebrated for the fancy muslin, and other manufactures, employing 29,000 persons.

The islands on the coast of Scotland are the Hebrides on the west, 300 in number, with a population of 70,000; the Orkneys

on the north, 26 in number; and the Shetland Isles, farthest north, 86 in number, with a population of 25,000. The latter are remarkable for stupendous rocks and precipices, and for the multitude of sheep. Of the latter, there are nearly 100,000, overspreading the isles, and yielding immense quantities of wool.

The established church of Scotland is the Presbyterian, which has belonging to it about 900 parishes, and 938 clergymen.

Scotland is represented in the British Parliament by 16 peers and 50 commoners.

QUESTIONS.

What are the principal cities and towns in Scotland? Which is the capital? On what is Edinburgh situated? Near what Frith? How far and which way from London? Of what two parts is it composed? What lies between the Old Town and the New Town? Describe the Old Town. The New. How is the castle situated? What is the reputation of the University of Edinburgh? What is the number of its students? Of the volumes in its library? In what institutions does Edinburgh abound? What are its grand pillars of support? What degree of attention is given to manufactures and commerce? What is the population? What is the difference between its population and that of New York? What is the port of Edinburgh? How far distant? Where is Glasgow? For what is it distinguished? What is its population? Where is Aberdeen? Describe it. Where is St. Andrews? For what is it distinguished? Where is Greenock? Describe it. Where is Perth? Describe it. For what is Paisley celebrated? What islands, on the coast of Scotland? What is the established Church of Scotland? How many parishes and clergymen belong to it? How many representatives has Scotland in the British parliament?

IRELAND.

Extent, 31,000 sq. miles—Pop. 7,734,000—249 per sq. mile.

Ireland is divided into four provinces, viz. Leinster, Ulster, Connaught, and Munster, which are subdivided into 32 counties. The surface of the country is stony and rocky, with moderate hills and mountains. The lakes are numerous, and surrounded by romantic scenery. The climate is more mild, moist, and foggy than that of England. The prevailing winds from the west, which sweep across the Atlantic, come loaded with vapors which often hide the face of the sun, and discharge an abundance of rain. The winters are not as snowy and severe as in England. The summers are cooler, and the thunder and lightning less frequent and terrific.

The soil in general is, by nature, more fertile, but not so well cultivated. One tenth part of the island, however, consists of bogs or morasses, which are useless, except for fuel. The surface of Ireland, in general, is usually covered by a beautiful verdure. Oats and potatoes are the principal productions and the chief support of the poor. Hemp and flax are abundant, and the manufactures of linen and muslin are extensive. No country in Europe is better provided with convenient bays and harbors, and

facilities for foreign commerce. Fine linens, beef and butter of superior quality, are the chief exports.

The principal rivers are the Shannon, Boyne, Liffy, and Waterford. The chief cities are Dublin, Cork, Limerick, Belfast, Waterford, Londonderry, Kilkenny, and Drogheda.



View of Dublin.

Dublin, the capital, is on the Liffy, 330 miles north west of London. Its population is 225,000. Its public edifices are magnificent, among which are the Castle, the Royal Exchange, and the University. The dwellings of the rich are elegant, and are very strikingly contrasted with the numerous miserable hovels of the poor, which are seen within the city and its suburbs. Dublin is the grand mart of the commerce of Ireland.

Cork is on the Lee, 130 miles south west of Dublin. It is the second city in Ireland, and highly celebrated for its capacious harbor and its extensive trade. Population 100,000.

Limerick, on the Shannon, is a city of great elegance, flourishing in manufactures and commerce. Population 65,000. Belfast, 80 miles north of Dublin, is distinguished for its trade in linen and provisions. Kilkenny is noted for quarries of beautiful marble.

The eastern and northern coasts of Ireland are to a great extent inhabited by people of English or Scotch descent, who are more enlightened and in better circumstances than the mass of the population.

The interior and western parts are chiefly occupied by

native Irish, descendants of the old Britons, who speak their original language, and who are ignorant, poor, and wretched. Notwithstanding the natural fertility and beauty of Ireland, poverty and misery prevail among the peasants. In the day they walk about in rags, perhaps begging a morsel of bread at the doors of their rich but oppressive landlords. At night they are lodged in huts of mud or straw, scarcely superior to the wigwams of American savages.

Agriculture is in a very low state. The church tithes and other taxes, swallow up the people's earnings. The spirit of industry is discouraged. Many of the poor have even sunk down in despair, and resigned themselves to perish with hunger.

Christian benevolence, however, has done, and is doing, much to remove the ignorance and to relieve the poverty and distress of this class of people in Ireland. The established church is the Protestant Episcopal. But more than two thirds of the population are zealous Roman Catholics. The most remarkable natural curiosity in Ireland is the Giant's Causeway, a promontory on the north coast. It consists of almost innumerable columns of stone, covering several acres near the sea shore. These columns are one or two feet in diameter, and twenty or thirty feet high. They are composed of several joints, or one stone or rock lying upon another, and compactly fitted together, so that a man may walk on the tops of the pillars to the very margin of the sea.

Ireland became united in government with England, in the year 1801. It sends 105 representatives to the British parliament, besides 28 representative peers and 4 bishops.

QUESTIONS.

What sea and channel divide Ireland from England and Wales? What is the latitude of Ireland? Its extent in square miles? Its population? Its size compared with Scotland and England? How is it divided and subdivided? What is the face of the country? What is the climate? What is the soil? How great a proportion of the island is covered with bogs? What are the principal productions? What manufactures are extensive? What is said of the bays and harbors? What are the chief exports? What are the names of the principal rivers? What course does each run and where is it discharged? What are the chief cities? On what river is Dublin? What course and distance from London? What is its population? Describe Dublin. Which way is Cork from Dublin? Describe it. What is its population? In what direction from Dublin is Limerick? On what river? Describe it. What is its population? Which way is Belfast from Dublin? For what is it distinguished? Where is Kilkenny? For what is it noted? In what part is Londonderry? Waterford? Drogheda? By whom are the eastern and northern coasts chiefly inhabited? What are the character and condition of those inhabitants? Who occupy the interior and western parts? What is their condition? Describe the general condition of the Irish peasantry. What is the established church? What proportion of the people are Catholics? Describe the most remarkable natural curiosity? When did Ireland become united with England?

FRANCE.

Extent, 215,000 sq. miles—Pop. 32,000,000—151 per sq. miles.

France is more than four times as large as England in extent, and it embraces a population twice as large as that of the whole island of Great Britain. It is divided into 86 departments, and subdivided into arrondissements, cantons, and communes.



View of the Palace of the Tuileries, Paris.

The surface on the north is low and level, in the central parts it is variegated with hills and valleys, and in the south east more mountainous. Nature has done wonders for France, in providing not only for the fertility and beauty of the country, but also for the strength and defence of the kingdom. On all sides except the north, it is enclosed by the sea, or by lofty mountains. The atmosphere is more dry and serene, and less liable to change, than that of England. Though there are considerable portions of land unsuited to cultivation, the soil for the most part is eminently fruitful, producing in the northern section, wheat, barley, oats, and potatoes, and in the southern, Indian corn, wine, and olive oil, in rich abundance. Grass is less flourishing than in England. The soil is adapted to grain, and the harvests generally are very plentiful. The state of agriculture is flourishing, but inferior to that of England.

Manufactures are very flourishing, especially the silk and woollen. The commerce extends over the world. The principal articles of export are silk and woollen goods, wine, and brandy

France is well supplied with springs, rivers, and canals. The most noted rivers are the Loire, the Rhone, the Garonne, and the Seine. The canals are the Languedoc, the Central, and the Orleans.

The French people are distinguished for their ingenuity, vivacity, cheerfulness, politeness, and bravery. They are fond of freedom, but are unstable and fickle in politics.

Some of the principal cities are Paris, Lyons, Marseilles, Bordeaux, Rochelle, Brest, Orleans, Lisle, Cherbourg, L'Orient, and Rochefort.

Paris is one of the most splendid cities in the world, and in point of population the second in Europe. It is delightfully situated on a plain, upon both banks of the Seine, and surrounded by a wall 16 miles in extent. The houses are built of stone, and are from four to seven stories high. The streets are generally narrow, crowded in the day time by a gay, polite, fashionable people, and enlivened with brilliant equipages. At night they are elegantly lighted with reflecting lamps, and guarded by a most vigilant and effective police. The public buildings are superior in splendor and magnificence to those of London. The public gardens and walks are elegant beyond description, and thronged by the votaries of amusement and pleasure. The Palais Royal, the Tuileries, the Champs Elysées, and the Boulevards, are distinguished as places of fashionable resort.

Paris is renowned as a seat of learning and science, and for its immense and admirable collections in sculpture, painting, and other fine arts. It embraces some of the most learned characters, societies, and institutions in the world. Its libraries are numerous and large, and many of them are at all times accessible to strangers.

The manufactures of this city are various, and of the finest quality. The port of Paris, is Havre, or Havre de Grace, situated 112 miles north west of it, at the mouth of the Seine.

Lyons is situated on the Rhone, 280 miles south east of Paris. It is celebrated for being more extensively engaged in manufactures, especially silks and articles of gold and silver, than any other city in France. Population 145,000. Marseilles, on the Mediterranean, excels in beauty and elegance, and is noted for the security and capaciousness of its harbor, which is capable of accommodating about 1,000 merchant vessels. Population 120,000. Bordeaux, on the Garonne, is a highly commercial place, and trades extensively in wine and brandy. It contains a flourishing university.

The most important naval stations are Toulon, Rochefort, and

Brest, the last of which can afford anchorage for 500 men of war. L'Orient and Cherbourg have fine harbors; the former is important for its naval magazines. Nantes and Rouen are distinguished for their flourishing manufactures and commerce. Versailles is distinguished for a magnificent palace, surrounded by beautiful gardens, which are adorned with statues and fountains. Calais is on the straits of Dover, opposite to the city of Dover in England.

Learning and science are extensively cultivated in France among the higher ranks of society, but great multitudes of the common people are uneducated. The system of general instruction is divided into three departments, viz.: primary, secondary, and superior. Primary instruction relates to the elementary and essential branches of learning, as reading, writing and arithmetic. The secondary embraces Latin and Greek, and all those higher branches, usually studied in American colleges. The superior embraces theology, law, medicine, and the highest branches of science and literature. The schools for secondary instruction are called colleges; the schools for superior instruction, are denominated Faculties. The French language has its origin from the Latin, and is more or less spoken throughout Europe. It is more useful to the traveller than any other European language.

The prevailing religion is the Roman Catholic, but Protestantism is fast increasing in popularity. The Roman Catholic schools of Theology have very few students, and the clergy appear disposed to avoid public instruction and examination.

The government is a constitutional monarchy. Its leading branches are, the king and his ministers, the Chamber of Peers, and the Chamber of Deputies. The Chamber of Peers consists of 259 members, nominated by the king, but it embraces no Ecclesiastical dignitaries. The Chamber of Deputies is composed of 430 members, elected by the people.

The island of Corsica belongs to France. Bastia is the chief town. Ajaccio, one of its towns, is noted as the birth place of Napoleon Bonaparte.

QUESTIONS.

Between what parallels of latitude is France? What part of North America corresponds with it in latitude? What are the boundaries of France? What channel and strait separate it from England? What mountains divide it from Spain? What mountains from Italy and Switzerland? What is its extent in square miles? What is its population? What are its extent and population compared with those of Great Britain? Describe the surface of France. What is the climate? The soil? What are the productions? What is the state of agriculture? Of manufactures? Of commerce? What are the principal exports? How is France divided and subdivided? What are the most noted rivers? What the most noted canals? What waters do they severally connect? For what are the French generally distinguished? What

are some of the principal cities? Describe Paris. Which way from Paris is Lyons? For what celebrated? Where is Marseilles? Describe it. Where is Bordeaux? Describe it. What are the most important naval stations? Where is L'Orient? Cherbourg? Nantes? Rouen? For what are Nantes and Rouen distinguished? Where is Toulouse? Orleans? Amiens? Lisle? For what is Versailles distinguished? Where is Calais? What is the state of learning and science in France? How is the system of instruction divided? What is the prevailing religion? What is the government? What are its leading branches? What island in the Mediterranean belongs to France? For what is it celebrated?

SPAIN.

Extent, 180,000 sq. miles—Pop. 14,000,000—78 per sq. mile.

Spain is less extensive in territory than France, and embraces not half so large a population. The number of provinces is 31. It is a mountainous region. The chief mountains are, the Pyrenees, the Cantabrian and the Sierra Morena. The rivers are, the Tagus, Duero, Minho, Guadiana, Guadalquivir, and Ebro.

The central parts are elevated into extensive table lands or lofty plains. The northern section is favored with a mild, agreeable, and healthy climate. At the south the climate is warm and sometimes sickly. The cool mountain air and the western sea breezes are refreshing; but the hot winds from Africa are oppressive and pestilential. The soil generally is fertile. At certain seasons it is much exposed to droughts. The intermediate valleys between the ranges of mountains are extremely rich, and when well watered, productive.

Nature has been very bountiful to Spain, but the Spaniards have neglected to improve their natural advantages, and been singularly unfaithful to their own interests. Habits of sloth and luxurious ease, brought on by the influx of American gold, together with the influence of a bad government and corrupt religion, have relaxed the energies of the nation and depressed its condition. Tillage to a great extent is neglected. But the country is so congenial to grain, maize, coffee, cotton, cocoa, vines, and olives, that it produces them in considerable quantities. It abounds in silk, and produces, almost spontaneously, some of the most delicious fruits; as oranges, lemons, almonds, citrons, figs, and raisins.

Spain is celebrated for rearing large flocks of sheep of the finest quality. Manufactures are not flourishing. Commerce is inactive and dependent. Enterprise and improvements are little seen or heard of in this country. The marks of poverty and decay are widely visible. Education and useful knowledge are little encouraged, either by the government or the clergy. The government is an absolute monarchy, and oppressive in its cha-

racter. The religion is the Roman Catholic. The clergy and monks are incredibly numerous. There are in Spain 146,000 Ecclesiastics, including 61 archbishops and bishops, and about 93,000 persons in convents, of whom 31,000 are females.

Many monasteries, nunneries, and religious hermitages, are established in various parts of the kingdom, where men and women, in separate societies, profess to have taken vows of perpetual seclusion from worldly concerns. The most remarkable establishment of this kind, is on the mountain of Montserrat, 25 miles from Barcelona. This is a solitary mountain, rising from a large plain, and of a very singular and curious form, consisting of an indefinite number of spiral or conical hills, rising one above another, to the height of 3,000 or 4,000 feet. Here are hermitages which have existed for ages, and a rich monastery of Benedictine monks, which has been accustomed to receive a multitude of visitants, and to treat the poor and the sick with the most liberal hospitality.

The Spaniards are of a swarthy complexion, grave but polite in their deportment, and temperate in their manner of living. Their principal amusements are, dancing, smoking, and bull-fights. Of the latter, they have, as a nation, long been notoriously fond. The Spanish language is derived chiefly from the Latin. It is remarkably expressive, sonorous, and majestic.

The cities most worthy of notice, are, Madrid, Barcelona, Seville, Cadiz, Grenada, Valencia, Salamanca, Saragossa, and Bilboa. Madrid, on the Tagus, is the metropolis, and to this circumstance, chiefly, it owes its importance. It has a very central and lofty situation about 300 miles from the sea. It is surrounded by a barren country, and is a place of little or no trade, or manufactures. Its population is 200,000. They derive the means of support from distant sources. Barcelona, on the north-east, is one of the most manufacturing, commercial, and wealthy cities in Spain. Population 120,000. Seville, on the Guadalquiver, is a very ancient and spacious city, once the capital, and now celebrated for its immense Gothic cathedral, its manufactures, and especially for the royal tobacco manufactory, which employs 1,500 persons. Population 90,000.

Cadiz, situated on one of the finest bays in the world, is an ancient town of extensive commerce, the grand rendezvous of the navy, and the centre of trade with America. Population 70,000. At Valencia, there are some of the largest silk manufactures in Europe. Carthagená and Málaga are respectable cities and flourishing sea ports. Salamanca is the seat of learning, and has a celebrated university. Here a great battle was

fought between the British and French in 1812. Ferrol is a naval station, and has a harbor of extraordinary excellence. Bilboa is favored with a fine harbor, and is the centre of the wool trade. The fortress of Gibraltar, on the straits of that name, is deemed impregnable. It belongs to the English. The straits in the narrowest part are 15 miles wide.

There are three islands in the Mediterranean which belong to Spain, viz. Majorca, Ivica, and Minorca. They are favored with a fruitful soil. Port Mahon, on the island of Minorca, is distinguished for its fine harbor.

QUESTIONS.

What is the latitude of Spain? What part of the United States is of the same latitude? How is it bounded? What bays and capes on its coasts? How many square miles does it contain? What are its extent and population compared with those of France? What is the number of its provinces? What is the face of the country? What are the chief mountains? What are the rivers? Which way do they severally flow and where empty? Into what are the central parts elevated? What is the climate of Spain? The soil? In what manner have the Spaniards improved the natural advantages of the country? What have relaxed the energies of the nation? What are the productions? For the rearing of what animals is Spain celebrated? What is the state of manufactures? Of commerce? Of education? What is the government? The religion? How many ecclesiastics in Spain? What number of them are archbishops and bishops? How many persons in monasteries? What number of them are females? What religious establishments in various parts of the kingdom? Where is the most remarkable establishment of this kind? Describe the mountain of Montserrat. Describe the complexion and manners of the Spaniards. From what is the Spanish language chiefly derived? What are its characteristics? What are the cities most worthy of notice? Where is Madrid situated? Describe it. What is its population? Mention the situation, most remarkable characteristics, and population of Barcelona. Seville. Cadiz. Where is Valencia? For what manufactures is it distinguished? Where are Carthagena and Malaga? Where is Salamanca? For what distinguished? Where is Ferrol? For what distinguished? Where is Bilboa? For what distinguished? What impregnable fortress at the entrance of the Mediterranean? To whom does it belong? How wide are the Straits of Gibraltar in the narrowest part? What three islands in the Mediterranean belong to Spain? Where is Port Mahon? For what distinguished?

PORTUGAL.

Extent 35,000 sq. miles—Pop. 3,200,000—92 per sq. mile.

Portugal embraces a comparatively small territory, divided into six provinces. It is about one fifth as large as Spain, and contains only about one fourth as many inhabitants. Ridges of rocky mountains traverse the country from east to west, terminating in capes or promontories at the ocean. The surface, of course, is quite diversified, and the soil and climate vary, according to the situation or the degree of elevation. In general, the climate is more mild and pleasant than that of Spain, but the soil is less fertile, especially in grain. Wheat, barley and oats, are raised on the high lands, and vines, olives, &c. are cultivated, to a certain extent, in the valleys and on the

plains. Agriculture and manufactures are in a languishing state. Commerce has some remaining life. The chief exports are wines, wool, and salt.

Three or four hundred years ago, the Portuguese were highly renowned, for a spirit of useful enterprise and commercial adventure; but little of this spirit is now discernible. As a nation, they are degenerated and depressed. Their national characteristics are idleness, superstition, treachery, a revengeful spirit, and a ridiculous affectation of pomp and parade, even among the lower classes. At the same time, they are represented as often friendly and hospitable. The peasantry are usually ignorant, degraded, and poor.

The chief cities and towns are, Lisbon, Oporto, St. Ubes, and Coimbra. Lisbon, the capital, is on the Tagus, nine miles from its mouth. It is a large city, and at a distance makes a grand and picturesque appearance. The harbor is wide and commodious, the commerce very extensive, embracing the principal trade of the kingdom. Population 240,000. This city, in 1755, was visited by one of the most dreadful earthquakes; involving the destruction of all the public buildings, 6,000 dwelling-houses, and 30,000 human lives. Oporto, on the Duero, is the second city in wealth and commercial importance, and is famous for its trade in port wines, of which it has annually sold for exportation 80,000 pipes. Population 80,000. At Coimbra, there is a celebrated university.

The Portuguese are superstitious and bigoted Catholics. Their government is monarchical, arbitrary and despotic.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Portugal? What is its extent in square miles? Its number of provinces? Its population? By what is it traversed? Describe the surface, soil, and climate. What are the products of the highlands? What of the valleys and plains? What is the state of agriculture and manufactures? Of commerce? What are the chief exports? For what were the Portuguese formerly renowned? What are some of their characteristics? What is the condition of the peasantry? What are the principal cities? What is the situation of Lisbon? Describe it. By what signal calamity was it once visited? Where is Oporto? What is its commercial rank? For what is it famous? Where is Coimbra? Where is St. Ubes? What is the religion of the Portuguese? What is their government?

ITALY.

PART FIRST.

Extent, 117,000 sq. miles—Pop. 20,000,000—174 per sq. mile.

Italy, for ages, has been considered one of the most interesting portions of Europe, not only on account of the fertility of its soil, the salubrity of its climate, and the unrivalled richness

and beauty of its scenery, but also, for its various works of art, its wonderful antiquities, and the great events of which it has been the theatre. Almost every spot in this region, is eminently classic ground, being famous in history, and renowned in song.

This country, including the islands of Sicily and Sardinia, comprises about 117,000 square miles. The boundaries of Italy are formed by nature. It is a narrow peninsula, formed by the Mediterranean and the Gulf of Venice. The Alps border on the north and north west, and the Appenines extend lengthwise through the interior. In the vicinity of the mountains, especially near the Alps, the atmosphere is temperate and cool; and all around on the coasts, the refreshing sea breezes serve to render the air mild and grateful.

The two principal rivers are the Po and the Tiber. The former passes through an extensive and very fruitful valley, the most fertile country in Italy or Europe, and empties into the north part of the Gulf of Venice. The latter running southerly by the city of Rome, is discharged into the Mediterranean. The principal productions are grain, vines and olives, silk and cotton, with a variety of delicious fruits. Grain flourishes most in the northern section, and there agriculture is in a flourishing state; but this is true in scarcely any other part of Italy. The manufactures are few. The principal manufacture is silk.

The prevailing religion is the Roman Catholic. The number of priests is immense. Education and knowledge are not common among the people. Ignorance, poverty, and vice, are very prevalent. The country shows the marks of declension, and the people of degeneracy; and every thing around, proves the want of good government, and of virtue. The Italians are very reserved in their outward deportment, but are effeminate, licentious, and superstitious. They are singularly pompous in religious exhibitions, and pay great homage to images.

Their language is of Latin origin, and remarkable for its melody, and its adaptedness to musical tones. The Italians are celebrated for their skill in music and painting, and other fine arts, but at present, make but little figure in the sciences.

QUESTIONS.

Why has Italy been considered a most interesting portion of Europe? How is it bounded? What are its extent and population, including Sicily and Sardinia? What mountains on the north and north west? What mountains pass through it? What is said of the atmosphere near the mountains and on the coasts? What are the two principal rivers? What is their course, and where do they empty? What are the principal productions? In what section, does grain flourish most? What is the state of agriculture? Of manufactures? What is the prevailing religion? What is the state of education? What is the character of the Italians? Whence is their language derived? For what is it remarkable? For what are the Italians celebrated?

ITALY.

PART SECOND.

Italy is divided into nine distinct sovereignties or states, viz. 1st. The kingdom of Naples or of the two Sicilies. 2d. The Papal States. 3d. The kingdom of Sardinia. 4th. Lombardy or Austrian Italy. 5th. The grand Duchy of Tuscany. 6th. The States of Parma. 7th. The States of Modena. 8th. The Duchy of Lucca. 9th. The Republic of San Marino.

The kingdom of Naples comprises the southern half of Italy, together with the island of Sicily, and the small Lipari isles. It is an uneven and mountainous, but naturally luxuriant country, favored with a warm and delightful climate. Such, however, is the indolence, inactivity, and licentiousness of the people, and the oppressive nature of the government, that neither agriculture, manufactures, commerce, or any other important branch of industry, is much attended to. Consequently, want and wretchedness are the portion of multitudes, and the country and towns are thronged with beggars.

Naples is the capital of this kingdom, and in point of population, the fifth city in Europe. Its situation along the sea shore on the one side, and the declivity of a hill on the other, is singularly grand and beautiful. The churches and other edifices are numerous and elegant, but the city does not excel in manufactures or trade. Population 360,000.



View of Mount Vesuvius.

The other towns are Bari, Taranto, and Salerno. Seven miles north east of Naples, is the celebrated volcanic mountain Vesuvius, nearly a mile in height, whose eruptions in different ages have been dreadful and destructive.

In the year of our Lord 79, they overwhelmed in ruin two neighboring cities, Herculaneum and Pompeii, in the latter of which 30 masts of vessels have recently been discovered. In 1794, five thousand acres, comprising vineyards and fruitful fields, were destroyed by these torrents of lava.

The island of Sicily is large and fertile. Palermo and Syracuse are the chief towns. In the eastern part of this island, stands mount Etna, elevated 11,000 feet, or more than two miles. As a volcano, it is more remarkable and terrific than Vesuvius. On one of the Lipari isles, is a volcano by the name of Stromboli, whose brilliant flames, constantly emitted, are seen at a vast distance on the water, and serve as a kind of lighthouse.

The Papal States, or the dominions of the Pope, are in the middle part of Italy, extending north and south from the Gulf of Venice to the Mediterranean, having Tuscany on the north-west, and the kingdom of Naples on the south east. Their extent is estimated at about 17,000 square miles, and their population at two and a half millions. They were, originally, a pleasant, healthy, and fertile country; but now a large portion of them is nearly desolate and depopulated.



View of St. Peter's Church, Rome.

The Pope is sole absolute sovereign in his dominions; any the authority he exercises here, is all that remains of that papal power, which formerly controlled kings and kingdoms, and whose nod could make Europe tremble.

The cities deserving of notice in this division of Italy, are

Rome, Bologna, Ravenna, Ancona, and Ferrara. Rome is situated on the Tiber, about 15 miles from its mouth, and is of great antiquity and celebrity. Here anciently stood the throne of the Cæsars, the masters of the world. Probably no city whatever has made a more illustrious figure on the page of history, than Rome. This city is distinguished in modern times, not so much for the energy, useful enterprise, or wealth of the citizens, as for the number and splendor of its churches, the magnificence of its monuments and ruins, and for its vast collections of paintings, statues, and other curious works of art, in which the Italians excel, and for which Rome is much resorted to by strangers from various quarters of the globe. St. Peter's church is an elegant and amazing structure, one of the wonders of the world; being 600 feet long, 500 feet wide, and, to the top of the dome, more than 400 in height. It has cost more than 60 millions of dollars. One of the Pope's palaces, called the Vatican, is a collection of edifices, of vast extent, and is supposed to contain 10,000 rooms. Population of Rome 150,000, embracing 35 bishops, 1,400 priests, 3,400 monks and nuns.

The second city in the Pope's dominions is Bologna, at the foot of the Appenines, where there is a celebrated university.

The small republic of San Marino, is surrounded on all sides by the territories of the church. It consists of a lofty mountain, together with a tract of a few square miles at the foot of it. The inoffensive inhabitants, though under the protection of the Pope, are governed by their own magistrates and laws, having retained their independence more than a thousand years.

QUESTIONS.

Into how many sovereignties or states is Italy divided? What are they called? In what part of Italy is the kingdom of Naples? What islands are included in it? What strait separates Naples from the island of Sicily? What is the face of the country? What is its climate? What is the character of the people? What is the state of agriculture? What is the capital? Describe it. Which way from Naples is Bari? Taranto? Salerno? What gulf and strait between Naples and Greece? Where is Vesuvius? What is said of its eruptions? Describe Sicily. What are its chief towns? What remarkable volcano on it? What is said of Stromboli? How are the Papal states situated? What are their extent and population? What is the present state of this part of Italy? What is the nature of the power of the Pope? What are his principal cities? How is Rome situated? For what is it distinguished? How is the republic of San Marino situated? Of what does it consist? What is the character of the inhabitants? How are they governed?

ITALY.

PART THIRD.

The kingdom of Sardinia comprises the north western portion of Italy, viz. Piedmont and Savoy, bordering on the Alps, to-

gether with the island of Sardinia. Its population is more than four millions. It is a very rich, fine country, especially Piedmont, which is one of the most fertile and best cultivated provinces of Italy; abounding in grain, pasturage, vines, and olives, and inhabited by a people who are industrious and enterprising. Savoy, like Switzerland, is rugged and mountainous. Its inhabitants are diligent, sober, economical, and in comfortable circumstances.

The capital of the Sardinian kingdom is Turin. The other chief towns are Genoa, Nice, Cagliari.

Turin is situated about seven miles from the foot of the Alps, on the road from France to Italy. It is magnificent and beautiful in its appearance, and is distinguished for its manufactures and trade in silk. Population 122,000. Genoa has long been celebrated for its commerce, and especially in silk, damasks, and velvets. Population 80,000.

The island of Sardinia is a large and generally fertile island, but miserably cultivated. The people in the maritime parts, resemble the Italians; but those in the interior, who are chiefly shepherds, are a lawless and half barbarous race, dressed in sheep skins and goat skins, and bearing arms as a defence against the robbers of the mountains.

Cagliari is the capital of this island. It has a population of 28,000.



View of the Rialto at Venice.

Austrian Italy, or the Lombardo-Venetian Kingdom, lies north of the Po. It is the most fruitful portion of Italy, and

highly cultivated, and has thence been called the garden of Europe. Population more than four millions. The principal towns are Venice, Mantua, Verona, and Milan.

Venice, the capital, is a large city, built upon a multitude of small islands in the gulf of Venice. Its manufactures and commerce are in a declining state. Population 113,000. Milan is a manufacturing and commercial city. Population 140,000. Mantua is a very ancient town, celebrated as the birth-place of Virgil.

The Grand Duchy of Tuscany is bounded north and east by the Papal states, south and west by the Mediterranean. It embraces a region rich and productive, thickly settled by an active and prosperous people, under a government of considerable mildness. It is dependent on Austria, and has the Archduke Ferdinand as its sovereign.

Florence and Leghorn are the principal towns. Florence, the capital, is situated on the Arno, in a delightful valley. It is one of the handsomest cities in Italy, or even in Europe. It contains a magnificent cathedral, a university, and a noble collection of the works of art. Population 80,000.

The island of Elba, famous for the temporary banishment of Napoleon, is under this government. The states of Parma, Modena, and Lucca, are small duchies, dependent on Austria. The Archduke Francis is governor of Modena. Parma is governed by Maria Louisa, the widow of Napoleon Bonaparte.

The principal universities in Italy, are at Rome, Bologna, Padua, Parma, Pisa, Pavia, Naples, and Palermo.

QUESTIONS.

What countries does the kingdom of Sardinia comprise? What are the soil and productions? What is the capital? Where are Turin and Genoa? Describe them. What is said of the island of Sardinia? Describe its inhabitants. What is its capital? Where does Austrian Italy lie? What kind of country is it? What are its towns? Describe Venice, Milan, Mantua. How is the grand Duchy of Tuscany bounded? Give some account of the country, people, and government. On what government is it dependent? Who is now their sovereign? What are the principal towns? Describe Florence. What small island is under this government? For what is it famous? On what government are the duchies of Parma, Lucca, and Modena, dependent? Where are the chief universities in Italy located?

TURKEY IN EUROPE.

Extent, 190,000 sq. miles—Pop. 9,000,000—47 per. sq. mile.

The surface of the country in the north, is generally level, on the south mountainous, or agreeably diversified with hills and valleys. The principal mountains are the Hæmus or Balkan. The chief rivers are the Danube and its branches.

The climate is almost unrivalled for pleasantness and salubrity, and the soil for natural richness. But through the indolence of the people, it is in many parts poorly improved, or entirely uncultivated. Grain, wine, oil, and fruits, are the chief productions, which in many instances are abundant and of almost spontaneous growth. The Turks bestow but little labor on their lands. They regard agriculture as a mean employment; they



View of Constantinople.

are slothful and indolent in their general habits, and disinclined to great exertions. They are grave and sedate, and often friendly and hospitable; but usually characterized by dissimulation, jealousy, and revenge. In matters of religion, they are morose and superstitious: and when their passions are aroused, they are remarkably furious and ungovernable.

Their manufactures are neither very extensive nor flourishing. Turkey carpets, printed muslins, cannon, muskets, sword blades, and morocco leather, are the principal articles of manufacture. Their commerce is considerable, being carried on chiefly by foreign vessels. The arts and sciences are greatly neglected; but are beginning to receive more attention than formerly. The religion of the Turks, is the Mohammedan. It was founded by Mahomet, or Mohammed, who was born in Arabia, about 600 years after Christ. The Turks regard him as the true prophet of God, and the Koran as their bible or rule of faith and practice.

Their government is the most despotic in Europe. The will of the Sultan or Grand Seignior, is the law of the land; and it is often executed in an arbitrary and cruel manner. There is

no tribunal nor power in the nation, which can restrain him from crime, or call him to account for any of the acts of his government. The koran is the only check upon his power. The present sultan, Mahmoud, is less tenacious of ancient customs, and more favorable to European innovations and improvements, than his predecessors have been. The second officer in the Turkish government is the Grand Vizier. The chief council is called the Divan.

The principal cities and towns are Constantinople, Adrianople, Sophia, Belgrade, Bucharest, Jassy, and Salonica.

Constantinople is the metropolis, not only of European Turkey, but of the whole Turkish empire, and in point of magnitude, is the third city in Europe. It is situated on the European side of the Bosphorus, which is a small strait between the Black sea and the sea of Marmora. The most delightful prospects surround this city. Its harbor is one of the finest in the world, being capable of containing 1,200 sail. The city is about twelve miles in circuit. It is encompassed by a high thick wall surmounted with battlements and towers in the oriental style. The streets are narrow and filthy. The houses, in general, are low, and built of wood and earth, enveloped in dark groves of cypress, and strikingly contrasted with the numerous and magnificent public buildings. There are about 500 mosques or Mohammedan churches. The mosque of St. Sophia is esteemed one of the most splendid. The Seraglio is that part of the city which is occupied by the Sultan, his women, and his court, embracing an assemblage of noble palaces and edifices. It is some miles in circumference. The grandeur of the Sultan's palace and audience chamber, and especially the splendor of his throne, almost exceed description. The population of Constantinople is computed at more than 600,000. Fire and the plague are calamities with which this city has frequently been visited.

Adrianople, on the Marizza, 130 miles north-west of the capital, is the second city in the empire, and carries on considerable trade, in wines and fruits, produced in the surrounding fertile region. Population 100,000.

Belgrade, on the Danube, contains a noted fortress, and has been an object of frequent contention between the Turks and Austrians. Bucharest is a large town, but its streets are paved with wooden logs, and its houses generally, are mere huts of clay.

The Turks, originally, were a tribe of Tartars, who wandered from the shores of the Caspian or the vicinity of the Caucasus, and after a series of adventures and conquests, took possession

of Constantinople in 1453. Their customs are singular, and materially the same, in Europe, Asia, and Africa. They wear long beards, white turbans, and dress in loose, flowing robes. They sit cross legged upon mats, eat without knives and forks, drink little or no wine, but are fond of smoking, and often chew opium to intoxication. They generally walk or ride but little, either for health or diversion. They are said to be dextrous in the use of the dart, and in shooting at a mark.

The Turkish language is of Tartar origin, and is a mixture of the Slavonian, the modern Greek, the Arabic, and the Persian. It is of a grave and dignified character. The education of the Turks is very limited, and consists chiefly in studying the Koran.

There are several islands in the Mediterranean and Archipelago, belonging to the Turks, viz. Candia, the ancient Crete, Cyprus, noted for corn and wine, Rhodes, Scio or Chios, Samos, and Patmos, the place of St. John's banishment.

The Turkish or Ottoman empire recently comprehended a considerable part of Asia and Africa, but at present (1835) it is greatly reduced in its limits, by the conquests of the viceroy of Egypt.

QUESTIONS.

In what part of Europe is Turkey? Between what latitudes? How bounded? What is its extent? Its population? What is the face of the country? What are the principal mountains? What are the principal rivers? What is the climate? What is the soil? Why is it poorly cultivated? What are the chief productions? What is the general character of the Turks? What is the state of manufactures? What is the state of commerce? Of learning? What is the religion of the Turks? What book do they regard as their bible? What is their government? What are their chief cities and towns? What is the metropolis? Where is it situated? Describe it. What is the Seraglio? What is the population of Constantinople? Where is Adrianople? Describe it. Where is Belgrade? Bucharest? Sophia? Jassy? Salonica? Who were the Turks originally? When did they take possession of Constantinople? Describe their customs. Give some account of the origin and character of the Turkish language. In what does their education chiefly consist? What are the principal islands belonging to Turkey?

GREECE.

Extent, 16,000 sq. miles.—Pop. 640,000—40 per sq. mile.

The name of Greece is dear to every man of taste, and lover of learning. This country was anciently the seat of the muses, and the native land of genius, literature, and the sciences. For ages, it groaned under the cruel yoke of Turkish tyranny, but within a few years past, after a series of severe struggles for liberty, it has become free and independent.

That part of ancient Greece which is now liberated, embraces the peninsula of the Morea and the province of Livadia, north

of it, together with the island of Negropont, and a number of isles of inferior size. The Morea is connected with Livadia, by the narrow isthmus of Corinth. The interior of the country is rugged and mountainous, and the scenery among the hills and valleys, various, striking, and beautiful. The soil is fertile, especially in the vales, and on the plains, which, in some instances, are very elevated. The climate is temperate and agreeable. Wheat, barley, rice, maize, cotton, olives, and figs, flourish abundantly, and the land in general is peculiarly adapted to pasturage.

The coast of Greece is indented with so many bays, creeks, and harbors, that extraordinary facilities are afforded to navigation; and so active and enterprising is the genius of the people, that they are quite disposed to improve their commercial, as well as other advantages, and are many of them habituated to a seafaring life. They are also ambitious to cultivate learning, to rise from the ignorance and degradation of ages, and to recover their former national standing in literature and the arts. Still, agriculture and manufactures are in a low state, and scenes of poverty, vice, and wretchedness, are common.

Athens, which has recently become the capital, is situated on the east side of the Gulf of Corinth. It makes at present but an insignificant appearance; the streets being narrow and crooked, and the houses mean. But the ruins of its ancient works of art, and the monuments of its former grandeur, are still visible. They are in a better state of preservation, and retain more of their original splendor, than the ruins of any other Grecian city. A Lancasterian school is established here, under the care of the Rev. Jonas King, containing about 200 scholars of both sexes, and measures are in progress for the founding of a college in this venerable seat of ancient learning. Population about 10,000.

Nauplion, or Napoli di Romania, the former capital, situated in the eastern part of the Morea, possesses an excellent harbor, and carries on considerable trade. Tripolizza, situated west of Napoli, was laid waste by the Turks in the war of the Greek revolution. Missolonghi, situated a little north of the Gulf of Corinth, is distinguished for a renowned siege during the same war. Corinth is on the west side of the isthmus, about 50 miles west of Athens. Misitra, the ancient Sparta, is in the Morea, delightfully situated on the declivity of a mountain. It is falling into ruins.

Some of the small isles belonging to Greece are Andros, Paros, Antiparos, Hydra, and Santorini.

The religion of the Greeks, is that of the Greek church, which in many of its doctrines and rites, is similar to the Catholic. Though it retains the Christian name, it is lamentably fraught with ignorance, superstition, and impiety. Strenuous exertions are making in Great Britain and America, by benevolent societies and individuals, to disseminate knowledge and pure religion in Greece. There are about 120 schools in this country, with 7,000 scholars. French influence is great and extensive here, and there is danger that Greece will be overrun with Catholic and infidel principles from France.

QUESTIONS.

Under what yoke has Greece been for ages? What part of Greece is now liberated? What isthmus connects the Morea with Livadia? What are the extent and population of liberated Greece? What is said of the interior? What is the soil? What is the climate? What extraordinary facilities does Greece afford to navigation? What is the character of the modern Greeks? What is the state of agriculture and manufactures? What is the capital of Greece? Where situated? Describe it. Where is Tripolizza? Corinth? Mistra? What are some of the isles belonging to Greece? What is the religion of the Greeks? By whom are exertions now made to enlighten and evangelize Greece? What is the number of schools and scholars?

IONIAN REPUBLIC,

OR, THE UNITED IONIAN ISLES,

Extent, 1,000 sq. miles—Pop. 230,000—230 per sq. mile.

The Ionian Republic consists of the islands on the western coast of Greece, of which the following are the principal, viz. Corfu, Cephalonia, Zante, St. Maura, Ithica, Cerigo, and Paxo. They are dependent on Great Britain, and under its protection. The inhabitants are composed chiefly of Greeks and Italians, and are an ingenious and enterprising people.

The land generally is rich and productive, abounding in vines and olives, which constitute the principal source of revenue to the inhabitants.

Corfu is the seat of government, and the residence of the British High Commissioner. Cephalonia is the principal island.

The state of education is flourishing. There are about 125 schools and 5,000 scholars.

QUESTIONS.

Of what islands does the Ionian republic consist? On what government are they dependent? What are the extent and population? Who compose the inhabitants and what is their character? What are the soil and productions? Which is the largest island? Which the seat of government? What is the state of education in the islands, and the number of schools?

SWITZERLAND.

Extent, 17,000 sq. miles—Pop. 2,037,000—120 per sq. mile.

The natural features of Switzerland unite in an eminent degree the beautiful with the sublime. It abounds in pleasant, and also in wild scenery. No country in Europe exhibits loftier mountains, deeper valleys, more rapid sweeping torrents, lakes more beautiful, or a people more industrious and patriotic.

Switzerland is divided into 22 cantons, each of which is an independent republic. The mountains are the Alps, the highest of which is Mount Blanc, whose elevation is three miles above the level of the sea, and whose top and sides are clad with perpetual snow. The glaciers of Switzerland are very celebrated natural curiosities. They consist of immense masses or fields of ice, which, from time immemorial, have been accumulating upon the lofty sides of the mountains. Their surface, in some instances, is smooth like a mirror; in others it is very irregular, and broken up into elevated ridges and pyramids, with deep and awful chasms. Their appearance has been compared to what the surface of the ocean would be, were it suddenly congealed to ice, in the midst of a violent storm; or to a city of crystal, with transparent edifices, steeples, and towers.

The avalanches are vast bodies of snow and ice, loosened in the spring from their mountain heights, and suddenly precipitated into the vales, bringing ruin upon travellers, buildings, and whole villages. The principal rivers are the Rhine and Rhone, which rise in the Alps. The largest lakes are those of Constance and Zurich, on the north-east, and Geneva and Neufchatel, on the west.

The climate of Switzerland is various. In general, the winters are cold, blustering and snowy, like those of New England; but the summers are delightful in a high degree. The climate however is peculiarly subject to sudden changes of weather, and to violent rains and tempests, which not unfrequently lay waste the crops and disappoint the hopes of the husbandman.

The soil of the valleys is rich, and cultivated with care. In many instances, the tops and steep declivities of the mountains, are covered with vineyards and pasture grounds; and spots naturally rugged and rocky, are compelled by the unwearied industry of the people, to smile with verdure, and to contribute to their sustenance. Crops of grain are uncertain. There is, in some parts, a scarcity of bread. Considerable grain is imported from other countries. The raising of cattle and sheep is the principal means of support. The glaciers occupy about one fif-

teenth part of the surface of Switzerland, and considerable portions besides, are entirely incapable of being cultivated or inhabited.

Yet, amidst all these natural disadvantages, the Swiss are remarkably fond and proud of their country, and generally contented with their lot. They are hardy, brave, and independent, at the same time exhibiting an open frankness and cheerfulness of disposition, and an honest simplicity of manners. Crimes are rare among them. Beggars and thieves are seldom found. Locks, bolts, and bars, are less necessary here than in most other countries. The people enjoy the privileges of common school education and of religious instruction. The higher branches of literature and science are cultivated in the university of Basle, and in the colleges of Geneva, Berne, Zurich, Schaffhausen, and Lucerne.

These are some of the principal towns, but they are not large. Berne is usually named as the capital, but Zurich and Lucerne are also alternately the seats of government.

Geneva has a delightful situation on the lake of Geneva. The city is divided by the river Rhone; and its environs present the most grand and interesting prospects. The view of the Alps, and especially of Mount Blanc, is inconceivably sublime. Geneva has long been celebrated as a seat of learning, and is also noted for its extensive manufactures, especially the manufacture of watches, which is said to employ 7,000 persons. The whole population is estimated at 25,000.

Zurich and Basle are places of considerable commerce. The latter has a noted missionary seminary. Population 17,000. Lausanne, situated on the north side of the lake of Geneva, is much resorted to by strangers, on account of its delightful scenery, and polished and agreeable society. The languages used in Switzerland, are the German, French, and Italian.

About three fifths of the people are Protestants, and the rest Catholics. Their government is republican. The several independent cantons are united in a confederacy for common defence, and are represented in a general congress called a diet. Neufchatel is under the government of Prussia.

QUESTIONS.

What is the scenery of Switzerland? How is it bounded? How many square miles does it contain? What is the population? Into how many cantons is it divided? What are its mountains? How high is Mount Blanc? What are the glaciers? Describe them. What are avalanches? What are the principal rivers? Where do they rise and empty? What are the largest lakes? What is the climate? What is the soil of the valleys? What is the principal means of support? How great a part of Switzerland is occupied by the glaciers? What is the character of the Swiss?

What are the principal towns? What three towns are alternately the seats of government? Where is Geneva? Describe it. For what is it celebrated? What is said of Zurich? Basle? Lausanne? What languages are most common in Switzerland? What proportion of the people are Protestants? What proportion Catholics? What is the government? What canton belongs to Prussia?

GERMANY.

PART FIRST.

Extent, 98,000 sq. miles—Pop. 14,000,000—143 per sq. mile.

Germany, as it is now usually defined, embraces only a part of what was formerly called the German empire, and a part only of what is now styled the German Confederation. In the year 1815, the empire was dissolved, and the German Confederation was formed, which extends far beyond the limits of Germany as described on the map, and comprehends the west division of Austria and the greatest part of Prussia, embracing in all 35 states and four free cities. The map of Germany includes all these several states or principalities, except Austria and Prussia proper.

Hanover is in the more northern part of Germany, Saxony on the north-east, Bavaria, Wirtemberg, and Baden, on the south. The Prussian possessions in Germany are on the west, bordering on the Netherlands, and lie on both sides of the Rhine, containing the cities of Cologne, Munster, and Aix la Chapelle. Besides these larger states, there are in Germany 27 states of inferior size and importance, generally about equal in extent to a county in New England; and there are likewise the four free cities, Frankfort on the Maine, Hamburg, Lubec, and Bremen.

This country is divided into Northern and Southern Germany, by a range of mountains extending from west to east, towards the Carpathian mountains. Northern Germany is a low and level country. The rivers which water it, flow into the North Sea and the Baltic. On the north-west, there are extensive barren heaths and sandy plains; and on the north-east there are swamps and marshes of considerable extent. Southern Germany is diversified with extensive plains, and long ridges of mountains.

The climate of Germany is temperate and salubrious; and a great proportion of the soil is good, especially that of the south. The more northern parts are best suited to grain, producing wheat and rye in great quantities for exportation. In the middle and southern districts, the vine also, to a certain extent, is cultivated, and wine is exported. In most of the states, agriculture is flourishing, but in some parts it is still neglected.

Manufactures, and the arts and sciences, are cultivated with assiduity, and are brought to a high degree of perfection.

The universities of Gottingen, Leipsic, Jena, and Heidelberg, are of the first rank. There are many others of respectability. There are also a number of high schools or gymnasia, designed to afford a regular course of instruction in science and classical literature, like the colleges of the United States. The genius of the Germans is well suited to a close and persevering application to study or business. They are remarkably patient in the investigation of truth, and indefatigable in laying up stores of knowledge. They are also wonderfully prolific as authors, and have distinguished themselves in the art of printing and book making. Frankness, sincerity, honesty, and faithfulness, are usually ascribed to them.

The German language is of Gothic or Teutonic origin, and has several dialects. There is a harshness in it unpleasant to foreigners. It is customary in the principal cities of Germany, to hold annual or semi-annual fairs, in which a vast assortment of books, and other articles of merchandize, are offered for sale, and which, being attended by immense multitudes of people, are made the occasions of unbounded festivity.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Germany? Its extent and population? When was the former German empire dissolved? What has been formed in its stead? How many states and free cities are comprehended in the whole confederation? What does the map of Germany include? In what part of Germany is Hanover? Saxony? Bavaria? Wirtemberg? Baden? Where are the Prussian possessions in Germany situated? What three cities do they include? How many smaller states are contained in Germany? Which are the four free cities? How is Germany naturally divided? Describe the surface of Northern Germany? What are its rivers, and where do they empty? What is the surface of Southern Germany? What are the climate and soil of Germany? What is the state of agriculture? Of the manufactures? Arts? What are the principal universities? What other schools are there? What is the character of the Germans? What are the origin and character of the German language? What fairs are customary?

GERMANY.

PART SECOND.

The kingdom of Hanover belongs to the king of Great Britain, by inheritance, and its government is administered by a viceroy of his appointment. It is in general a vast plain, sometimes exhibiting a surface moderately undulating. On the north there are barren heaths; but a considerable portion of the land is adapted to pasturage. On the south are the Hartz mountains, abounding in minerals. The climate is cold and unpleasant. The chief cities are Hanover, the capital, Gottingen, and Emden. The population of Hanover is 25,000.

The kingdom of Saxony is on the north-east, between Austria and Prussia. It is the smallest kingdom in Europe, but is rich in mines of iron, copper, lead, and silver, which are found in the Erzgebirg mountains, and extensively wrought. Peculiar attention is paid to sheep and wool. The Saxony wool is among the best in Europe. The population is about 1,500,000, thickly settled and well educated, and generally of the Lutheran religion. Learning and the elegant arts are cultivated. Books are printed and sold here in unparalleled numbers. Dresden, on the Elbe, is the capital. It is highly celebrated for its proficiency in the fine arts. Population 56,000. Leipzig is of great literary note. It has a famous university, and holds three fairs annually, which excite great interest in Germany and the neighboring countries, especially among printers and booksellers. Population 40,000.

The kingdom of Bavaria, in the south-eastern part of Germany, is distinguished for being the largest and most influential state in the Confederation, except Austria and Prussia. It is watered by the Danube, and is generally a fertile region. The Catholic religion prevails here, but education of late has been in a state of rapid improvement.

Munich, on the Isar, is the capital, and is distinguished for the regularity of its streets and the elegance of its buildings. It is rapidly growing in population, manufactures, and literature. Population 80,000.

Augsburg and Ratisbon are celebrated cities. The former is conspicuous in the history of the Reformation.

The kingdom of Wirtemberg, next west of Bavaria, is distinguished for mildness of climate, fertility of soil, and for its progressive improvement, in agriculture, manufactures, and education. Every parish is provided with a school, and the attendance of children, is required by law. Stuttgart is the capital. Population 31,000. Ulm and Tubingen are celebrated, the former, for its cathedral and lofty Gothic tower, the latter, for its antiquity.

The grand Duchy of Baden is in the south-west corner of Germany, bordering on France and Switzerland. The climate and soil are favorable to vegetation. Agriculture is improving. Cattle are raised in considerable numbers. Valuable minerals are produced and exported. The manufactures are not very flourishing. The mass of the people are Lutherans, and knowledge is generally diffused among them.

Carlsruhe, near the Rhine, is the seat of government, and the residence of the duke and his court. It is a handsome

town, and built on a regular plan, the streets uniformly diverging from the centre, like an open fan. Population 15,000.

Blenheim is particularly distinguished among the cities of Germany, for its regularity and beauty. Population 18,000. Heidelberg, on the Neckar, at the foot of a mountain, is famous as a seat of learning. Here is a large tun containing 600 hogsheads, and the top of it is so broad, that 25 persons, at once, may conveniently dance upon it.

The Prussian possessions in Germany, consist of three provinces on both sides of the Rhine, in the west part of the country. The soil is fertile. The inhabitants have distinguished themselves for their zeal for the Catholic religion. The city of Cologne, on the left bank of the Rhine, is favorably situated for commerce, and has a celebrated Catholic university. Aix la Chapelle is famous, as having formerly been the favorite residence of Charlemagne, and for a time, the metropolis of his empire.

Of the 27 smaller states in Germany, Luxemburg belongs to Holland, and Holstein, and Lauenburg, belong to Denmark. Of the four free cities, Frankfort, on the Main, a branch of the Rhine, is one of the most distinguished. It is the seat of the Germanic Diet or General Congress. It is also noted for its extensive printing establishments, for commercial enterprise, and for its semi-annual fairs, which attract the attention of the merchants of Europe. Population 50,000.

Hamburg, on the Elbe, 78 miles from its mouth, is the most commercial city in Germany, and one of the most populous. Population 125,000. Bremen, on the Weser, in the midst of the kingdom of Hanover, is a place of considerable importance in manufactures and trade. Population 40,000. Lubec is the lowest in rank of the free towns. It is situated on the Drave, 36 miles north-east of Hamburg, but is much inferior to it in commerce, wealth, and population. These four free cities were formerly styled the Hanse towns. They are now considered as belonging to the number of the 39 states or principalities which are united for mutual defence, in the German Confederation, and which are annually represented, by their agents or plenipotentiaries, in the Diet which meets at Frankfort, to consult for the common interests of the confederacy. In this Diet, Austria and Prussia have the greatest power and influence.

QUESTIONS.

To whom does the kingdom of Hanover belong? What is the face of the country? What is the climate? What are the principal cities? In what part of Germany is

Saxony? What are the productions? What is the population? The religion? The state of education? Where is Dresden? For what is it celebrated? Where is Leipsic? For what celebrated? In what part is the kingdom of Bavaria? For what is it distinguished? What river waters it? What is the prevailing religion? Where is Munich? For what is it remarkable? Where is Augsburg? Ratisbon? What kingdom lies next west of Bavaria? For what is it distinguished? What is said of the schools? What is the capital? Where are Ulm and Tübingen? For what celebrated? Where is the Grand Duchy of Baden? What is the soil and climate? What is the state of agriculture? Of manufactures? What is the prevailing religion? Near what river is Carlsruhe, the capital? Describe it. Where is Blenheim? For what distinguished? Where is Heidelberg? For what is it famous? What are the Prussian possessions in Germany? What is the soil? For what have the inhabitants distinguished themselves? Where is Cologne? Aix la Chapelle? For what is it famous?

AUSTRIA.

Extent, 257,000 sq. miles—Pop. 32,000,000—124 per sq. mile.

The Austrian empire is large and powerful. Its latitude and its population are nearly the same with those of France. Its extent is considerably greater. It embraces within its limits several distinct kingdoms and states, which are under subjection to a monarch, styled an emperor. Austria includes the kingdom of Hungary, and a part of Poland, together with large portions which formerly belonged to Germany and Italy. Its German possessions are on the west and north, and its Italian dominions are on the south west, consisting of the Lombardo Venetian kingdom. Hungary is on the east.

So great is the extent of this empire, and the diversity of nations included in it, that it exhibits a remarkable variety, not only of surface, climate, soil, and productions, but also of language, religion, character, and manners. There are several ridges of mountains, particularly the Carpathian on the north east, and the Alps on the south west. Hungary, for the most part, is surrounded by mountains, but its interior consists of immense plains or steppes. In the more northern and mountainous divisions of Austria, the climate is cold, but in the southern districts, it is warm and mild. Some parts of the soil are extremely fertile, while a great proportion of it is either neglected and uncultivated, or naturally sterile and useless.

Austria is remarkably rich in gold, silver, copper, and iron. It also abounds in pasturage and cattle. Agriculture is a common employment, but is not conducted with skill. In manufactures, the people do not excel; nor is their commerce very extensive or productive; for although the country is well furnished with rivers, it has but little sea coast. The principal rivers are the Danube and its branches. Education is generally neglected.

The characteristics of the several nations in the empire, are very different. For the most part, the German sincerity, fidelity, and industry, prevail among them. The Austrians have vigorous bodily powers, are patient in disposition, and are persevering and energetic. They are said to possess a peculiar genius for instrumental music, and are universally fond of smoking.

The Gipsies are more numerous in the Austrian dominions, than in any other part of Europe. Their number here, is computed at 110,000. They made their appearance in these regions about 300 years ago. They are fugitives and vagabonds, having no settled villages or permanent habitations, but lodge in tents, or in dens and caves of the earth, moving from place to place, as occasion requires, and subsisting by robbery, thieving, or fortune telling.

The character of the Hungarians, and their state of society, are remarkable. They are generally an active, adventurous, and warlike people, but rude and uneducated. Their society exhibits appalling distinctions of rank. It is divided into three classes, viz.: nobles, citizens, and peasants. The nobility amount to more than 300,000. The peasants pay all the taxes, perform the drudgery, and live upon plain fare and in cottages of clay, while the rich lords of the soil live in palaces, fare sumptuously, and claim an exclusive right to all the privileges, comforts, and honors of citizens.

The Catholic is the established religion of the Austrian empire, though toleration is extended to other sects. There are more than 25,000,000 Catholics, about 3,000,000 who belong to the Greek Church, and nearly 500,000 Jews. The government is monarchical, but the power of the sovereign is limited, in different degrees, in the several provinces of the empire.

The principal cities in Austria are the following:—Vienna, the metropolis of the empire; Prague, the capital of Bohemia; Buda, the capital of Hungary; Lemberg, the capital of Galicia; Brunn, the capital of Moravia; and Venice and Milan, cities in Austrian Italy.

Vienna, on the Danube, is one of the six most populous cities of Europe, and is celebrated for its noble university, for the number and grandeur of its palaces, for the multitude of its churches, convents, and charitable institutions. Its commerce and manufactures are extensive. Population 310,000.

The University of Prague is one of the oldest in Europe. Population of Prague 117,000. Buda and Pest are opposite to each other, on the Danube, and are connected by a vast bridge

of boats, nearly a mile in length. Pest is the seat of a rich and flourishing university. Lemberg, Brunn, and Debretzin, are populous and highly commercial places. Kremnitz and Schemnitz are the great mining towns in Hungary. Trieste is a distinguished port, on the gulf of Venice, being visited annually by 3,000 vessels. At Austerlitz, twelve miles from Brunn, a decided victory was gained by Bonaparte, over the Austro Russian army, in 1805.

QUESTIONS.

How is Austria bounded? What is its extent? Its population? How are they compared with those of France? Mention some of the countries included in Austria. In what part are its German possessions? In what its Italian? On which side is Hungary? What are the principal ranges of mountains? What is the face of the country? The climate? The soil? What are the minerals? What is the state of agriculture? Manufactures? Commerce? What is the principal river? What is the state of education? What is the character of the Austrians? What is the number of gipsies? Describe them. What is the character of the Hungarians? What is the prevailing religion? What is the government? What are the principal cities? Where are they situated?



View of the Royal Palace, Prussia.

PRUSSIA.

Extent, 105,000 sq. miles—Pop. including the provinces on the Rhine, 13,000,000.

The Prussian kingdom consists of two separate divisions, viz. the western division in the west part of Germany on the Rhine, and the eastern division which is north east of Germany and south of the Baltic. The former division has already been

partly described. It is composed of the three provinces, Westphalia, Cleves-Berg, and Lower Rhine, and contains about 17,600 square miles, and 3,431,000 people. The latter, or eastern division, embraces 87,000 square miles, and a population of ten millions. It is divided into seven provinces, viz. East Prussia, West Prussia, Brandenburg, Pomerania, Posen, Silesia, and Saxony. Thus the Prussian dominions embrace, in all, ten provinces.

The surface of the country is generally level. The climate in the western section is much milder than in the eastern. The soil, to a great extent, is marshy or barren, and unsuited to cultivation. Certain districts produce large quantities of grain, flax and potatoes. The principal mineral is amber. Manufactures are flourishing, particularly the linen manufactures in the provinces of Silesia and Westphalia.

The Prussians are active, hardy, and brave. Learning is encouraged among them, and they are generally well informed. Many of the peasants are poor, degraded and miserable. With respect to religion, the greater part of the people are Protestants, whose number is computed at about eight millions; the rest are chiefly Roman Catholics. The government is an absolute monarchy, and energetic in its operations.

The army is numerous and well disciplined. The Prussian kingdom is one of the most powerful in Europe. As a member of the German Confederation, it is next in influence to Austria.

There are seven universities in Prussia. The chief are those of Berlin, Halle, Breslau, Bonn, and Königsberg.

Berlin, the metropolis, is on the Spree, a branch of the Elbe. It is one of the most spacious and magnificent cities in Europe, being 12 miles in circuit, having walls with 15 gates. Its manufactures, together with its public edifices and literary institutions, are truly splendid. Population 240,000.

Dantzic, on the Vistula, five miles from its mouth, is a very commercial town. Königsberg, on the Pregel, is flourishing in trade, and increasing in population and wealth. Population 68,000. Breslau, on the Oder, is the great emporium of trade. Population 90,000. Frankfort on the Oder, has considerable commerce and manufactures. The university of Halle is of high repute, and its great establishment for printing the scriptures has produced several millions of bibles and testaments.

QUESTIONS.

Between what parallels of latitude is Prussia? What other European countries are in nearly the same latitude? What two separate divisions has the Prussian kingdom? What is the situation of the western division, and of what provinces com-

posed? What are the boundaries of the eastern division, and what are its provinces, extent, and population? How many square miles in the whole of Prussia? What number of provinces? What is the population? What are the principal rivers? What is the face of the country? What is the climate? The soil? What are the principal productions? What is the principal mineral? What is the state of manufactures? What is the character of the Prussians? What is the state of education? What is the condition of the peasants? What is the prevailing religion? What is the government? How many universities in Prussia? Describe Berlin. Dantzic. Königsberg. Breslau. Frankfort on the Oder. Halle.



Salt Mines of Poland

POLAND.

Extent 47,000 sq. miles—Pop. 4,000,000—85 per sq. mile.

Poland was formerly a large and powerful kingdom, containing 284,000 square miles, and 15 millions of people. But, since the year 1795, it has lost its standing among the independent nations of Europe. Most of its territory was then divided between Russia, Austria, and Prussia. Russia took as her portion 178,000 square miles, Austria 30,000, and Prussia 29,000, which are severally represented on the maps of those three countries. All that for several years has remained of Poland, is barely the name, together with a small territory of 47,000 square miles, which originally constituted the central part of the kingdom. Even this, for a long time, has been subject to the sovereignty of Russia, and in a measure dependent on her despotic power. The late arduous and heroic struggles of Poland, to recover her lost liberties, having lamentably failed, she has been compelled, through weakness and despondency, to sink down again under the iron yoke of bondage.

Poland is a plain country, with a temperate climate, and a soil which is by nature fertile and productive, especially in grain and pasturage. But the cultivation of the land has been wretchedly conducted, and in many instances, the fields have been tilled till they are worn out.

Manufactures, commerce, education, religion, and almost every important enterprise and interest, are in a languishing condition, through a want of liberty, and of the genial influence of a mild and free government.

There is a noble manliness in the persons of the Poles. Their complexion is fair, and they are animated by a generous, hospitable, active, and heroic spirit. The Polish gentlemen have been distinguished for their skill in horsemanship, and their fondness for military pomp and show. The peasantry have long been accustomed to a passive and patient submission to the offices of menial servants. Many of the nobles have been possessed of vast estates, and been surrounded, at home and abroad, by a numerous train of degraded vassals, who have been in the habit of looking up to their lords as superior beings, on whom they were dependent for daily bread, and to whom they considered themselves as owing subjection and servitude.

Before the commencement of the late insurrection, the people of Poland were estimated at about four millions, of whom about one tenth were Jews. As many as three fourths are Catholics.

Warsaw, the capital, is on the Vistula. It is surrounded by a wall, and is strongly fortified. It has contained many elegant palaces and public buildings, and a population of 126,000; but having recently been exposed to the fierce fire of the Russian artillery, and been made a scene of anarchy, blood, and carnage, its present situation is deplorable.

Cracow, on the south, lies in the vicinity of the salt mines, and is favorably situated for trade, on a plain watered by the Vistula.

QUESTIONS.

What was Poland formerly? When did it cease to be an independent nation? Among what nations has it been divided? Which took the largest portion? What is the present extent of Poland? What are its boundaries? What is its population? What has been the result of the late struggles in Poland? What is the climate? The soil? What are the productions? What is the state of agriculture? Of manufactures, commerce, and education? Describe the persons of the Poles. For what have the Polish gentlemen been distinguished? What is the condition of the peasantry? What part of the people are Catholics? How many are Jews? Where is Warsaw? Describe it. What is the situation of Cracow?

NETHERLANDS.

Extent, 25,000 square miles—Pop. 6,250,000.

The Netherlands are east of England. The distance between the two countries, across the North Sea, is about 90 miles. Their size and population are nearly half as great as those of England. They have two principal divisions, Holland on the north, and Belgium on the south. These for several years were under one government, and constituted one kingdom, though in language, character, manners, and institutions, they are very different from each other. But since the year 1830, when the independence of Belgium was acknowledged, these two divisions of the Netherlands have been considered as separate kingdoms, each having a king and government of its own.

HOLLAND.

Extent, 13,000 sq. miles—Pop. 2,750,000—211 per sq. mile.

Holland is a name frequently given to the seven United Provinces in the northern part of the Netherlands, and is inhabited chiefly by the Dutch.

It is uniformly a low, level country, intersected by canals and ditches, in every direction, and almost without number. As it is, to a great extent, lower than the level of the sea, it is secured from inundation, by dykes or artificial embankments, constructed with incredible labor, and at a vast expense. The climate is cold, extremely moist, and usually unpleasant and unhealthy to foreigners. The soil is a deep, rich mould, but in general, not well adapted to cultivation. By draining, it is rendered good for pasturage, and affords many fine meadows.

The wealth of the Hollanders consists principally in the vast number of their herds and flocks, and in an abundance of beef, butter, and cheese, of the finest quality.

The character of the Dutch is remarkably suited to their situation, and in a great measure formed by it. They are of a cold and phlegmatic temperament, deficient in vivacity, and in the tender sensibilities of the heart; but wonderfully patient of toil, and steady, industrious, and persevering, in the pursuit of every desirable object. No people in the world are better acquainted with the art of acquiring wealth, or of preserving it. The effects of their industry and enterprise are very striking. They excel most European nations in commerce, and the fisheries, and hold a respectable rank in learning and science. There is a peculiar neatness in and around their dwellings. They treat their cattle and horses with particular and tender care, and keep

some of the largest and finest in Europe. Their dairies also receive laborious and unremitted attention, and yield great profit. Smoking tobacco is a universal custom among them. The youth are extremely expert in skating.

The common language in Holland is called Low Dutch, and is a dialect of the German. The government is a constitutional, hereditary monarchy. The legislative congress is called the States General, and is composed of two chambers, whose members meet once a year. In religion, the Dutch, generally, are Calvinistic Protestants.

The principal cities are Amsterdam, Rotterdam, Hague, Utrecht, Leyden, Groningen, and Harlem.

Amsterdam is situated on an arm of the Zuyder Zee, and is divided into two parts by the river Amstel. The ground on which it stands is of so marshy a nature, that almost the whole city has necessarily been built upon oaken piles driven into the earth. It has long been considered as one of the most commercial and opulent cities in Europe, but for several years its prosperity has been declining. There is a striking beauty and grandeur in its public buildings and works. The Stadt-house in the centre of the city, built upon 14,000 large piles, is an edifice of superior magnificence. And the numerous canals, intersecting the town in every direction, which are adorned with rows of trees and pleasant walks, add greatly to the interest of the view. Population more than 200,000.

Rotterdam, 36 miles south of Amsterdam, on the Meuse, is a place of great commercial advantages. By means of its capacious canals, large ships are introduced into the middle of the city, and brought to the very doors of the merchants' warehouses. The Hague is a large and beautiful town, but not distinguished for trade. It is the seat of government, and the residence of the Royal family. Leyden, Utrecht, and Groningen, are celebrated for their universities.

The Grand Duchy of Luxemburg is included in the Germanic Confederation.

QUESTIONS.

In what direction, and how far are the Netherlands from England? What sea lies between them? What is their extent? Population? What are the two chief divisions? When did Belgium become a separate kingdom? Where is Holland? What is its extent? Its population? Describe the face of the country. By what is it secured from inundation? What is the climate? The soil? In what does the wealth of the Hollanders chiefly consist? Describe their character. What is their language? Their government? Their religion? What are some of the principal cities? What is the situation of Amsterdam? Describe it. Which way from it is Rotterdam? Describe it. Describe the Hague. For what are Leyden, Utrecht and Groningen celebrated? What part of Holland is included in the Germanic Confederation?

BELGIUM.

Extent, 11,500 sq. miles—Pop. 3,600,000—304 per sq. mile.

Belgium is a name given to what was formerly called the Austrian Netherlands. It is south of Holland, west of Germany, and north of France. It is divided into eight provinces. The face of the country is generally level, and the climate is agreeable. The lands are excellent and highly cultivated. The productions are grain, hemp, and flax. This country has long been celebrated as one of the richest and fairest portions of Europe.

The Belgians are hospitable, industrious, and energetic in character, skilled in manufactures, and like the Dutch, remarkable for economy and cleanliness in their domestic arrangements. They are generally Roman Catholics, highly superstitious, and very fond of religious ceremonies. The number of Protestants among them is about 10,000, and there are not far from 30,000 Jews. The government is a limited, hereditary monarchy. The Belgians, for the most part, speak the French language, and imitate the French in their dress and manners. They have universities at Louvain, Ghent, and Liege.

The chief cities are, Brussels the capital, Antwerp, Ghent, Liege, Bruges, and Louvain. Brussels is a rich, gay, and splendid city, celebrated for its public walks and fountains, and for its manufactures of lace, camlets, and carpets. Population 80,000. Ten miles south of Brussels, is Waterloo, famous as the field of the great battle of 1815, which resulted in the termination of the European war, and the downfall of Napoleon. Antwerp on the Sheldt, has a harbor sufficient for the accommodation of 1,000 vessels, and was once the most highly commercial city in Europe. It has much declined, but is now reviving. In the year 1832 the citadel of Antwerp was besieged by the French, and taken from the Dutch. Population 66,000.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries, extent and population of Belgium? Describe the surface. For what has Belgium been celebrated? What are the character and employments of the people? What is their religion? Government? Language and manners? What are the chief cities? Describe Brussels. Where is Waterloo? For what is it celebrated? What is said of Antwerp?

DENMARK.

Extent, 22,000 sq. miles—Pop. 2,000,000—90 per sq. mile.

Denmark consists of the peninsula of Jutland, between the north sea and the Baltic, with several adjacent isles in the Baltic sea, the principal of which are Zealand, Funen, and Laland. It also includes the Duchies of Holstein and Lauenburg, in Germany, north of the Elbe, and the Duchy of Sleswick, between Holstein and Jutland.

Denmark is generally a plain, fertile country, without mountains, and with inconsiderable hills. The streams are numerous but small. The climate, which is very moist, yet temperate for the latitude, and healthy, resembles that of England. The soil being peculiarly adapted to grass, the rearing of cattle is a leading pursuit. Great numbers of horned cattle, horses, sheep, and swine, are annually exported.

Agriculture is skilfully conducted, and the lands in the southern portion are well improved, yielding large quantities of grain, hemp, flax, and tobacco. Manufactures are not flourishing; but the commerce of the Danes is considerable, as their advantages for navigation are peculiar. For several years, however, their commerce has been diminishing. As a people, they are not distinguished for activity, enterprise, or ambition; but they are honest and diligent in business, and well instructed in the rudiments of common learning. Literature is patronised by the government, and common schools are found in almost every village. There are respectable universities at Copenhagen, the metropolis, and at Kiel, the capital of Holstein.

Copenhagen, situated on the eastern side of the island of Zealand, has a good harbor, and is one of the largest and finest cities in the north of Europe. It is the residence of the royal family, the seat of literature, and of the great public institutions of the kingdom. Population 105,000.

Altona, near Hamburg, on the Elbe, is the second city in Denmark, in commerce and in population. Elsineur is on the island of Zealand, 20 miles north of Copenhagen, at a point where the width of the sound is only four miles. It is noted as the place where toll is collected of all ships passing into the Baltic. The toll amounts annually to a large sum, and constitutes an important source of revenue to the Danish government.

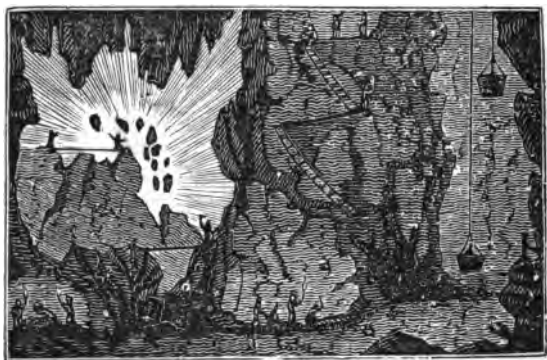
The established religion in Denmark is Lutheranism. The government is a monarchy, very absolute in its form, but ordinarily administered with mildness.

The foreign possessions of Denmark are, Iceland, West

Greenland, the Faroe isles, the West India islands, St. Croix, St. Thomas, and St. Johns; and Zanguebar and Serampore, in Asia.

QUESTIONS.

Of what does Denmark consist? How is the peninsula of Jutland bounded? What channel separates it from Norway? What sound from Sweden? What are the extent and population of Denmark? What kind of region is it? What are the climate and soil? What are the leading pursuits of the people? What is the state of agriculture? Manufactures? Commerce and navigation? What is the character of the Danes? What is the state of education? What universities in Denmark? What is the capital? Where is Copenhagen? Describe it. Where is Altona? Describe it. Where is Elsinour? Describe it. What is the religion? The government? What foreign possessions has Denmark?



Iron Mines of Sweden.

SWEDEN.

Extent, 170,000 sq. miles—Pop. 2,750,000—16 per sq. mile.

Sweden is a very extensive, but thinly inhabited region. Its three general divisions are, Gothland, Sweden Proper, and Nounland, which embrace 26 governments, called lans.

The surface of Sweden on the west, is rough and mountainous, but towards the eastern and southern borders, generally level. It abounds in lakes and rivers, is chiefly covered with forests, and is generally barren and unproductive. Of the whole territory, not more than 6,000 square miles are capable of cultivation. Here and there are very fruitful valleys, and well cultivated fields. But the products of the soil, and the manufactures, are insufficient to supply the wants of the people.

The winters are steadily and severely cold, yet the atmosphere

is serene and healthful. The heat of summer sets in abruptly, vegetation is rapid, and the fertile spots are suddenly clothed with verdure and adorned with flowers. It is said, that sometimes the sun burns so intensely as to set the forests on fire. The woods abound in pine and other valuable timber, pitch, turpentine, and tar. There are rich mines of silver, lead, copper, and especially of iron, which is an important article of export, and the principal source of wealth.

The country possesses a vast range of sea coast, and the commerce is extensive and flourishing. Learning and education are amply provided for. Schools are numerous, and the people at large are intelligent and well informed. The peasantry and common people are strong, hardy, industrious, honest, and in dress and manners, plain. The women take part in the business of husbandry, and in all the laborious occupations. The nobility and gentry are ostentatious, and fond of affecting the French fashions and manners. Lutheranism is the prevailing religion. The Swedes are remarkable for their settled aversion to popery.

The government is an hereditary monarchy, but mild and salutary in its operations. The king's power is very limited. The legislative congress is styled the Diet, or States' General.

The metropolis is Stockholm, on the eastern coast, near the junction of Lake Malar with the Baltic. It is situated on several small islands. Its harbor is safe, and convenient for 1,000 ships. This is the grand emporium of commerce, for the more central parts of Sweden. Population 80,000.

Gottenburg, south-west of Stockholm, ranks next to it, in population and commercial importance, being finely situated, for foreign trade. Population 24,000. Carlsrona, on the Baltic, is the principal naval station. Its harbor is capable of accommodating 100 men of war. Dannemora is distinguished for its iron mines; Fahlun for its mines of copper; Upsal and Lund, for their universities. At Tornea considerable trade is carried on with the Laplanders.

The Swedish government extends over Norway, as well as over certain islands in the Baltic and the island of St. Bartholomew in the West Indies. Next to Russia, it is the most extensive European sovereignty.

A spacious canal, extending from Gottenburg to the Baltic, has recently been completed. It was 20 years in construction, and cost ten millions of dollars.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent, population, and boundaries of Sweden? What mountains separate it from Norway? Ans. Dofrafield. What sound divides it from Denmark?

What sea and gulf divide it from Russia? What are the divisions of the country. Describe the face of the country. What are the principal rivers? Where do they empty? How much of the land is susceptible of cultivation? What is the climate? In what do the woods of Sweden abound? What mines in Sweden? What is the state of commerce? Of education? What is the condition of the common people? What is the character of the nobility? What is the religion? The government? What is the metropolis? Describe it. Where is Gottenburg? Carlscrona? Dannemora? What is the commercial importance of Gottenburg? For what is Dannemora distinguished? Where is Fahlun? For what is it noted? Where are Upsal and Lund? For what are they celebrated? Where are Tornea, Umea, and Gefle? Where are Christianstadt and Carlstadt? Over what other country and over what islands does the Swedish government extend?



Skating upon Snow in Norway.

NORWAY.

Extent, 120,000 sq. miles—Pop. 1,000,000—8 per sq. mile.

The climate of Norway on the sea coast is moist, and remarkably temperate for the latitude. And although in general it is severely cold, it is highly conducive to the health of the inhabitants, who, in many instances, arrive to extreme old age.

Norway is one of the most mountainous countries in the world. The mountains are lofty and extensive, and often impassable, being broken up into awful precipices and chasms, and intersected by torrents and cataracts of impetuous fury. So extensively rugged is the surface, that not more than one hundredth part of it is capable of being tilled, and but little grain is produced. Still there are vallies abundant in pasturage and cattle; the immense forests of fir and pine afford vast quantities of excellent timber; and the mines of copper and iron are exceedingly productive and valuable. The fisheries also are extensive and profitable. Thus the people at large have the means of

supplying themselves from abroad with those necessities of life which are not furnished at home.

The Norwegians are hardy, brave, and hospitable. There is an honest simplicity in their manners. Among the peasantry, almost every man is his own tradesman, and supplies his family with clothing, furniture, &c. of his own manufacture. Almost every one is taught to read and write, and may enjoy the privileges of a common education. The atmosphere in these northern regions is so clear, and the light of the moon and the Aurora Borealis are so brilliant, that the inhabitants can often see to read at midnight, under the open sky.

The religion is the Lutheran. The government, since the year 1815, has been dependent on the crown of Sweden. The legislative body consists of two houses, and is called the Storting.

Bergen is named as the capital, but Christiana is a more flourishing and important town. Its population is 20,000. The other principal places are Drontheim, Konsburg, Christiansand, and Frederickstadt.

Near the north west coast of Norway, is that noted whirlpool, the Maelstrom, which is of so great extent and force, that ships, and whales, and various animals, have been swallowed up in its awful abyss.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries, extent and population of Norway? What channel separates it from Denmark? What mountains separate it from Sweden? What islands and whirlpool are on the north-west? What is the climate of Norway? Describe the face of the country. What are the productions? What is the character of the Norwegians? What is the condition of the peasantry? What render the nights very light? How light are they? What is the religion? The government? The capital? What town still more important and flourishing? What is its population? Mention the other principal places. Describe the Maelstrom. Which is the greatest literary institution in Norway? Ans. The university of Christiana, having 17 professors, 650 students, and a library of 130,000 volumes.

LAPLAND.

Extent, 150,000 sq. miles—Pop. 60,000.

Lapland is the most northern portion of Europe, and the most cold, dreary, and inhospitable. It lies on both sides of the Arctic circle, having the Arctic ocean on the north, the White sea on the east, Sweden and the Gulf of Bothnia on the south, and Norway and the Atlantic on the west. It has three divisions, viz. Russian, Swedish, and Norwegian Lapland. The eastern part belongs to Russia; the southern, which is the most valuable, to Sweden; and the western, to Norway.



Commerce of Lapland.

The winters are long and intensely severe; the sun being invisible for weeks and months, and affording but little light or heat. The day, when there is any, is extremely short, for the sun soon passes below the horizon. The great length however of the twilight, and the peculiar brightness of the moon and stars, and northern lights, in a good measure compensate the inhabitants for the want of the sun's rays. The summer is very brief, and is attended for several weeks with a perpetual shining of the sun, which often produces excessive heat. Then snow and ice are disengaged from the mountains, and the torrents and cataracts rush down with inconceivable grandeur. But vegetation is scanty, and grain is rarely produced; the summers being too short to bring it to maturity. The country around the head of the Gulf of Bothnia, is an immense plain, and forests of spruce and fir are there very extensive. In general, the surface of Lapland is extremely rough and mountainous. Grain is imported from Sweden and other neighboring countries.

The Laplanders, like the Esquimaux, in North America, are dwarfish in stature and deficient in understanding. Though they profess Christianity, they are to a great extent involved in ignorance, superstition, and barbarism, and retain many absurd and idolatrous customs. The Lapland mountaineers are good herdsmen, and gain a comfortable livelihood. Some of them have in their possession, 500 or 1,000 reindeer. The fishermen reside, in summer, on the borders of the lakes, and as winter approaches, they remove to the forests, for the purpose of hunting.



Mode of Travelling in Lapland.

The most valuable gift of nature to the people of these regions, is the reindeer. He is one of the most singular and useful animals in the world, and appears to have been formed on purpose to serve man in this inhospitable climate. The flesh and the milk of this animal are generally used by the inhabitants for food; and his skin constitutes an important part of their clothing. He serves them, also, with wonderful alacrity and speed in drawing their sledges. Harnessed to a sledge, he will travel over the immense fields of ice and snow, at the rate of 200 miles a day. In the mean time, he requires but scanty fare,



Tents, &c. in Lapland.

and can subsist upon leaves or moss, when grass is not to be found. The houses of the Laplanders are very low huts, in the form of tents, covered with turf or bark, with an opening at the top for a chimney and a window. Kola, Veronez, Enare, and Opoden, are some of their villages.

QUESTIONS.

Where does Lapland lie? How is it bounded? What is the population? How is it divided? How many square miles? Which part belongs to Russia? Which to Sweden? Which to Norway? What is said of the winters here? Of the day? Of the twilight, &c.? Of the summer? Of the snow and ice? Of vegetation? Of the lands around the head of the Gulf of Bothnia? What is the general surface of Lapland? Describe the Laplanders. What benefits do the Laplanders derive from the reindeer? Describe the houses of the Laplanders. Mention some of their villages.

RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

The Russian empire embraces a greater extent of territory than any other on the globe. Within its limits, are comprehended the eastern half of Europe, and one third of Asia, besides a part of North America, containing in all about 8,000,000 of square miles, and 60,000,000 of inhabitants.



View of the Exchange, St. Petersburg.

RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

Extent, 2,000,000 sq. miles.—Pop. 56,000,000—28 per sq. mile

Russia in Europe, though its extent is but about one third that of Russia in Asia, is vastly more populous. It is however thinly peopled compared with the rest of Europe.

Russia, for the most part, exhibits a level surface, with few lofty mountains, embracing immense plains and morasses, vast forests, and a multitude of large navigable rivers. The rivers of the northern declivity flow into the White sea and the Arctic ocean; those of the southern declivity into the Black and Caspian seas. As there are but few falls in the rivers, they are the more useful for navigation, and serve to open communications of vast extent into the interior. The climate is extremely various. In general, the country is subject to greater extremes of heat and cold than countries on the western side of Europe, in the same latitudes. The soil is peculiarly and very extensively adapted to grazing. The state of agriculture and manufactures is low. Considerable quantities of hemp are produced, and manufactured into duck, sail cloth, and cordage; and the manufacture of linen is growing in importance. The chief exports are hides, tallow, leather, hemp, and iron.

Various nations, languages, and forms of religion, are found in Russia; and very different degrees of civilization. Ignorance and barbarism prevail among the common people. The proportion of pupils in common schools, to the whole population, is as one to 350, and the proportion of liberally educated persons is not more than one to 15,000. The nobles and landlords exercise a cruel dominion over the poor peasants. The latter are very numerous, and in a state of absolute slavery and ignorance. Still, the state of learning is gradually improving. In the cities and large towns, there are many respectable schools, where literature and science are cultivated. Many foreigners, chiefly Germans, are employed as instructors, for the education of the higher and middle classes.

The established religion, is that of the Greek Church. It is the religion of three fourths of the population. The rest are Catholics, Jews, Mohammedans, or Pagans. The government is an absolute hereditary monarchy, very despotic in its character and administration. The sovereign, who resides at St. Petersburg, is styled Emperor and Autocrat of all the Russias, and king of Poland.

St. Petersburg is the metropolis of the Russian empire. Though recently built, it is one of the most regular, elegant, and flourishing cities in Europe. It stands at the mouth of the river Neva, at the eastern extremity of the gulf of Finland. Its foundations were laid by Peter the Great, at the commencement



View of St. Petersburg.

of the last century. It is of a circular form, and about 12 miles in compass. The streets are broad and well paved, and the houses built of brick. It contains a university, with various other literary institutions. Its manufactures are flourishing, and foreign commerce extensive. Population 425,000. Cronstadt is the port of St. Petersburg.

Moscow, about 400 miles south east, was the ancient capital, and a great city; in 1812, three fourths of it were consumed by the Russians, to the great discomfiture of Napoleon and his invading army. It has since been chiefly rebuilt. Population 250,000. Riga, on the Duna, is a place of great commercial importance. Odessa, on the Black sea, has a spacious and commodious harbor, and is a flourishing place. Astrachan, on the Volga, 40 miles from its mouth, is a grand mart for the produce of Asia, and carries on a great trade with St. Petersburg, by means of the Volga, and a canal which connects that river with the Neva. It is supposed that 4,000 vessels annually pass between these two cities, which are 1,400 miles distant from each other. It contains 26 Tartar mosques, and 25 Greek churches. Population 40,000.

Archangel, on the Dwina, is the principal port at the north. Abo is the capital of Finland, a province situated on the gulf of Bothnia, inhabited by the Fins, a rude and dwarfish people, not unlike the Laplanders. The Don Cossacks are an active and singularly warlike tribe, living in villages. They inhabit both

sides of the Don. They are expert horsemen and spearsmen, and terrible in battle to the enemies of Russia.



Buildings in Finland.

QUESTIONS.

What does the Russian empire comprehend? What are its whole extent and population? How is Russia in Europe bounded? By what five seas is it bordered? What mountains and rivers divide it from Asia? What lakes in Russia? What rivers run into the Black Sea from Russia? What into the Caspian? What into the White Sea and Arctic Ocean? What into the Baltic and the Gulfs of Finland and Riga? What are the extent and population of Russia in Europe? Describe the surface. Where do the rivers of the northern declivity empty? Where those of the southern? What is the climate? How is the climate compared with that of western Europe in the same latitudes? To what is the soil peculiarly adapted? What is the state of agriculture and manufactures? Mention some of the productions and manufactures? Which is the colder side of Europe, the eastern or the western? What are the chief exports? What is the state of education? What is the established religion? The government? What is the sovereign styled? What is the metropolis? Where situated? By whom founded? What is the population? What is its port? Where is Moscow? Riga? Odessa? Cherson? Astrachan? How does it communicate with St. Petersburg? Where is Archangel? What is the capital of Finland? Describe the Fins. Where are the Don Cossacks? Where is the peninsula of the Crimea? Where is Revel? Novgorod? Kieu? Kazan? Orel? Orenburg? Minsk? Smolensk? Kaloga? Toola? Oufa? Twer?

ASIA.

Length, 8,000 miles—Breadth, 4,000—Extent, 16,000,000 square miles—Population 600,000,000—37 per square mile.

INTRODUCTORY QUESTIONS.

See map of Asia and of the World.

Is Asia in north or in south latitude? In east or in west longitude? Between what degrees of latitude and longitude is it? Ans. Between 2° and 77° north latitude, and between 26° and 190° east longitude. What cape at the northern extremity? What peninsula at the southern? What are the boundaries? What mountains and river separate it from Europe? What four large seas border it on the west? What isthmus connects it with Africa? What strait connects the Red Sea with the Indian ocean? What gulf between Arabia and Persia? What two small gulfs on the west coast of Hindoostan? What cape and large island south of Hindoostan? What large bay between Hindoostan and the Burman empire? What strait between Malacca and the island of Sumatra? What four Seas between Malacca and Kamschatka? What gulf is connected with the China Sea on the north-west? What strait between the Blue Sea and the Sea of Corea? What channel or strait between the Sea of Corea and the Sea of Okhotsk? What on the north-east divides Asia from America? What large island in the Arctic Ocean, north-west of Siberia? What two seas south-east of Nova Zembla?

What are the extent and population of Asia? How many inhabitants has it to a square mile? What is the extent of Asia compared with that of America? What proportion of the population of the whole globe does it contain? What is the large northern division of Asia called? What are the boundaries of Siberia or Asiatic Russia? What divisions border on the Black and Mediterranean seas? What divisions on the Caspian? What division on the Red Sea? What are the boundaries and capital of Independent Tartary? Of Persia? Of Turkey in Asia? Of Arabia? What two countries lie between Hindoostan and Persia? What are the boundaries and capital of Afghanistan? In what part of Asia is Hindoostan? Chin India? How are they bounded? What are their respective capitals? Where is the peninsula of Malacca? In what part of Asia is China? What are the boundaries? What is the capital? Where is Chinese Tartary? How bounded? What are the boundaries of Thibet? To what vast empire do Thibet and Chinese Tartary belong? What are the boundaries of Corea? Of Kamschatka? Which way from China is the empire of Japan? Of what three islands is this empire principally composed? Where is Tonquin? Cochin China? Cambodia? Between what two seas are Circassia, Georgia, and Mingrelia?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART FIRST.

NATURAL FEATURES—MOUNTAINS—DESERTS—RIVERS—CLIMATE—SOIL.

Asia is the largest grand division of the globe, and embraces the most numerous population. It is distinguished for the general serenity and salubrity of its climate, the fertility of its soil,

the variety and richness of its plants, spices, gems, and minerals, and is unrivalled for the antiquity, importance, and interesting nature of its history.

It was in Asia, that the original human pair were formed by the Divine hand, and placed in the Garden of Eden. In Asia, amidst the general deluge, mankind were miraculously preserved in the family and immediate descendants of Noah. In Asia, the venerable Jewish patriarchs performed their pilgrimages, the prophets proclaimed the will of Heaven, the Saviour lived, died, and rose again, the apostles began to publish the Gospel, and laid the foundations of the Christian Church. Asia is also considered the birth place of literature, and of the arts and sciences, which in modern ages have been brought to greater maturity and perfection in Europe.

Among the natural features of Asia, one of the most remarkable is the elevated central region, which includes Thibet and Chinese Tartary. This forms an extensive table land, bordered by three lofty ranges of mountains; on the north the Altay, on the west the Belur Tag, and on the south the Himmaleh. The Altaian chain is the longest on the globe, except the grand American chain. It extends about 5,000 miles from the sea of Aral in Independent Tartary, in an east or north east direction, to the sea of Okhotsk, on the Pacific ocean. It separates Chinese Tartary from Siberia. Its greatest height is about two miles, or 11,000 feet above the level of the sea. The Himmaleh are the highest mountains in the world. They extend south easterly from Independent Tartary, to the northern shores of the bay of Bengal, dividing Thibet from Hindoostan. Dawalageri the most elevated peak is about five miles high. The Belur Tag separates Chinese from independent Tartary, and connects the Altaian with the Himmaleh chain.

The Caucasian mountains extend across between the Black and Caspian seas. The Taurus chain traverses from west to east the northern part of Turkey. Mount Ararat is in Armenia on the north-west of Persia. The great desert of Cobi, or Shamo, is one of the most extensive and elevated deserts on the globe, being about 9,000 feet above the level of the sea, 2,000 miles in length, 500 in breadth, and about 900,000 square miles in extent.

Asia is watered by several noble rivers, the largest of which are equal in size to the second class of American rivers, being about 2,000 miles in length. Of this description are the Oby, Yenisei, and Lena, in Siberia, the Amoor, in Chinese Tartary, and the Kiang Ku and Hoangho, in China. The principal

rivers running south, into the Arabian sea and the bay of Bengal, are the Euphrates, Indus, Ganges, Burrampooter, and Irrawaddy, which are not far from 1,500 miles in length.

The territory of Asia, which extends from the frozen regions on the north to the equatorial or hot regions on the south, embraces a great variety of climate. The climate of the mountains and high table lands in the centre, is very cold for the latitude, and far colder than that of France and other European countries in corresponding latitudes; while some elevated tracts, further south, within the torrid zone, are favored with a most salubrious and delightful climate throughout the year. This is true of the lofty plains or vales among the Himmaleh mountains, and the table lands of Southern India, where the summers are mild and grateful, vegetation is continually verdant, and the scenes are those of perpetual spring. The south western portion of Asia is rendered peculiarly hot and sultry, by the influence of the winds from Africa.

The soil of Asia is as various as the climate. The Siberian lands on the north are generally composed of barren plains and marshes. The high central tracts of Tartary are rendered so dry and cold by their situation, as to be, to a vast extent, perpetually sterile and desolate. A great proportion of Eastern Asia is fertile, especially China, sustaining an immense population. Southern Asia, on both sides of the Bay of Bengal, is generally of an alluvial soil, and very luxuriant, and has long been considered the garden of the east. On the southwest, in Arabia, there are large tracts, consisting of barren, sandy deserts. In Western Asia, much of the land around the shores of the Mediterranean, and the Black and Caspian seas, and the Persian gulf, is by nature pleasant and fruitful.

QUESTIONS.

Which is the largest and most populous grand division of the globe? For what is Asia distinguished? What are some of the great events which have taken place in Asia? What region of Asia is the most elevated? By what mountains is the large central table land surrounded? How long is the Altaian chain? In what direction does it extend? What two countries are separated by it? What is its height? What are the highest mountains in the world? Between what two countries are they? What is the name of the principal peak? How high is it? Where is the Belur Tag? Where are the Caucasian mountains? The Taurus? Where is Mount Ararat? Where are the Ural mountains? The Gauts? The Stannavoi? Where is the great desert of Cobi or Shamo? Describe it. How long are the largest rivers of Asia? What three rise in the Altay mountains and descend into the Arctic ocean? What three flow into the Pacific ocean from Chinese Tartary and from China? What are the principal rivers running south? What is their length and where does each rise and empty? Describe the climate of the different parts of Asia? What is the soil of the northern part? Of the central tracts of Tartary? Of eastern Asia? Southern Asia? South western Asia? Western Asia?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART SECOND.

RACES—LANGUAGES—NATIVE CHARACTER— CIVILIZATION—EDUCATION AND LEARNING.

Several of the Asiatic tribes resemble the European race, in personal form, complexion, and features. Of this description are the inhabitants of Western Asia, or all the nations west of the river Oby, the Belur Tag mountains, and the river Ganges. The nations of Eastern Asia, or those east of the Oby, and the Ganges, for the most part belong to what is called the Mongul or Asiatic race. The personal appearance of these people, especially of the Chinese and Japanese, may be described as follows: Their stature is lower than that of the European race, and their form less regular and comely. The hair is black, straight, and coarse; the face square and flat; the complexion of the skin, yellow, tawny, or olive, with high cheek bones, flat nose, and small black eyes.

The most prominent languages of Asia, are the Chinese, Tartar, Malay, Arabic, Persian, Sanscrit, and Bali. In these languages most of the sacred and other books are written. And, though they are not all extensively spoken in their original purity, they are the parents of most of the vernacular tongues, or are blended with the numerous dialects in common use. The number of the different Asiatic dialects, is estimated at about 1,000.

In respect to the native character of the people of Asia, it may be remarked, that many of the northern nations are constitutionally hardy, active, and brave; while the nations of Southern Asia have, in general, been characterized by indolence, effeminacy, and weakness. The southern Asiatics, however, are represented as excelling the northern, in natural ardor of feeling, sprightliness of imagination, literary taste, and ingenuity in arts and manufactures.

With regard to knowledge and civilization in this quarter of the globe, it may be said, that the nations along the shores of the Arctic ocean are generally in the savage state, having no fixed dwellings, and are but little acquainted with agriculture and the arts, live a wandering life, and subsist usually by fishing and hunting. But the Asiatic nations in general, belong either to the barbarous or to the half civilized class of mankind. The people of Tartary, and of the greater part of Siberia and Arabia, are reckoned among the barbarous tribes. They are accustomed to

pastoral life, are nourished chiefly by the milk and flesh of their cattle, live in moveable tents, and go from place to place as suits their convenience. They have some knowledge of the mechanical arts, but make little or no use of books or of a written language.

The half civilized nations are those of Turkey, Persia, China, Japan, Hindoostan, Burmah, Afghanistan, and Beloochistan. These have some books and learning, some forms of government, religion, and law, and are well skilled in some of the useful arts; but they are generally averse to modern improvements, strangers to true politeness and refinement of manners, and are rude and barbarous in many of their customs. Woman is here the slave of man. The general state of education and learning in Asia, is much inferior to what is found in Europe. In the Mohammedan countries, as Arabia, Persia, Afghanistan, and Turkey, there are numerous schools under the instruction of the Moolahs or priests, whose leading object is to teach the young how to read and write the classical Arabic of the Koran; but whether they are made to understand the meaning of the language, or not, is often esteemed a matter of indifference. Thousands thus learn to read and write letters and words, but remain in gross ignorance; and still greater multitudes are destitute even of such an education.

In Hindoostan, Burmah, China, and especially in Japan, instruction in common schools is encouraged.

QUESTIONS.

Which of the Asiatic tribes resemble the European race, in their personal appearance? Which belong to the Tartar or Chinese race? Describe their persons. What are the most prominent languages of Asia? What is supposed to be the number of the different dialects? What is the character of many of the northern nations of Asia? What of the southern Asiatics? In what respect do the latter excel the former? Which of the Asiatic nations are in the savage state? Which are barbarous tribes? Which are the half civilized nations of Asia? What is the general state of education and learning compared with that in Europe? In what countries are there many schools under the care of the Moolahs or priests? What is the leading object in those schools? In what Asiatic nations is common school education encouraged?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART THIRD.

AGRICULTURE—PRODUCTS OF THE SOIL— MANUFACTURES—NAVIGATION AND COMMERCE—GOVERNMENTS.

The art of agriculture, among most of the Asiatics, has long been in a low and declining state. The corrupt and oppressive

forms of government and religion, endanger private property, discourage the efforts of industry, and render the husbandman timid, desponding, and indolent. Vast tracts of naturally fertile land, are thus abandoned to waste. Territories formerly sustaining a thick population, are now nearly or quite uninhabited.

The most important articles of culture in Asia, are wheat, barley, millet, maize, rice, cotton, sugar, and coffee. Rice is the principal support of millions in Hindoostan and other adjacent southern countries. In the warm regions, there is a variety of the most delicious fruits, and aromatic spices of the finest fragrance. In some arts and manufactures the Asiatics are very skilful. Turkey and Persia are unrivalled in the manufacture of carpets, sword blades, and various instruments of steel. China and India are distinguished for their silk and cotton fabrics, and their skilful workmanship in gold and silver. The carpets of Cabul, the shawls of Cashmere, the brilliant Persian dyes, the porcelain ware of China, and the embroidery of India, are highly celebrated.

It is a prevalent custom among many of the people of Asia, to hand down their trades and arts from father to son, and to continue them for ages in the same family line. Thus the descendants derive advantage from the accumulated experience of their ancestors in the same trade, which circumstance is highly favorable to their proficiency and skill. But there are other circumstances of a very unfavorable tendency. The tools and instruments used by the Asiatics in their various trades, are comparatively few, simple; and imperfect.

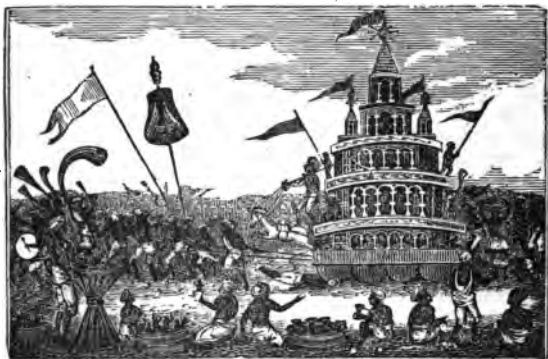
In navigation and commerce, these nations are very deficient and inactive. Their navigation is chiefly confined to their own coasts, or to short voyages. The Chinese and Japanese are extremely cautious in admitting foreigners into their ports, and lay them under severe restrictions. In return for the goods which they sell them, they generally refuse to take any thing but gold and silver.

The Asiatic Governments, in general, are absolute monarchies. The sovereigns are strictly despotic, holding the power of life and death over their subjects. This kind of government has been common in Asia, from the most remote antiquity.

QUESTIONS.

What is the general state of agriculture in Asia? What causes have tended to discourage the industry of the husbandman? What are the most important articles of culture? In what manufactures are Turkey and Persia unrivalled? For what manufactures are China and India distinguished? Mention some of the most celebrated manufactures of Cabul. Of Cashmere. Of China. Of India. What cus-

tom respecting trades and arts prevails in Asia? What is the effect of this custom? What is the state of navigation and commerce in Asia? What nations are peculiarly strict and cautious in admitting foreign vessels? Of what nature are the Asiatic governments in general?



Car of Juggernaut.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART FOURTH.

RELIGION—MISSIONARY STATIONS AND EFFORTS—CITIES.

The systems of religion most prevalent in Asia, are Paganism and Mohammedanism. The former consists in the worship of idols; the latter in adherence to the doctrines and precepts of the great Arabian impostor. Though Christianity had its rise in Asia, and this was the theatre of its first promulgation and of its earliest triumphs, and the seat of many apostolical churches; yet it is a lamentable fact, that those churches have long since declined and become extinct or corrupt, and the Gospel now sheds but a few scattered and glimmering rays of light, amidst the general darkness of error, superstition, and sin, which involve that large and beautiful portion of the globe. Mohammedanism or Islamism, prevails chiefly in Western Asia, particularly in Turkey, Arabia, and Persia. There are, however, many Mohammedans, and some Jews and Catholics, dispersed over the Asiatic regions.

The nations most grossly idolatrous, are the central, eastern, and southern. Oriental Paganism embraces numerous systems

of idolatry, appertaining to different nations. These systems, in some respects, resemble each other; in other respects they are discordant. They contain some true, sublime, and moral sentiments, mingled with a disgusting mass of falsehoods and absurdities, impure precepts, and abominable rites. They generally allow the existence of one Supreme Divinity, which in China is called Fohi, or Fo; in Thibet, Lama; in Hindoostan, Brahma; and in the Birman empire, Buddha, Boodh, or Guadama. They usually represent God as a being so far exalted above the world, that he did not condescend to take any part in its creation, and as perfectly inactive and indifferent in the regulation of its affairs, and in regard to all the actions and concerns of men.

According to these idolatrous systems, the creation and government of the world were committed to numerous subordinate or inferior deities, of different characters and tempers, who made the earth, and take care of it, in their several departments, and who, of course, are to be worshipped and pleased by mankind. But many of these inferior divinities or idols, are the avowed patrons of cruelty, obscenity, and every kind of wickedness. In order to conciliate their favor, or avoid their wrath, the deluded worshippers often use the most ridiculous and odious rites, endure many voluntary tortures, or plunge into all the abominations of vicious indulgence. The number of these idols cannot be computed. The Hindoos alone make their boasts of more than 300 millions. Besides many idolatrous images, there is scarcely any one of the elements or visible objects in nature, whether sun, moon, or stars, fire, water, mountain, or river, animal, insect, or vegetable, which is not superstitiously adored in Asia, instead of Jehovah, the true God. The religion, however, of these people is, to a great extent, mere Atheism, and founded on a belief in the eternity of matter.

The Asiatics are remarkable for the obstinacy and tenacity with which they cling to their ancient superstitions, and indeed to their customs and manners generally. Their style of building, the fashions of their dress, their forms of civility, their amusements, occupations, and habits, have changed but little for many ages. In each nation, they dress, appear, live, and act, much as they did thousands of years ago. They steadfastly adhere to the maxims of antiquity, and follow on, groping in the footsteps of their fathers.

But the time is coming when this charm shall be broken, and these shackles be unriveted. Christian benevolence and enterprise, are busily at work for the redemption of Asia. The scriptures, wholly, or in part, have been circulated in Chinese, and

in all the most important and popular oriental languages. Millions of scripture tracts have been distributed, and have excited attention. About 170 missionary stations are established, chiefly in Hindoostan, Burmah, Ceylon, and the regions of Caucasus. With these stations are connected about 350 missionaries and assistants, who have in their schools not far from 70,000 children, including many females, who formerly were treated as it destitute of souls, and denied the privileges of literary education. We are warranted by prophecy to believe, that these little bright spots in the East will spread, and these dawnings of light lead on to a glorious day.

In taking a concise view of the cities of Asia, it may be observed, that they are numerous, populous, and ancient. But, compared with European cities, they are usually inelegant and mean in their appearance. They are often surrounded with mud or brick walls. The streets, for the most part, are irregular, unpaved, narrow, and dirty; the public edifices few and without splendor, and the buildings, in general, clumsy, low, and thickly stowed with inhabitants.

The most elegant cities are in Western Asia, where the houses of the wealthy are built of brick or stone. They generally have an open court in the centre, and are surrounded by gardens and interesting rural scenery. There are windows towards the gardens, but few or none towards the streets, which makes the front of the houses resemble the gloomy walls of a prison. The roofs are flat, so that in the heat of summer, the people often lie upon them during the night, under the open sky. The house tops are also so connected, that one may take a long walk abroad among his neighbors, without going down into the street. The Mohammedan mosques, in many instances, appear grand and imposing, and the more so, on account of the lofty circular towers or minarets attached to them. Each of these minarets has a public crier stationed at the top, to call the people together at the appointed hours of devotion.

In the Chinese, Birman, and other idolatrous cities, the most striking objects are the Pagodas, or pagan temples, which are often gilded and richly ornamented, towering majestically above the numerous mud huts, or low thatched dwellings, with which the cities are filled.

The two most populous cities of Asia are, Pekin, in China, and Jeddo, in Japan, each containing a million and a half of inhabitants. Hang-Chew, Nankin, and Canton, embrace a population of nearly a million. On this subject, however, it is impossible to speak with precision, as the population of the

Asiatic cities has been very variously estimated by different writers.

QUESTIONS.

What systems of religion prevail most in Asia? In what part is Mohammedanism most prevalent? What nations are most grossly idolatrous? What does oriental paganism embrace? What is the general character of these systems of idolatry? For what particular obstinacy and tenacity are the Asiatics remarkable? What causes are operating to destroy this obstinacy and tenacity? Where are the principal missionary stations? How many are there? How many missionaries are connected with them? How many children in the mission schools? Give some account of the Asiatic cities? What are the most remarkable public edifices in them? What are the two most populous cities? What is their population? What is the population of Hang-Chew, Nankin, and Canton? Where is Calcutta? Madras? Meaco? Patna? Delhi? Bombay? If you were standing on one of the highest summits of the Himmaleh, in what direction would you look to see the Belur Tag mountains? The Altay? The Caucasus? The Arrarat? The Ural? The Gault? Mount Sinai? If you were at Calcutta, which way from you would be the city of Ava? Kelat? Cabul? Mecca? Tobolsk? Teheran? Aleppo? Pekin? Delhi? Which way from Canton is Pekin? Nankin? Jeddo? Jerusalem? Which way from Bombay is Calcutta? Surat? Madras? Pondicherry? Cochin? Which way from Jerusalem is Damascus? Antioch? Smyrna? Suez? Mecca? Bagdad? Which way from Mecca is Constantinople? Medina? Muskat? Calcutta? Mocha? Lassa?

CAUCASIAN COUNTRIES.

Extent, 116,000 square miles—Population 1,675,000.

This general name is given to the countries lying between the Black and Caspian seas, and in the immediate vicinity of the mountains of Caucasus, which range like a mighty wall from one sea to the other, and whose highest peaks, like those of the Alps, are covered with perpetual snow. The principal divisions of this region are Circassia on the western declivity of the mountains, and Georgia and Mingrelia on the south. It is, in general, a very uneven and mountainous country, strikingly diversified with cold barren heights, and with numerous warm and very fertile valleys.

The inhabitants are represented as being the most perfect examples of the white or European class of mankind, and are highly distinguished, the men for their dignified stature, their agility and strength, and the women for their vivacity and beauty. Such are the customs of this country, that multitudes of young females, from time to time, have here been sold by their parents, to Turks and Persians. The people in general are rude and ignorant. They are of various tribes, and in certain respects dependent on the Russian government. Yet they are of an active and restless spirit, especially the Circassians, who maintain a haughty and independent air, and are little better than bands of robbers. They frequently go on predatory excursions into the surrounding countries. The Georgians and

Mingrelians are of a milder character. Many of them live in houses half under ground, and they are in the habit of going armed as a defence against the robbers of the mountains.

The inhabitants of these countries are, by profession, partly Mohammedans and partly Christians. There are five missionary stations in this vicinity.

Teflis, the capital of Georgia, is the principal city. It makes but a mean appearance. Its manufactures are few and simple. Here is a Persian Mosque, one Catholic, and several Georgian and Armenian churches. Population 20,000.

QUESTIONS.

To what countries is the name of Caucasian given? How is Caucasus bounded? What mountains in this region? Describe them. What are the three principal divisions of this country? What is the situation of Circassia? Of Georgia and Mingrelia? Give a general description of the country? For what are the inhabitants distinguished? What cruel custom prevails here? What is the character of the people? On what government are the various tribes dependent? What are the respective characters of the Circassians, Georgians, and Mingrelians? What is their religion? How many missionary stations in this vicinity? What is the principal city? Describe it. What is its population?



Colossus at Rhodes.

TURKEY IN ASIA.

PART FIRST.

Extent 450,000 sq. miles—**Pop.** 11,000,000—24 per sq. mile.

This portion of Asia is rendered peculiarly interesting and sacred, as it embraces Palestine, the ancient holy land, and other

regions in its vicinity, which are associated in our minds with the Scripture history, and with the all-important events there recorded.

Turkey in Asia is more than twice as large as Turkey in Europe, but is not half so thickly populated. It has four general divisions, viz: Anatolia, Syria, Armenia, and Mesopotamia, and contains, in all 17 Pachalics, each of which is under the superintendence of a Pacha or governor appointed by the Sultan at Constantinople.

Anatolia, or Asia Minor, is situated between the Mediterranean and Black seas. Syria includes Palestine, and lies all along the eastern shore of the Mediterranean. Armenia is on the north east, and Mesopotamia on the east and south east. Palestine is the southern part of Syria. It lies on both sides of the river Jordan, which runs from north to south into the Dead Sea. The southern division of Palestine was Judea, in which stands Jerusalem, the Holy City. The middle division was Samaria, and the northern, Galilee.

Mount Lebanon, or Libanus, is a branch of the Taurus, and extends from north to south through a part of Syria and Palestine, at the distance of about 30 or 40 miles from the Mediterranean shore. Its summits are often covered with snow, and are adorned with the descendants of those lofty and venerable cedars, so celebrated in Hebrew poetry.

The surface of Turkey in Asia is mountainous, or exceedingly diversified with elevations, valleys, and plains, especially Anatolia, Syria, and Armenia; which are traversed by the numerous and lofty ridges of Mount Taurus. This country is noted for the salubrity of its climate, and the natural fertility of its soil, which anciently sustained an immense population. But in modern times, through the indolence and tyranny of the Turks, agriculture is wretchedly conducted, and much of the country is a mere wilderness. The natural productions are wheat, barley, wine, olive oil, figs, cotton, silk, and tobacco. Manufactures are much neglected. Turkey carpets, morocco leather, crapes, muslins, and sword blades, are the principal articles of manufacture. The trade is considerable, but is chiefly in the hands of Armenians, Greeks, and Jews. The Armenian merchants are especially distinguished for their activity, enterprise, and integrity. They are the principal traders in Turkey, and their commercial enterprise extends to most of the great cities of Asia.

The Curds and Turcomans on the north east and east, are barbarous and lawless hordes of robbers. They lurk in great num-

bers among the mountains of Armenia and Persia, frequently molest travellers, and plunder the people of the plains.

The Druses are a restless and fierce people, occupying some of the mountainous regions of Libanus, or Anti-Libanus. About half of the population are Turks.

The Mohammedan is the most prevalent religion; but the numerous Armenians, Greeks, and Roman Catholics, are nominally Christians. Turkey in Europe and Asia, contains about 20 millions of inhabitants.

QUESTIONS.

Why does this portion of Asia appear peculiarly interesting and sacred to the Christian mind? What are its extent and population? How is it bounded? Which is the largest, Asiatic or European Turkey? What four general divisions in Asiatic Turkey? How many Pachaics? What is the situation of Anatolia? Of Syria? Of Armenia? Of Mesopotamia? What part of Syria is Palestine? What river runs through it? Into what three parts was Palestine formerly divided? Give a description of Mount Lebanon. What is the surface of Asiatic Turkey? Which are the most mountainous provinces, and by what mountains traversed? For what is this country noted? What are some of the effects of Turkish indolence? What are the natural productions of the country? What are the principal manufactures? By whom is the trade chiefly conducted? For what are the Armenian merchants distinguished? Where are the Kurds and Turcomans situated? Describe them. Who are the Druses? What proportion of the population are Turks? What is the prevailing religion?

TURKEY IN ASIA.

PART SECOND.

Some of the largest cities of Turkey in Asia are Aleppo, Damascus, Smyrna, Bagdad, Erzerum, Diarbekir, Bassora, and Jerusalem. Aleppo is the capital of Syria, and handsomely built for a city of the east, with broad and paved streets. It is the centre of trade between Arabia and Persia, and Constantinople. This trade is carried on by means of caravans, or large companies of merchants. This city, like most of the cities of Turkey, has frequently been visited by the plague. Population 200,000.

Damascus, also 136 miles north of Jerusalem, is a Syrian city. It is very delightfully situated in the midst of a fertile plain. Surrounding the city are a multitude of fruitful gardens, well watered by fountains, and by numerous canals from neighboring rivulets. This is a famous rendezvous for pilgrims, and an ancient place of trade and manufactures, especially in sword blades, silk, and cotton. Population 130,000.

Smyrna, on the west coast of Asia Minor, is a populous city, and the great emporium of trade to the Levant. It is visited

by merchant ships from the United States, and various other nations, which are here furnished with cargoes of Turkey carpets, silk, beautiful goat's hair, raisins, opium, and various drugs. Population 120,000, composed of Turks, Armenians, Greeks, and Europeans. The latter are here called Franks. This city has been peculiarly exposed to earthquakes and the plague.

Bagdad is on the Tigris, and about 50 miles north of the ruins of Babylon, on the Euphrates. In the 12th century, under the Caliphs, it was the metropolis of the Saracen empire, and a city of vast population, literary renown, and unrivalled splendor. Little remains of its former magnificence; but it is the centre of the commerce with India and Europe. Here many precious Indian goods are landed from boats which ascend the Tigris from Bassora and the Persian Gulf, and hence they are conveyed by the caravan merchants to Aleppo and Constantinople. Population 80,000.

The ruins of Babylon are vast, but shapeless—serving as solemn monuments of the greatness of that ancient city, whose wall, 60 miles in circuit, 90 feet thick, and 300 feet high, surmounted with 300 towers, and furnished with 100 brazen gates, was justly esteemed one of the wonders of the world.

Diarbekir, or Diarbeck, situated on the Tigris, in the midst of a level and very fertile region, is considerably flourishing in oriental manufactures and trade. Population 100,000. Erzerum is the greatest city in Armenia, and trades extensively with Persia and the east. Population 100,000. Mosul, on the Tigris, is supposed to stand very near the site of ancient Nineveh, where is now a small village called Nunia. Bassora is situated on the Euphrates, below its junction with the Tigris, and 70 miles from the Persian Gulf. It is about 1,800 miles south east of Constantinople, and one of the most important ports in the Turkish empire. The river is navigable to this city for ships, which come laden with silks, muslins, shawls, fruits, spices, pearls, and other valuable commodities from Hindoostan, Java, Persia, and Arabia, which are sent up to Bagdad in boats, and thence transported by caravans over the empire.

Bursa, Tocat, and Angora, are considerable cities in Anatolia, or Asia Minor. Palmyra, famous for its ruins, is situated in the Syrian desert, 130 miles north east of Damascus. It is supposed to have been originally built by Solomon, and called Tadmor in the Desert. The magnificence of these ruins, particularly that of the Temple of the Sun, is almost beyond description. They exhibit the most striking examples which can be

found, of the perfection of Grecian architecture, united with oriental opulence and splendor.

Balbec, the ancient Heliopolis, or "City of the Sun," 40 miles north west of Damascus, is also highly distinguished for its ruins. Some of the stones found among the ruins are of vast dimensions. One of them is about 60 feet long and 12 feet in breadth.

Jerusalem, once the Holy City, is situated in the southern part of Palestine, nearly in the latitude of 32 degrees, and about 40 miles east of the Mediterranean Sea. When it is viewed near at hand, its appearance is mean, but it is not devoid of stateliness and magnificence when viewed from a distance. The mosque of Omar, built more than a thousand years ago, on the site of the ancient temple, has been thought by some travellers nearly equal in grandeur to the celebrated mosque of St. Sophia, at Constantinople. The Church of the Holy Sepulchre is an ancient and sublime edifice, and for many hundreds of years has commanded the veneration of pilgrims. The city is still thronged with superstitious pilgrims and monks. It is supposed to contain about 25,000 inhabitants.

Jaffa, the ancient Joppa, is on the sea coast, 40 miles west of Jerusalem. Tyre and Sidon are on the sea coast, west of Damascus, and about 80 or 100 miles north of Jerusalem. They are 20 miles distant from each other—are both inconsiderable places; but exhibit some marks of what they have been. Antioch, a Syrian city, is beautifully situated on the Orontes, not far from the sea, 50 miles west of Aleppo. Population 15,000.

QUESTIONS.

What are some of the chief cities in Asiatic Turkey? What is the capital of Syria? Describe it. With what countries does Aleppo trade? By what means is the trade conducted? What are caravans? Where is Damascus? Describe it. What are its manufactures? Where is Smyrna? What ships visit it? What cargoes do they obtain? Where is Bagdad? What was it in the 12th century? What is it now? How are Indian goods brought up from Bassora? How conveyed to Aleppo and Constantinople? On what river are the ruins of Babylon? How far from Bagdad? What is said of the wall of ancient Babylon? Where is Diarbeck? Describe it. What is said of Erzerum? Of Mosul? What ancient city stood near it? Where is Bassora? How far from the Persian Gulf? What course and distance from Constantinople? What two rivers uniting form the Euphrates? What large cities in Anatolia? Where is Palmyra? For what famous? Where are the ruins of Balbec? What is the situation of Jerusalem? How far from the sea? What is its present appearance? Describe the mosque of Omar. The Church of the Holy Sepulchre. By what is Jerusalem thronged? What is its population? Where is Joppa, or Jaffa? What is said of Tyre and Sidon? Of Antioch?

ARABIA.

PART FIRST.

Extent, 1,000,000 sq. miles—Pop. 12,000,000—12 per sq. mile.

Arabia is twice as extensive as Turkey in Asia, and more

than equal to it in population. A very great proportion of it, especially the interior, consists of dry sandy deserts, or rocky barren mountains. It has usually been divided into three principal parts, viz. Arabia Petrea, or stony Arabia, on the north west; Arabia Felix, or Happy Arabia, on the south east, south, and south west; and Arabia Deserta, or Desert Arabia, in the interior and on the north. The Red Sea, on the west, extends the whole length of Arabia, a distance of about 1,400 miles, and divides it from Africa. The harbors on this sea are few, and its navigation, on account of the numerous reefs of coral rocks, is difficult and dangerous.

Near the head of the Red Sea, on the east side, stands Mount Sinai, sacred as the place where the Law was given to Moses by Jehovah. From the top of Sinai, directly west, Mount Horeb is visible, and belongs to the same ridge of mountains. In the neighborhood of Mount Sinai is an extensive plain or desert, sufficient to contain the whole camp of Israel. Here is now the convent of St. Catharine; and there are many superstitious monks who have lodgings in the region of these two mountains, and who are ever ready to serve as guides to travellers, and pretend to be able to point out all the sacred spots.

The climate of Arabia is dry and hot, especially upon the plains. There are very few fountains or streams of water, and the country is rarely refreshed with rain. A fiery, suffocating wind, called the simoom, sweeps across the desert, and often proves fatal to the traveller. Sometimes such clouds of burning sand are accumulated by the winds, as to bury whole caravans of merchants and pilgrims in sudden destruction.

The richest parts of the Arabian soil are in Yemen, the south western province, and along the shores of the Indian Ocean and the Persian Gulf. The eastern coast of the Red Sea is generally barren and desolate. Where the land is fertile, it produces in abundance, balm, cinnamon, cassia, spikenard, frankincense, myrrh, and a variety of the most fragrant gums. The dates and coffee of Arabia are peculiarly celebrated. Agriculture and manufactures are in an imperfect state, and are almost confined to the towns or settlements on the coasts. The trade is chiefly carried on by means of caravans across the desert, which are usually escorted by companies of armed men, to defend them against the wild Arabs who lurk in the rocks and mountains of the interior, or roam at large over the sands of the wilderness, intent on robbery, and plunder. In these caravans, the camel is of essential service. He is one of the most remarkable and useful animals in Asia or Africa. He seems to have been

providentially designed for service in these parched countries. His hoofs are formed to tread the burning sands, and his stomach to retain water for a long time, so that he can travel seven or eight days without drinking, and sustain a load of 800 pounds upon his back. At night he kneels down to rest under his load, which is not removed till he arrives at the end of his journey. The dromedary is a camel of small size and extraordinary swiftness. The Arabian horses are celebrated, the world over, for beauty, fleetness, and docility.

The Arabs are regarded as the descendants of Ishmael, the son of Abraham; and their character and history have been such as wonderfully to correspond with the Angel's prediction, "he will be a wild man; his hand will be against every man, and every man's hand against him." They are of a middle stature and swarthy complexion, with black hair and expressive black eyes. They are manly in appearance, swift of foot, elegant on horseback, skilful in the use of the bow and lance, and in shooting at a mark. They are of a brave and independent spirit. The Arab robbers of the desert are called Bedouins. They lodge in moveable tents, and go with their flocks and herds from place to place. They live by plunder and the milk of their camels. They are remarkably kind and courteous to the stranger while under their roof; but should they meet him unprotected in the desert, they would not scruple to rob him of his goods, or of his life. In the year 1750, a caravan of more than 40,000 merchants and pilgrims, from Mecca, fell victims to their lawless ferocity.

The Arabians, as a nation, have hitherto remained invincible. No foreign power has been able successfully to invade their country, or bring the people under bondage.

The Arabic language, such as it is in the Koran, is considered a dialect of the Hebrew, and one of the richest and most copious languages in the world. It is superficially taught in the schools, but is not generally spoken. There is a kind of corrupt Arabic, called the Arabesque, which is the language of conversation in Arabia, and is extensively spoken in other countries of the east. There was a time when learning flourished among the Arabians, then called Saracens, but for several hundred years they have been characterized by ignorance, barbarity, and rudeness.

QUESTIONS.

Between what parallels of latitude does Arabia lie? What tropic passes through the middle of it? What are its boundaries? What is its extent? Its population? How many inhabitants has it to a square mile? How much larger is Arabia than Turkey in Asia? Of what does the interior consist? What are the three principal divisions of Arabia? How situated? How long is the Red Sea? How is the navigation of this sea? Where

is mount Sinai? For what celebrated? Which way from it to Mount Horeb? What convent and people are found in the region of these mountains? What is said of them? What is the climate of Arabia? What remarkable wind in Arabia? Mention some of the effects of it. What parts of Arabia have the richest soil? What is the soil of the eastern coast of the Red Sea? What fruits abound in Arabia? What is the state of agriculture and manufactures? How is the trade chiefly carried on? How are the caravans defended? What robbers are they exposed to? What is said of the camel? Of the dromedary? Of the Arabian horses? Of whom are the Arabs descendants? With what prediction does their character correspond? Describe the Arabs. What are the robbers called? Describe them. What is said of the Arabians as a nation? What is said of the Arabic language? Is the pure Arabic commonly spoken? What language is the language of conversation in Arabia? What is the state of learning?

ARABIA.

PART SECOND.

Arabia is the country where the religion of Mohammed had its rise, and where it now prevails. It was, as it were, the mouth of that bottomless pit, from which proceeded the overwhelming smoke of his lying doctrines, and the innumerable locusts of his desolating armies.

Mohammed was born at Mecca, in the year 569. At the age of 40 years he began to promulgate his new religion. It was contrived with great subtlety, and calculated to excite the favorable attention of Pagans, Jews, and corrupt Christians. He taught the existence of Jehovah, the true God, and acknowledged the divine mission of Moses and Jesus Christ; but pretended that he himself had come as a prophet superior to the former two, and was commissioned to make this last revelation of the will of Heaven, and to compel the nations to receive and obey it. He prohibited to his followers the use of strong liquors; appointed a few fasts, and prescribed a pilgrimage to Mecca; but he allowed many sinful indulgences, and promised a heavenly paradise of sensual and unfading pleasures, as the reward of the faithful, especially of those who should fall in fighting his battles. This imposture took effect; and multitudes, ere long, flocked to the standard of the prophet. In the course of years, his followers, under the name of Saracens, by the combined force of the Koran and the sword, extended their conquests over some of the fairest portions of Asia, Europe, and Africa. Thus they disseminated his doctrines far and wide, and laid the foundation of one of the largest and most powerful empires the world ever saw. The Saracen empire has been succeeded by that of the Turks. Arabia is now governed by numerous petty chiefs, called Imams or Sheiks. The principal cities are Mecca, Medina, Sana, Mocha, Aden, and Mascat.

Mecca, the capital, is about a day's journey from the Red Sea, situated in a narrow valley, in the midst of a mountainous and

barren region. Here are the far famed Caaba, or Mohammedan temple, the sacred fountain, and the consecrated black stone, which have so long been objects of religious veneration to pilgrims. It was enjoined upon every disciple of the Prophet, throughout the world, to perform at least one pilgrimage to Mecca, either in his own person, or by a representative. The grand ceremony of the pilgrims here, has been, to pass seven times around the temple, and as often to kiss the sacred stone. The number of pilgrims, which, in the course of twelve hundred years, must have visited the place, is almost inconceivable. The population of Mecca, at present, is not more than 20,000. Judda is its port.

Medina is 176 miles north of Mecca. To this city, the Prophet, on a certain occasion, fled from his enemies; and it is celebrated as the place of his tomb. Here stands a splendid mosque, erected by Mohammed, upon 400 pillars of black marble, illuminated with 300 lamps; perpetually burning, and enriched with treasures of gold, silver, and pearls, of immense value, the offerings of wealthy Musselmans from age to age. Mocha, at the entrance of the Red Sea, is a flourishing port, the principal channel of trade with Europeans, and distinguished for the fine quality of its coffee. Sana is one of the most populous of the Arabian cities. Mascot, or Muscat, on the Gulf of Ormus, is the most important port in the east of Arabia. From this place, also, considerable trade is carried on, by caravans, over land 900 miles, to the Red Sea and Egypt.

QUESTIONS.

What false religion had its rise in Arabia? Where and when was Mohammed born? At what age did he begin to teach his new religion? With reference to what purpose was it contrived? What were some of its doctrines? Over what did the followers of Mohammed under the name of Saracens extend their conquests? How is Arabia now governed? What are its principal cities? Where is Mecca? What three sacred objects are found there? What was enjoined upon every Mohammedan? What ceremony do the pilgrims perform at Mecca? What is its port? Where is Medina? For what celebrated? What noted building stands there? Describe it. Where is Mocha? Sana? Mascot?

PERSIA, OR IRAN.

Extent, 400,000 sq. miles—Pop. 7,000,000—17 per sq. mile.

Persia, in extent, is nearly equal to Turkey in Asia. It holds a prominent place in the history of oriental nations.

Its natural features are various and striking. It is bordered on the north-west and west, by the lofty mountains of Ararat and Caucasus, and traversed from west to east by branches of the Taurus. On the south-west it is washed and fertilized by the rivers Euphrates and Tigris. In the eastern part is an im-

mense, salt, sandy desert, 700 miles in length. A very great proportion of the surface of Persia is occupied by rugged mountains, barren sands, marshes, deserts, and salt lakes. The climate is various, but generally warm and dry. It is cold on the tops of the mountains, where snow may frequently be found, while the inhabitants in the vales are sweltering with heat. At the south, around the Persian Gulf, the heat is sometimes intolerable, and many of the people betake themselves to the mountainous, cooler regions, till the excessive heat of the sun has abated.

The soil is very fruitful in the valleys and along the banks of the rivers. Around the southern shore of the Caspian sea, and also on the Euphrates, and on the Persian gulf, are tracts of uncommon fertility.

The numerous smaller streams which flow from the mountains in the interior, tend greatly to enrich the low lands, over which they pass; but many of them are finally lost in the sand. Persia abounds in wheat, rice, barley, wine, and oil; in dates, oranges, pomegranates, and other fruits of delicious taste—besides a great variety of flowers of the most delicate flavor. The Persian roses especially, have been celebrated, and from them salubrious waters or essences are extracted and exported to other countries.

The Persians of both sexes, are handsome, and of a fair complexion, especially those of the north. They are polite and courteous to strangers, hyperbolical in compliments, poetical in conversation, abject and slavish in their deportment towards superiors, and arrogant and lordly towards inferiors. Like the French, they are lively, vain, gay, and fond of show. The rich live in a style of splendid luxury. They profess a peculiar passion for learning, especially for poetry, and may be considered the most learned of the oriental nations. They excel in archery and horsemanship, and raise some of the finest horses in the east. Their camels are numerous. Many of their sheep are distinguished for the fineness of the fleece, and for the size of their tails, which often weigh 30 pounds. The Persians show but little enterprise in agriculture or commerce. They pay some attention to manufactures. The principal are carpets, leather, silk, mohair, and woollen. The Armenian merchants conduct most of the trade.

There is a race of roving, predatory shepherds, called Iliats, who range in the mountains and deserts, and have laid waste many of the surrounding fertile tracts. They are a terror to the Persians in the valleys, and their frequent depredations greatly hinder the improvement of the soil, and the prosperity of the country.

The houses in Persia, as in Turkey, and many other parts of Asia, are generally flat roofed, and without windows towards the street. The Persians make great use of carpets in their dwellings, and almost every family has a full supply.

The Persian language is allied to the Arabic. There are many ancient and beautiful poems, and other works of taste and elegance, composed in it. Many of the people are very neat and expeditious in penmanship. Like the Hebrews, they write from the right side of the page to the left.

In religion, the Persians are Schiites, or Mohammedans of the sect of Ali. They are of a different denomination from the Turks, and are regarded by them as heretics, and as objects of peculiar detestation.

Armenian and Georgian Christians are numerous in Persia. There is a sect called Guebres or Gauris, worshippers of fire, who profess to be disciples of the ancient Magi, and followers of Zoroaster. The scene of their devotions is on the north, near the city of Baku, on the confines of Caucasus, where there is a large tract of ground covered with a bituminous or inflammable matter, upon which they have temples built, constantly illuminated with what they deem the sacred eternal flame.

The Persian government for ages has been remarkably despotic, and calculated to enslave and discourage the people, and to impede their prosperous enterprise.

The principal cities in Persia, are Ispahan, Shiraz, Teheran, and Bushire.

Ispahan, the ancient capital, was formerly of vast extent and magnificence. It is situated in a delightful plain, and refreshed with waters from the river Zenderoud. Its circumference is twelve miles. The streets are narrow and irregular. The houses are built of sunburnt brick, with flat roofs, upon which the inhabitants are in the habit of regaling themselves in the cool air of the summer evenings. It has been celebrated for its numerous mosques and splendid palaces, its gardens and canals ornamented with refreshing shades. The royal palace and gardens are said to have been three or four miles in circuit. But this city has been greatly defaced and depopulated by the arms of Kouli Khan and Tamerlane. Its former glory has passed away. Still it is the first city in Persia for commerce and manufactures, and the centre of trade between India and Turkey. Population 200,000.

Shiraz is 220 miles from Ispahan, towards the Persian Gulf. The praises of this city, and of its beautiful valley, and of the romantic mountains around it have been extravagantly sung by

Hafez and other Persian poets, who have lavished in their description the riches of oriental imagery. The city has been celebrated for its fruits, flowers, and delicious wines, and also as a seat of learning. In 1824, it was nearly destroyed by an earthquake. In its vicinity are the tombs of the poets Hafez and Sadi. Thirty miles north-east of Shiraz, are the famous ruins of Persepolis, one of the greatest cities of antiquity. These ruins, for the most part, are the remains of the superb palace of Darius, which Alexander, in his fury, set on fire. The wall on one side measures 600 paces, and on another about 400 paces. Population of Shiraz, 50,000.

Teheran is the modern capital of Persia, situated about 300 miles north of Ispahan. Population 25,000.

QUESTIONS.

What are the latitude and boundaries of Persia? Its extent and population? To what other country is it nearly equal? What are its natural features? What mountains border it on the north-west and north? What mountains traverse it? What sea on the north? What gulf on the south? What rivers on the west? What desert in the eastern part? By what is a great part of the surface of Persia occupied? What is the climate of each of the different parts? What is the soil? Where are some of the most fertile tracts? What is said of the streams in the interior? In what productions does Persia abound? What use is made of its celebrated roses? Describe the persons of the inhabitants. Their character. For what have they a peculiar passion? In what do they excel? Mention some of the animals which they raise. What is the state of agriculture and commerce? What race of people range in the mountains and deserts? Describe the houses of the Persians. What works of taste are found in the Persian language? In what manner do the Persians write? What is their religion? How do the Turks regard them? Are there any Christians in Persia? What are the worshippers of fire called? Whose disciples are they? Where is the scene of their devotions? Describe it. What is the Persian government? What are the chief cities? What is the ancient capital? Where is it situated? Describe the city. Describe the royal palace and gardens. By what has the city been defaced? What is its rank in point of commerce and manufactures? Where is Shiraz? By what poet has this city and its environs been celebrated? For what has it been celebrated? What poets are entombed in its vicinity? What famous ruins in this region? Where is Teheran?

AFGHANISTAN, OR CABULISTAN.

Extent, 340,000 sq. miles—Pop. 14,000,000—40 per sq. mile.

This kingdom, with Beloochistan south of it, comprises what has been called East Persia, and resembles Persia, in the great variety and contrasts exhibited in its surface and climate. In some parts are rugged and lofty mountains, whose summits are covered with perpetual snow, and marked with the dreariness of winter. In others may be found fertile valleys, where summer tarries long, and the heat is oppressive, or parched plains and deserts. The vast difference between the highest and the lowest lands in point of elevation, produces here a remarkable diversity of climate and soil. So abruptly in many instances do the mountains rise from the plains, that no great distance intervenes

between a warm region where snow never falls, and a cold and frozen one where it never is dissolved.

Afghanistan includes several provinces, viz.: Cabul, Candahar, and Cashmere, on the north-east and east, Segistan on the south, and Balk, and Herat, on the north and north-west. The population embraces Afghans, Persians, Tartars, and Hindoos. The number of Hindoos is nearly six millions. There are a number of separate tribes in the kingdom, each under the immediate control of its particular khan, or chief. But the supreme power is in the khan of the Afghans, which is the ruling tribe, distinguished for activity and courage, and gives name to the whole country. The general government, however, is in many parts feebly maintained.

Agriculture is not industriously attended to. Where the country is well watered it is fruitful. The rivers in the interior are very few and small. The principal trade is in horses, furs, and shawls. The shawls of Cashmere are made of the wool produced by the goat of Thibet, and for fineness and beauty are unrivalled. Cashmere is a province of Hindoostan, and was formerly included in the kingdom of Afghanistan, but is now under another government. It is an elevated and beautiful valley, fertilized by rivulets from the mountains, and covered with verdure, enjoying a most salubrious climate. It is highly celebrated in eastern poetry, and has been considered a favorite summer retreat for the rich residing in the more sultry regions of India.

Cabul is the capital of Afghanistan. It is an ancient and populous city, but not handsome. It is the centre of trade between India and Tartary. Population 100,000. Peshawer is a large city more than five miles in circumference. Population 100,000. Candahar has a flourishing trade, being on the great road from Persia to Hindoostan. Balk is distinguished for the antiquity of its history, and there is an impression prevalent in Asia, that this is the oldest city on the earth. Herat has a very central position between Persia, India, and Tartary. It has been, for ages the rout of the caravans trading to those countries, and has had a high rank in commerce and wealth.

QUESTIONS.

By what name were Afghanistan and Beloochistan formerly called? What are the boundaries of Afghanistan? What number of square miles does it contain? What is its population? In what respects does it resemble Persia? Describe the climate. What causes the diversity of its climate? What are its principal provinces? What does the population embrace? What is said of the separate tribes? Which is the most powerful? What is the state of agriculture? What are the principal articles of trade? Of what are the shawls of Cashmere made? To what country did Cashmere formerly belong? Describe its valley. What is the capital of Afghanistan? Describe it. What is the extent of Peshawer? Its population? Where is Candahar? For what is Balk distinguished?

BELOOCHISTAN, OR BELUJISTAN.

Extent, 200,000 sq. miles—Pop. 2,000,000—10 per sq. mile.

Beloochistan is a mountainous, thinly populated country, and resembles Afghanistan, in the variety of its surface, soil, and climate. On the south-west, is a desert 300 miles in length. There is a general scarcity of water in the country. The rivers are few and shallow. Some of them rush from the mountains like torrents, and are soon lost in the sands. There are lofty table lands, cold and barren. The low plain country is on the south and east, and is often parched with drought, but when sufficiently watered is very fertile.

The mass of the population is divided into two principal tribes, the Belooches and Brahoos, who are generally Mohammedans, but different in their persons and manners. The Belooches, like the Arabs and Afghans, are restless, bold, and addicted to roving and robbery. They often issue forth, in their predatory excursions, with their camels, to a great distance, plundering and enslaving the more inoffensive tribes. The Brahoos are not wanting in activity and courage, but are comparatively mild, industrious, and peaceable. The Sindees are Mohammedans of the Soonee sect. They live on both sides of the river Indus.

Kelat is the capital of Beloochistan. It has a royal palace, and a population of 4,000, many of whom are Hindoos, who control the principal commerce and wealth of the city. The khan, or king, who resides here, governs several tribes, while others are tributary to the king of the Afghans.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Beloochistan? Its extent and population? In what respects does it resemble Afghanistan? Where is the great desert? How is it watered? Describe the face of the country. What are the two principal tribes? Describe them. What is the capital? Describe it. What is the government? What river divides this country from Hindoostan? Where does it rise, and empty?

HINDOOSTAN.

PART FIRST.

Length, 1,800 miles—Extent, 1,000,000 square miles—Population 120,000,000—120 per square mile.

Hindoostan, or as it is frequently called, India within the Ganges, is about equal in extent to the United States, and nearly ten times as great in population. The river Indus, on the north-west, divides it from East Persia, and the Himmaleh

mountains separate it from Thibet on the north. In the north-east is the Ganges, a river sacred to the Hindoos. It rises in the Himmaleh mountains, and running south-easterly, receives the Jumna and the Great Burrampooter, with other considerable branches, and empties into the bay of Bengal.

The peninsula on the south is traversed by the Gaut mountains, which extend from Surat, along the western coast, southerly to cape Comorin, and another range called the Eastern Gauts, extends near the eastern coast. Between these two ridges are extensive elevated plains, called the table lands of the Gauts. The western coast of the peninsula, is named Malabar, and the eastern the coast of Coromandel. On the north, between the Ganges and Indus, there are wide sandy deserts; and in some places, extensive woods or jungles are found, which being filled with a thick, rank growth of reeds and bushes, constitute a favorite retreat for tigers, wolves, catamounts, hyenas, and other ferocious animals, which abound in this warm region.



Mausoleum of Hyder Ali, at Seringapatam.

In general, the surface of Hindoostan is a plain, watered by periodical rains, and the overflowings of innumerable streams. The seasons are either wet or dry. The climate is subject to drought and excessive moisture. The rainy season is from April to October. During this period, the monsoon blows from the south or south-west, when the heat is often oppressive, hurricanes and thunder storms are frequent, the rains abundant, and the rivers overflow their banks. The rest of the year, the wind blows generally from an opposite direction.

when rain rarely falls, and drought is not uncommon. Still the soil for the most part is naturally as rich and luxuriant as that of any other portion of the globe. It supplies sustenance for a vast population, with little labor. Two crops in a year are not unfrequently produced. In some provinces and seasons, the harvests of one year, are sufficient for the support of the people for two years. Rice is the most common and important crop. It is raised with great ease where it can be suitably watered. Maize, millet, wheat, barley, cotton, indigo, and sugar cane, are also cultivated with facility. There is a rich and endless variety of fruits, and the flowers are celebrated for beauty and fragrance. There are groves of cypresses, myrtles, tamarinds, and palm trees, and immense forests of the lofty bamboo. The banyan tree is distinguished for its vast size.



Banyan Trees.

Valuable minerals and precious stones abound. There are rich mines of gold and silver, and particles of gold are washed down in the mountain streams. The diamonds of Golconda, Visapour, and Bengal, are highly celebrated. One diamond district employs more than half a million of persons. Tropical birds, animals, and reptiles, are numerous. Here are the huge and sagacious elephant, the one horned rhinoceros, and the royal tiger, famous for his strength and ferocity, who often issues from the jungle, and makes a prey of the unfortunate traveller. The country is infested with serpents, and with swarms of formidable insects.

The birds are of various voices and of the richest plumage. This is the native country of the peacock, and companies of these birds, frequently parade in the groves and make a proud display of their unrivalled ornaments. The parrots are without number, and of more than 40 different species.

Hindoostan is usually divided into four principal sections. First, the north-eastern, which includes the rich British province of Bengal, and is washed by the Ganges and its branches. Second, the north-western, which borders on the Indus. Third, the middle or central, and fourth, the southern, which extends from the river Kristna to Cape Comorin. In all these divisions, the great mass of the population are native Hindoos, who amount to 80 millions. Besides these, there is a numerous, mixed people of foreign descent; the principal of which are Monguls, Tartars, Afghans, Belooches, Arabs, Persians, and Jews. There are about 40,000 English and other Europeans.

The Hindoos are of a dark complexion, with strait black hair, regular form, and an inoffensive countenance. They are naturally indolent and listless, often destitute of bodily or mental energy, and disinclined to exertion. The generality of them are sunk in ignorance, stupidity, superstition, and vice. They are abject and crouching as servants, but insolent and tyrannical as masters. If they have any virtues, they are those of contentment and moderation. They are remarkably contented with little things; a little plain cloth for a dress; a little rice or millet for food; and a little straw or mud hut, for a habitation. These are the habits of the poor multitude. There are individuals who are comparatively rich and great, who dwell in costly palaces, are attended by many menials, and live in luxury and splendor.

The Hindoos are divided into four principal castes or classes. First, the Brahmins or priests, who have the care of the books, learning, religion, and law. Second, the Cittri class or Rajahpoots, consisting of soldiers and princes. Third, the Beise, or merchants and farmers; and, fourth, the Sudras or laborers. These castes do not intermarry or even sit at meals together. From time immemorial they have been kept distinct and exclusively devoted to their respective professions, trades, or employments. If any of them embrace another religion, or neglect any of the ancient prescribed ceremonies or superstitions, they at once lose their caste, and are treated as brutes.

The people of Hindoostan, generally, are idolaters. The three principal sects are the worshippers of Brahma, the votaries of Boodh, and the Jains. The rest of the inhabitants are

Mohammedans, of which there are about twelve millions, Seiks or Deists, Catholic and Syrian Christians, white and black Jews, and Parsees. The latter resemble the Persian worshippers of fire. The Jews and Syrian Christians are settled chiefly on the coast of Malabar. There are a number of Christian churches and missionary stations in Bengal, and on the coast of Coromandel, and at Bombay. The parent language of the Hindoos is the Sanscrit, in which their sacred books are written, but it is not now spoken. There are many vernacular dialects derived from it, into most of which the holy scriptures are now translated.

QUESTIONS.

Between what parallels of latitude is Hindoostan? What are its extent and population? What are its extent and population compared with those of the United States? What are its boundaries? What river divides it from east Persia? What mountains from Thibet? What great river in the north-east? What mountains in the southern part of the peninsula? What is the west coast called? What the east? What is the general surface of Hindoostan? What is the climate? What is the rainy season? What wind prevails during this period. Which way does the wind blow during the dry season? Describe the soil. What are the productions? What groves and forests abound? What minerals? What is said of the diamonds? What of the birds and animals? What are the four principal divisions of Hindoostan? Who compose the mass of the population? How many Hindoos are there? Who compose the remaining population? How many English and other Europeans in Hindoostan? Describe the persons of the Hindoos. What is their general character? How do the rich live? What are the four principal castes or classes of Hindoos? What is the consequence of embracing another religion? How are those treated who lose their caste? What is the prevailing religion? Where are the Jews and Syrian Christians settled? Where are the missionary stations? What is the parent language of Hindoostan? Are the scriptures now translated into many of the vernacular dialects? What are the names of the most important of these dialects? *Ans.* Bengalee, Hindoostanee, Mahratta, and Tamul.

HINDOOSTAN.

PART SECOND.

A great proportion of the population of this country, has been for nearly a hundred years, in some degree, subject to the British East India Company. The principal British possessions in Hindoostan, are in the north-eastern and southern divisions. They embrace in all a territory of 514,000 square miles in extent. The Governor General of British India is stationed at Calcutta, in Bengal. There is also a President at Madras, and another at Bombay, to govern the British dominions in those quarters. More than 80 millions of people in Hindoostan are real subjects of the English government. The rest of the population, particularly in the central and north-western parts, is governed by Mohammedan or native chiefs, who are tributary to the East India Company, or, in some measure, dependent upon it.

Some of the principal cities of Hindoostan, are Calcutta, Madras, Delhi, Patna, Benares, Bombay, Surat, Goa, Pondicherry, and Golconda.



View of Calcutta.

Calcutta, the capital of British India, is situated on the east bank of the Hoogly, an outlet of the Ganges, about 100 miles from the sea. It is the grand emporium of commerce for the East Indies, and is resorted to by merchants of all nations. The dwellings of the English residing here are splendid as the palaces of kings, and strikingly contrasted with the innumerable, low, mud huts of the natives. Population 500,000.

Madras, on the coast of Coromandel, is situated on a flat, sandy shore. The soil in its vicinity is not fertile. The harbor is very bad. Fort George is a strong fortress. The public buildings are magnificent. This city is the capital of the British possessions in this region. Several Christian missionaries are stationed here. Population 400,000.

Delhi, on the Jumna, was the former capital of Hindoostan, and is venerable for its antiquity, and its magnificent ruins. In the days of its glory, it was adorned with the most superb palaces and mosques, and the amount of its population is stated to have been two millions. The imperial palace is still an amazing structure, set forth in all the splendor of the east. It is said that 10,000 Arabian or Persian horses have been accommodated in its stables. The present population is but about 200,000.

Benares, on the Ganges, is an ancient and populous city. It is the seat of Brahminical learning, and the centre of Hindoo superstition and idolatry. In the view of the natives it is the holy city, and all who die within its walls, are deluded with the hope of a sure passport to paradise. With this expectation, im-

mense multitudes crowd into it; and on the days of public festivals, especially, the city is filled to overflowing. Several English missionaries are stationed here. It is also distinguished as a place of trade in diamonds, silks, brocades, and manufactures of gold and silver lace. Population 300,000.

Bombay is on an island, and is the seat of the British government in south-western Hindoostan. It is admirably situated for commerce and ship building, and carries on an extensive trade. Here is a flourishing missionary establishment under the care of the American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions. Population 160,000.

The island of Ceylon, south-east of Hindoostan, contains about 20,000 square miles, and 1,500,000 inhabitants. It is under the British government. The native capital is Candy. Colombo is the seat of the present government. This island is celebrated for its rich variety of fruits and spices, its groves of cinnamon, its extensive pearl fishery, and the variety and abundance of its precious stones. It abounds in huge and poisonous serpents, and in elephants of a singular sagacity and power.

The people in general are worshippers of Buddha, but there are about 200,000 Protestants and Catholics on the island. It also contains several important American and other missionary stations. In Ceylon, and in various parts of India west of the Ganges, it is computed that there are 110 missionary stations, 140 European and American missionaries, with 150 female assistants, 140 native assistants, 940 schools, 40,000 scholars, and 4,000 communicants in the missionary churches. An increasing number of Brahmins and other Hindoos of influence, are becoming acquainted with the English language, and openly opposed to idolatry, fearlessly calling on their countrymen to renounce it.

QUESTIONS.

What government predominates in Hindoostan? In what parts are the principal British possessions? Where does the governor-general reside? At what two places are presidents stationed? How many millions in Hindoostan are proper subjects of the British? On whom are the native chiefs dependent? What are some of the chief cities? Where is Calcutta? Of what is it the capital? What is its commercial importance? What is said of the dwellings of the English here? On what coast is Madras? Of what is it the capital? Which way is Delhi from Calcutta? For what venerable? Where is Benares? Of what is it the seat? How is it regarded by the natives? Which way from Calcutta is Bombay? Of what is it the seat? What missionaries are here? Where is the island of Ceylon? What are its extent and population? Under what government is it? What is the capital? For what is the island celebrated? What missionary stations here?



View of a Pagoda at Rangoon.

FARTHER INDIA, OR CHIN INDIA.

Extent, 850,000 sq. miles—Pop. 30,000,000—35 per sq. mile

Farther India extends from Thibet and China on the north, to the straits of Malacca on the south, and from the bay of Bengal on the west, to the China sea on the east. It comprehends Assam, Burmah, and Malacca on the north, the west, and the south; Siam is in the central parts; and the empire of Anam, or Tonkin, in the eastern, including Tonkin, Cochín China, Cambodia, and Laos.

There is a great variety of surface, soil, and climate. There are extensive ranges of mountains, with intermediate fertile valleys. The rivers and streams are numerous, and inundations are frequent. So warm is the climate, that where the lands are sufficiently watered, the vegetation is most luxuriant; the trees are tall and majestic, and the fruits and flowers yield a delightful fragrance. When seasonable rains are wanting, the fields are quickly parched, vegetation is withered and the country appears desolate.

The Birman is the most powerful empire in Farther India. It is about 1,200 miles long, embraces seven provinces, and its population may be estimated at about 12,000,000. It is a hilly country, and the climate is temperate and healthy, compared with that of Hindoostan. The soil is rich in grain and tropical fruits. It abounds in Teak timber, or Indian oak, which is unrivalled for durability, and for its adaptedness to ship building.

The Irrawaddy is the principal river. Ava, on the Irrawaddy, 400 miles from its mouth, was the ancient capital. Ummerrapoora, about four miles distant, is the present capital. Rangoon is the chief port, and the only one in the empire where European traders are admitted. It is 30 miles above the mouth of the Irrawaddy. The Birmans, unlike the Hindoos, are active and intelligent. Their government is very despotic, and their modes of punishing criminals are notoriously cruel and horrid. They are idolaters; the Atheistical worshippers of Buddha or Gaudama. An American Baptist Mission is established in this country, whose history has excited great interest.

This is the region of elephants; and so great is the respect in which they are held, that near the palace of the emperor may be seen a majestic and beautiful white elephant, which he has adopted as a kind of prime minister, being gorgeously apparelled, living in luxury, and habitually receiving the homage of the populace, and rich presents from foreign ambassadors.

The kingdom of Assam is on the north west, between Thibet and Hindoostan. It is watered and fertilized by the Burram-pooter, by which river it has communication with Bengal. It is a very unhealthy country, but is rich in gold, ivory, silk, cotton, and pepper. Population 1,800,000. Since the late war, Assam has become independent of Burmah.

The peninsula of Malacca, which contains 93,000 square miles, is connected with Siam by the Isthmus of Kraw. It is traversed by lofty mountains, and in a great degree overspread with forests and marshes. The people are called Malays. They are a lawless and ferocious race, and known through all the coasts of eastern Asia, as merciless and fearless pirates. The Malay language is very extensively spoken, and is remarkable for its softness and melody. The capital city is Malacca, where an Anglo-Chinese college is established, and an important English mission is located.

Siam is a kingdom north of Malacca, and next east of Burmah. It consists chiefly of a pleasant and fruitful valley, watered by the river Meinam, which empties into the Gulf of Siam, and is said to abound in crocodiles of a monstrous size. Rice, sugar cane, the tamarind, the pine apple, and the banana, are found in great plenty. The elephant, rhinoceros, tiger, and other wild animals, range in the forests of the neighboring mountains. White elephants are held by the people in peculiar veneration, as it is a common belief that the souls of their kings, at death, migrate into the bodies of those animals. The Sia-

mese, in religion and general character, resemble the Birmans. Bangkok is the capital city. Population 400,000.

Tonkin, around the head of the Gulf of the same name, is 350 miles long and 200 broad. It is separated from China by a lofty chain of mountains, covered with impenetrable forests. It is a flat, fertile country, thickly populated. The religion of the inhabitants is similar to that of the Chinese.

Cochin China, south of Tonkin, is a narrow plain, 400 miles in length, between the sea on the east and a chain of mountains on the west. The soil is very fertile, and yields an abundance of rice, sugar, and other tropical productions. The people are of Chinese origin and religion. They are peculiarly courteous to European traders, and remarkable for their commercial activity and enterprise. They export to China vast quantities of sugar, spices, drugs, and gold.

Cambodia, or Camboja, south of Cochin China, has a similar soil. It is watered by the river Cambodia, which is two miles wide, and very deep. Its fields are rich with harvests of rice; its mountains abound in gold and precious stones, and its forests in tigers and elephants. The people have little intercourse with other nations, and the geography of the country is very imperfectly known.

Laos is north of Cambodia, and west of Cochin China and Tonkin. It abounds in gold, gum lac, ivory, rubies, and pearls. The inhabitants are said to be mild and inoffensive, and employed principally in hunting and fishing. The Chinese and Tonquinese are the chief conductors of the trade.

The new empire of Annam, which occupies the eastern section of Farther India, comprehends Cochin China, Tonkin, and a part of Cambodia. It is 1,000 miles in length, and embraces about 135,000 square miles, and ten millions of inhabitants. The government is despotic. The chief instrument in its administration is the rod, which is applied with severity. The emperor is always attended by a guard of 30,000 men. The ordinary force of the empire consists of 350,000 troops and 800 elephants. There is no established religion. The priests are few, and command but little respect. The temples are unfrequented, and falling to ruins. The common people are worshippers of Buddha, or Fohi; and the worship of the dead, as in China, here assumes a systematic form. The capital is Hue. Saigon is a large city, with a population of 150,000.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Farther India, or India beyond the Ganges? Its extent and population? What countries does it comprehend? Describe the face of

the country. What is the climate? What is the most powerful empire in this region? How many provinces does it now embrace? What are the length and population of Burmah? What is its climate? Its soil? What valuable timber does it produce? What is the principal river? Where is Ava the ancient capital? What is the present capital? Where is it situated? What is the chief port and the only one where Europeans are allowed to trade? What is the character of the Birmans? Give some account of their government and religion. What Christian mission is established here? How are elephants regarded here? Where is the kingdom of Assam? By what river is it watered? What are its climate and productions? What peninsula is on the south? What are the people of Malacca called? What is their character? For what is the Malay language remarkable? What is the capital? What college and mission are established there? What strait between Malacca and Sumatra? What isthmus connects Malacca with Siam on the north? Of what does Siam consist? By what river fertilized? Where does it empty? What are the productions? What animals in the mountains? Why are white elephants particularly venerated? What are the religion and character of the Siamese? What is the capital? Where is Tonkin? What are its length and breadth? What is the face of the country? What is the religion of the inhabitants? Which way from Tonkin is Cochin China? Describe the face of the country. What are the soil and productions? What is the origin of the people? For what are they remarkable? What are their exports to China? Where is the country of Cambodia? By what river is it watered? What are its productions? In what animals do its forests abound? Where is Laos? In what does it abound? What are the character and occupation of the inhabitants? What large empire occupies the eastern section of Farther India? What are its principal provinces? Where does the river Cambodia empty? What is the extent of the empire of Annam? Its population? Its government? Its religion?



Funeral Ceremonies of the Chinese.

CHINESE EMPIRE.

Extent 5,000,000 sq. miles—Pop. 350,000,000—70 per sq. mile.

This empire comprehends China, Chinese Tartary, and Tibet, with some smaller territories. It extends more than 3,000

miles from east to west, and more than 2,000 miles from north to south, and embraces a far greater population than any other empire on the globe.

CHINA.

PART FIRST.

Extent, 1,500,000 sq. miles—Pop.* 300,000,000—200 per sq. mile.

China is about as large as three fourths of the whole territory of the United States, and its population, according to the most authentic information, is more than twenty times as great, and nearly equal to one third of the population of the world. It is divided into 18 provinces. China, for the most part, is a plain country, or moderately diversified. The western and south western parts are mountainous.

The climate is various. In the south it is peculiarly hot, and at Peking, on the north, it is very cold for the latitude. China embraces almost every kind of soil, and an extensive variety of productions, so that her wants may be supplied chiefly from her own resources. Rice is the most common article of culture, and the principal support of the people. The tea plant and the mulberry tree are very extensively cultivated. Wheat and barley are raised in the north. The camphor tree and tallow tree are found in the forests. Large quantities of silk are produced. Agriculture is industriously and skilfully conducted. All the improveable land is made to contribute in some way to the sustenance of the population. Even the steep sides of the mountains are cultivated, being divided into terraces, where the plants are ingeniously watered by means of chain pumps. Hogs and other domestic animals are numerous, and poultry is very abundant, especially ducks.

The Chinese excel in many manufactures, particularly in silks, satins, cottons, porcelain, and ornamental articles.

The internal navigation of the empire is unrivalled. The numerous rivers are connected by canals of various dimensions, so that there is a general circulation of boats and barges over the country, conveying passengers, and interchanging the products of the different provinces of the empire. The imperial canal, 500 miles long, from Peking to the river Kiang-ku, is one of the greatest works of the kind in the world. By means of it,

* The population of China, according to the official returns to the government, which, in the opinion of Dr. Morrison, are deserving of full credit, is 338 millions; a population not greater by the square mile, however, than that of England.

an almost uninterrupted water communication of 1,500 miles in length is opened between Peking and Canton.

The artificial curiosities of the Chinese, and the monuments of their national industry, are truly astonishing. They have mountains raised by art and crowned with temples and other edifices. Their triumphal arches are magnificent and beautiful, and erected with vast labor and expense. They have bridges constructed principally of massy chains, interwoven with incredible firmness, and extending from mountain to mountain. The great wall on the north, between China and Tartary, is particularly celebrated. It was built about 2,000 years ago, as a rampart against the Tartars. It extends 1,500 miles, over rivers, valleys, and mountains, being generally 25 feet in height, surmounted with numerous towers, and it is said to be broad enough at the top for six horsemen to ride abreast.



Chinese Wall.

The Chinese are of the middle size, of a yellow complexion, with square, broad faces, small black eyes, and short noses. The beauty of the females depends essentially upon the smallness of their eyes and feet. The Chinese have a genius rather for imitation than for invention. They are patiently and perseveringly industrious, very temperate, of a mild disposition; but generally destitute of truth and honesty, and notorious for their skill in cheating. The dress and modes of living of the different ranks and classes are in a great measure regulated by law, and the fashions change but little from age to age.

Their language is very singular, both the written, and the

spoken. The written language consists of eighty thousand hieroglyphical or symbolical characters, or pictures. These are reducible to 21 radicals, each one being designed to represent a particular word, or idea. Their vernacular, or spoken language, consists only of about 330 words, all of one syllable; but each word has a great variety of significations, according to the very different ways of pronouncing it.

The Chinese, compared with Europeans, have made no figure in true learning and science; yet learning is highly venerated among them. They have many books, on a great variety of subjects. Their most learned men are called mandarins, and they are the only nobility in the realm. They are of nine different orders, and are employed in the administration of government. Any individual, by acquiring learning sufficient, may become a mandarin, or a noble, even of the first rank. The priests are exceedingly numerous. The common religion is gross idolatry, consisting in the worship of the supreme idol Fohi, or of Buddha, and other inferior divinities. Some of the inhabitants are Mohammedans. A kind of adoration is paid, especially by the learned, to the departed spirit of their great ancient philosopher Confucius, and to the manes of their ancestors. The government is patriarchal, but despotic. It is connected with all the pompous forms and ceremonies of oriental despotism. The emperor assumes blasphemous titles, and requires of his subjects little less than divine honors. He is styled "Holy Son of Heaven, Sole Ruler of the Earth, Great Father of his people." The officers of his court bend the knee before him, and listen to his commands in profound silence and obsequiousness. When he rides abroad, an army of 2,000 men must escort him; the houses and shops must be closed before he passes, and the populace who meet him must take care, as they value life, to be in the attitude of prostration.

The cities of China are large and numerous, but of many of them little is known, because foreigners are not admitted within their walls. It is said to contain nearly 2,000 walled cities, the chief of which are Pekin, Nankin, Canton, Vout-chang-fou, Hang Cheou, and Sin-gan-fou. It also embraces about 1,200 fortresses, 2,800 temples, and 32 imperial palaces.

QUESTIONS.

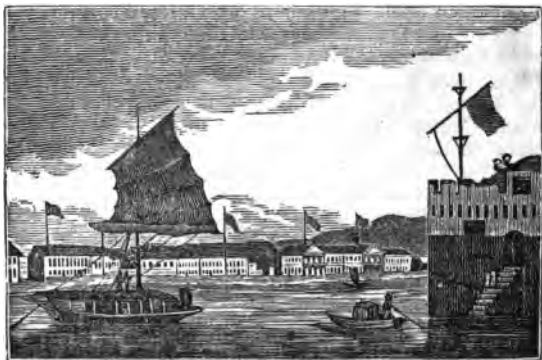
What are the extent and population of the whole Chinese empire? What countries are included in it? What are the extent and population of China Proper? What are they compared with those of the United States? Into how many provinces is it divided? What is the face of the country? The climate? What are the productions? What is the state of agriculture? Of manufactures? What are the facilities for navigation? Mention some of the artificial curiosities of the Chinese. Describe the Chinese wall. Describe the persons of the Chinese. Their character.

What is said of their language? What is the state of learning? What are the learned men called? What is the religion of the Chinese? What is the name of their great idol? What is the name of their most celebrated philosopher? What is the government? How is the emperor styled? In what manner is he treated by the people? Why is little known of the Chinese cities? What are the principal cities?

CHINA.

PART SECOND

Pekin is the residence of the emperor, and the metropolis of the whole empire. It is accounted one of the most populous cities in the world, though not the most magnificent. It is on a fertile and beautiful plain, about 40 miles from the great wall. It is an oblong square, 16 miles in circumference, and is surrounded by a wall 60 feet in height, and broad enough at the top for sentinels to be stationed on horseback. The walls of the city are crowned with towers, and furnished with nine lofty gates, of magnificent appearance. Peking is divided into two parts, one called the Tartar, and the other the Chinese city. The main streets are four miles long, broad, straight, and clean, and



View of Canton.

cross each other at right angles. The houses are low, with flat roofs. Along the principal streets are regular rows of shops, painted green, or sky blue, intermixed with gold, and making an elegant display of silks, porcelain, and other rich varieties of Chinese merchandise. The imperial palace is grand beyond description. Its numerous buildings, its parks and gardens,

adorned with artificial mountains, valleys, lakes, and canals, where boats of pleasure pass, and various scenes of entertainment are exhibited, constitute of themselves a small city. Population of Pekin 1,500,000.

Canton is about 1,000 miles south of Pekin, and situated upon Canton river. By means of this river, the great Kiang-ku, and the imperial canal, a water communication between these two cities is established, which is interrupted only by one range of mountains, which may be travelled over in a day. The suburbs of Canton are very extensive, and the river for four or five miles is covered with innumerable boats, in which multitudes of families reside permanently, and seldom go to the land. The streets are narrow, but well paved, and continually thronged. The houses generally are of one story, and built of brick, without windows towards the streets. There are numerous towers and triumphal arches, and pagodas amply furnished with idols. Conspicuous among them is a lofty Mohammedan mosque, which has been standing 1,000 years. This is the greatest port in China, and the only one where European traders are admitted. Five thousand vessels frequently lie before the city, and thirty million pounds of tea have been exported in a year, besides vast quantities of silk, nankeen, China ware, tortoise shell, and other merchandise. Population 800,000.

Nankin, once the imperial city, is situated on the Kiang-ku, the largest river in the empire, about half way between Pekin and Canton. It is 30 miles in circumference. It has an extensive commerce, but is particularly distinguished for its manufactures of silk, and as the seat of learning. It is ornamented with lofty and splendid gates, and especially by a porcelain tower, or pagoda, of an octagonal form, nine stories high, and mounted by 800 steps. Population 800,000. Macao is a town belonging to the Portuguese, in the bay of Canton, 60 miles below the city.

The islands of Formosa on the south east, and Hainan on the south belong in part to China. The large peninsula of Corea also belongs to the Chinese government, and is inhabited by a people resembling the Chinese in character and manners. It is a fertile and populous region, especially the southern part. It contains 88,000 square miles, and eight millions of people. It is divided into eight provinces, embracing 33 grand cities, and 128 of inferior rank. Kingkitao is the capital.

QUESTIONS.

Where is Pekin? What is its latitude? What large city in the United States is on the same parallel? What is its shape? Its circumference? Describe its walls.

How is the city divided? Describe its appearance. Describe the imperial palace. What is the population of Pekin? Where is Canton? What water communication between this city and Pekin? Describe the suburbs of Canton. What public building is here conspicuous? For what is its port remarkable? What are the principal exports? What is its population? Where is Nankin? What is its circumference? For what is it distinguished? How is the city ornamented? What is the population? What town belonging to the Portuguese in the bay of Canton? What islands on the south east and south belong partly to China? What large peninsula belongs to China? How many square miles does it contain? What is its population? Into how many provinces is it divided? How many cities does it contain? What is the capital?

CHINESE TARTARY.

Extent 2,000,000 sq. miles—Pop. 6,000,000—3 per sq. mile.

Chinese Tartary is about as large as the whole of the United States, but contains not more than half as great a population. It constitutes a principal part of the elevated, central region of Asia, and consists chiefly of cold, unproductive table lands, and includes the immense desert of Cobi, or Shamo. It has the Altaian mountains on the north, and the Belur Tag and Him-maleh on the west. The eastern section of Chinese Tartary is called Mantchooria, and occupied by the Mantchoos, who were originally Mongul Tartars, but have some degree of civilization, many of them residing in towns and villages, and resembling the Chinese in dress, manners, and religion.

The middle section is Mongolia, the proper country of the Monguls, or Mongul Tartars, who are a barbarous people, living a wandering pastoral life, lodging in tents of felt, professing Shamanism, or the worship of Fohi, and are governed by numerous petty princes, tributary to China. The western section is divided into Soongaria, the country of the Kalmuks, and Little Bucharia. The Kalmuks are roving tribes, supported by hunting and pasturage. The inhabitants of Little Bucharia, are Tartars, who are either Mohammedans, or worshippers of the Grand Lama. The principal cities in Chinese Tartary, are Seghalien and Chin-yang, on the east, and Yarkund and Cashgar on the west.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent and population of Chinese Tartary? How is it bounded? Of what region in Asia does it constitute a principal part? Describe the face of the country. By what mountains is it bordered? What name is given to the eastern section? By whom is it inhabited? Describe the Mantchoos. What is the middle section called? By whom is it inhabited? Describe the Monguls. How is the western section divided? Who are the inhabitants of Soongaria? Who inhabit Little Bucharia? What are the principal cities of Chinese Tartary?

THIBET.

Extent, 400,000 sq. miles—Pop. 12,000,000—30 per sq. mile.

Thibet constitutes a part of the Chinese empire. It is situated between the Himmaleh mountains on the south, which divide it from Hindoostan, and the Great Desert of Cobi, or Shamo, on the north, and extends from Little Thibet, on the west, to China, on the east. It is a territory three times as large as the island of Great Britain, with a population about equal to that of the United States. It is the centre and summit of the Asiatic highlands, consisting of mountains, elevated plains, and deserts.

The atmosphere is dry and pure, and the climate uniformly cold and salubrious. Wheat and barley are produced in small quantities. There is but little vegetation and verdure, except in the rainy season, between May and September. Then the pastures in some districts are covered with numerous flocks and herds. The wool of the goat of Thibet is particularly celebrated. The Thibet ox is noted for the soft, glossy hair it produces, which is a favorite article with the merchants of Asia.

The mineral treasures are abundant, consisting of gold, silver, quicksilver, and copper. The Thibetians are a mild race of Tartars, and are worshippers of the Dalai Lama, or Grand Lama, who resides, and has his throne here. He is supposed to be inspired by the supreme god La or Fohi, and commissioned by him as his sovereign pontiff, or vicerent upon earth. It is believed that he is immortal, and that when he appears to fail and die under infirmity, his soul merely relinquishes a worn out habitation, and passes into another, new and vigorous, in the person of some infant of sacerdotal birth, whom the priests, by certain marks, pretend to be able to discover. Among the Thibetians, the Grand Lama is regarded as king, as well as an object of worship. He is also highly venerated in Hindoostan, and is acknowledged as an object of adoration throughout the Chinese empire, in a part of Siberia, and other portions of Asia; so that multitudes from distant parts go as pilgrims to his seat, and pay their offerings and homage at his shrine. The emperor of China, however, considers the people of Thibet as politically dependent on himself, and receives their tribute.

The capital is Lassa, where the viceroy from China resides. Within about seven miles of this city, at Patoli, on a mountain near the banks of the Burrampooter, stands the Grand Lama's palace, or temple, which is decorated with pyramids of gold, and am-

ply furnished through all its apartments, with splendid images and idols. The priests, called lamas, are almost numberless, and of different ranks and orders. There are twelve distinguished seminaries in Thibet, where instruction is given in astronomy, philosophy, theology, and medicine.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent and population of Thibet? How is it bounded? What is the extent compared with that of Great Britain? What is the population compared with that of England? Describe the face of the country. What is the climate? What are the productions? What celebrated wool is produced here? For what is the Thibet ox noted? Who are the Thibetians? What is their religion? What views do they entertain of the Grand Lama? To whom are the Thibetians tributary? What is the capital? How far from it is Patoli? On what river? What noted palace stands there? Describe it. What is said of the priests? What is the name and height of the highest peak of the Himmaleh?

EMPIRE OF JAPAN.

Extent, 260,000 sq. miles—Pop. 45,000,000—173 per sq. mile.

This is one of the most remarkable empires in the world, both in respect to the nature of the country, and the genius and character of the population. The empire consists of the three islands Nippon, Kiusiu, and Sikoke, with numerous smaller isles adjacent. The general surface of the islands is very broken, hilly, and mountainous, exhibiting lofty summits covered with perpetual snow, and intervening valleys of great fertility. The coasts are abrupt, rocky, and full of precipices; and the surrounding waters are filled with quicksands and whirlpools, and often agitated by violent storms, rendering all access difficult and dangerous. So frequent upon the islands are earthquakes and volcanic eruptions, that, though often very desolating, they have ceased in a great measure to move or frighten the natives, who have become inured to such scenes.

The soil and productions are similar to those of China, and agriculture is patronized and skilfully conducted. Rice is a general crop and the common food of the people. The tea shrub, the mulberry, laurel, and camphor trees, are found in abundance. Here is also the varnish tree, which is peculiar to these islands, and of the juice of which the celebrated Japan varnish is made. With this the people polish their plates, dishes, and household furniture generally. It gives them a very cleanly and brilliant appearance. The islands are very rich in minerals, especially in gold, silver, and copper.

The inhabitants resemble the Chinese in their persons and dress. They are remarkably ingenious and diligent in agricul-

ture and in their manufactures, which are, most of them, excellent, and some of them unequalled.

The government is absolute and despotic, but is generally regulated consistently with the public welfare. The laws are not numerous, but severe, and executed with impartiality. It is said that crimes are rare, and that obedience to parents, respect to superiors, and general subjection to the laws, are characteristics of this people. They have two emperors, a secular and a spiritual. The latter, called the Dairo, formerly held the supreme power, but his influence and dominion have been greatly reduced, and the secular emperor now predominates. He lives in wealth and splendor. The Japanese, like the people of China, are grossly idolatrous and superstitious, and obstinately set against the innovations of Christianity.

Jeddo, on the island of Nippon, is the capital of the empire, and one of the most populous and magnificent cities in Asia. In the centre is the splendid palace of the emperor, surrounded with walls, castles, and gardens of great extent and beauty. There are also numerous palaces of the princes and nobles, who are required by the emperor to make this city their residence at least half of the year. The circumference of Jeddo is twenty miles. Its commerce and manufactures are extensive and flourishing. Population 1,500,000.

Meaco, on the same island, is also a great city. It was, anciently, the metropolis of the empire. The Dairo, or spiritual sovereign, still holds his residence here, and it is the seat of learning, science, and idolatrous superstition. The city is situated in a large plain, enclosed by mountains, regularly laid out in gardens, well watered, and interspersed with splendid temples and monasteries. It is distinguished for commerce, and its manufactures are rich and fine. Population 500,000. Nangasaki, on the island of Kiusiu, is a large sea port, distinguished as the only one in the empire, at which the Dutch are permitted to trade. Their restrictions are severe, and all other Europeans are entirely rejected from the islands. The large island of Jesso is chiefly inhabited by the Ainos or Wild Kuriles, who have been subdued by the Japanese.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent and population of the empire of Japan? In what respects is it remarkable? What islands does it consist of? In what direction are they from China and from Hindoostan? What sea and strait bound them on the west? What strait between Nippon and Jesso? What is the general surface of Japan? Describe the coasts and surrounding waters. How frequent are earthquakes and volcanic eruptions? What are the soil and productions? What is the state of agriculture? What is the common food of the people? What trees and shrubs abound here?

What use is made of the juice of the varnish tree? In what minerals are the islands especially rich? What other nation do the inhabitants resemble in person and dress? What is the government? Give some account of their laws. What two emperors have they? What is the capital of the empire? On what island is it? Describe the city. What other great city? What emperor resides at Meaco? Of what is it the seat? For what distinguished? What is the only port where the Dutch are permitted to trade? Who inhabit the island of Jesso? To whom are they now subject?

RUSSIA IN ASIA, OR SIBERIA.

Extent, 5,000,000 sq. miles—Pop. 5,000,000—1 per sq. mile.

This vast region extends from the Altaian and Caucasian ranges of mountains on the south, to the Arctic ocean on the north, and from the Ural mountains on the west, to the Pacific ocean on the east. Its length from east to west is about 4,000 miles, and its average breadth about 1,500. It is as large as the whole Chinese empire, and nearly three times as extensive as Russia in Europe; but the population is extremely small in proportion to the extent of territory.

It is generally an alluvial, level country, consisting of immense planes or steppes, traversed by several large rivers, flowing to the Northern ocean, and embracing deserts, impenetrable marshes, and numerous salt lakes. The most extensive steppes are in the south-western section. Along the shores of the Arctic ocean, there are marshy, mossy plains of frozen mud, or tracts covered with perpetual ice and snow. On the east are the mountains of Stannavoy, and another chain which traverses the peninsula of Kamschatka.

The climate is proverbially cold and inhospitable. The winter is long and severe. The summer commences suddenly, and is short and scorching. The soil is sterile. The more northern regions are entirely incapable of cultivation.

The native tribes which inhabit Siberia, are various. Those most deserving of notice, are first, the Tartars, who occupy the more southern parts, and bear different names, viz. Kalmuks, Monguls, Tongusians, and Mantchoos. Second, the Samoiedes in the frozen regions of the north, who appear to be of the same race with the Laplanders of Europe, and the Esquimaux of America. They are mean and filthy in personal appearance, and in character ignorant, superstitious, and idolatrous. Third, the Ostirks, who inhabit the more central parts. They are in gross ignorance, clothed with skins and furs, and subsist by fishing and hunting. Fourth, the Kamschadales, the inhabitants of Kamschatka, who resemble the Samoiedes, living upon fish, in cabins half under ground, and occasionally travelling about in sledges drawn by dogs.

Kamschatka is a peninsula, 600 miles long, and separated from America by Beering's strait, which is 40 miles wide. The mountains of this peninsula are lofty, majestic, and always covered with snow. Some of them are remarkable as volcanoes.

The prevailing forms of religion in Siberia are grossly idolatrous. Buddha and the Grand Lama are extensively worshipped. The numerous tribes are tributary to the Russian government.

The city of Tobolsk on the Irtysh, is the capital of Western Siberia. Three fourths of the inhabitants are Russians, either exiles or the descendants of exiles; the rest are Tartars. This place is about 1,200 miles east of St. Petersburg, and is the grand thoroughfare of the caravans, passing to and from China. Population 20,000.

Irkutsk is the capital of Eastern Siberia. It is situated near lake Baikal, and is a flourishing city; a great place of deposit for furs, and the centre of an extensive trade with America and China. Population 12,900. Yakutsk, on the Lena, is the most northern town, and Okotsk the principal port of Eastern Siberia. The latter is the great medium of trade between America and Kamschatka.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent and population of Siberia? How is it bounded? To what latitude does it extend on the north? To what on the south? Through how many degrees of longitude does it extend? What are its length and breadth? What mountains border it on the west? On the south? On the east? What are the three principal rivers? Where do they empty? What large island on the north-west? How large is Siberia compared with the Chinese empire and with Russia in Europe? What number of inhabitants has it to a square mile? What is the face of the country? Where are the most extensive steppes? Describe the country along the shores of the Arctic ocean. What mountains on the east? What is the climate? Who inhabit the southern parts? The frozen regions? The central parts? Describe the Kamschadales. How long is the peninsula of Kamschatka? Give some account of its mountains. What is the religion of Siberia? To what government are the various tribes tributary? What is the capital of Western Siberia? Give some account of it. What is the capital of Eastern Siberia? Give some account of it. What is the most northern town of Eastern Siberia? What is the principal port?

INDEPENDENT TARTARY.

Extent, 700,000 sq. miles—Pop. 5,000,000—7 per sq. mile.

Independent Tartary is a large, but thinly settled country, lying between the Caspian sea and Chinese Tartary. The surface is level, diversified, or mountainous. The climate is warm, dry, and pleasant. The soil is in some parts barren; but in the western parts, and along the shores of the Caspian, tolerably fertile.

It is inhabited by various tribes of Mohammedan Tartars, generally barbarous, and of a roving, predatory character. The Kirghises occupy the northern part, especially the wide uncultivated plains east of the sea of Aral. They subsist in a great measure upon their flocks and herds. The Usbecks are the ruling people in the southern portions. They also lead a pastoral life, but reside a part of the year in towns and villages, and are considerably advanced in civilization. Many of the inhabitants of Tartary have large possessions in horses, sheep, goats, and camels. Agriculture is little attended to. Manufactures receive some attention. The people are in a state of independence, and not accustomed to pay tribute.

This is the native country and was the favorite residence of Tamerlane, the great conqueror of Asia in the fourteenth century. Samarcand, on the river Sogd, was the seat of his vast empire, and was enriched by him with the spoils of India and of the eastern world. It was also renowned as a seat of Mohammedan learning, and has still an astronomical observatory. It is the modern capital. Bukharia, on the same river, is a great and populous city. It is distinguished as a place for the study of the Mohammedan law. The inhabitants are in a measure civilized. There are here some manufactures; but the commerce has declined. Population 100,000. Khojund and Koukan, on the Sihon, have a considerable population and are distinguished for the beauty and healthfulness of their situation.

QUESTIONS.

How many square miles and inhabitants in Independent Tartary? What are its boundaries? What mountains on the east divide it from Chinese Tartary? What large sea on the west? What sea in the interior? What three principal rivers flow into the sea of Aral? What is the surface? The climate? The soil? By what tribes is it inhabited? What parts are occupied by the Kirghises? How do they subsist? What parts by the Usbecks? Give some account of the Usbecks. What is the state of agriculture and manufactures? Are the people of Tartary independent? What great conqueror had his birth and the seat of his empire in this country? What was his capital city? By what was it enriched? For what renowned? What is the modern capital? On what river is Bukharia? Give some account of it. What two cities on the Sihon? For what are they distinguished?

AFRICA.

Extent, 12,000,000 sq. miles—Pop. 100,000,000—9 per sq. mile.

INTRODUCTORY QUESTIONS.

See the Map.

In what direction is Africa from America? From Europe? From Asia? By what waters is it bounded on the north? North-east? East? South? West? What is the most northern cape? The most southern? The most eastern? The most western? On which side of the equator does the greater part of Africa lie? In what zone? Between what degrees of latitude and longitude? Ans. Between 37° north and 35° south latitude; and between 18° west and 51° east longitude. Is Africa an island or peninsula? What isthmus connects it with Asia? How wide is this isthmus? Ans. About sixty miles. What strait divides Africa from Spain? What strait between Africa and Arabia? What large island on the south east coast of Africa? By what channel are they separated? What other islands off that coast? Which way from the Cape of Good Hope is the island of St. Helena? What two islands north-west of St. Helena? What islands in the Gulf of Guinea? Where are the gulfs of Benin and Biafra? What capes south of Guinea? What cluster of isles between Sierra Leone and the mouth of the river Gambia? What cluster west of Cape Verd? Where is Cape Blanco? Which way from Cape Verd are the Canary isles? What are the names of some of them? Which way from Morocco is the island of Madeira? Which way from the straits of Gibraltar are the Azores?

What is the length of Africa from Cape Sena to the Cape of Good Hope? Ans. About 4,500 miles. What its greatest breadth from Cape Verd to Cape Guardafui? Ans. About 4,000 miles. What number of square miles and inhabitants does it contain? What is the size of Africa compared with that of Europe? Of South America? Of North America? Of Asia? What is the population compared with that of Asia? Of Europe? Of America? What six countries in Africa border on the Mediterranean? What three border on the Red Sea? What countries border on the Indian Ocean? What countries in South Africa, or south of the Tropic? What countries on the western coast between the Tropic of Capricorn and Cape Verd? What are the divisions of Central Africa between Senegambia and Abyssinia? What vast desert extends from the Atlantic Ocean to Egypt and Nubia? What are the boundaries of Morocco? Of Algiers? Of Tunis? Of Tripoli? Of Barca? Of Egypt? Of Nubia? Of Abyssinia? Of Adel or Magadoxa? Of Zanguebar? Of Mozambique? Of Monomotapa? Of Caffraria? Of Cape Colony? Of the Hottentot country? Of Zimbebas? Of Benguela? Of Congo, including Angola? Where is Loango? Biafra? What are the boundaries of Upper or Western Guinea? Of Senegambia? Of Soudan or Nigritia? Of Darfur? Of the Desert of Sahara? Which is the most obscure or unexplored region in Africa? Ans. That vast interior between the Mountains of the Moon and South Africa, or the Tropic of Capricorn.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART FIRST.

MOUNTAINS—RIVERS—LAKES.

Africa in extent is the second grand division of the globe. It is distinguished for its situation beneath the direct and powerful influence of a tropical sun; for the heat of its climate; for its immense sandy deserts; for the multitude, and monstrous

size of its noxious animals and reptiles ; the ignorance and barbarism of its inhabitants ; and for the obscurity which conceals large portions of it from the civilized world.

The geography of Africa has always been involved in peculiar darkness. The most learned of the ancients could speak of it only from vague report or in the mystery of fable. The expeditions of modern travellers with a view to explore its vast central regions, have in general proved disastrous, either from the sultriness of the climate, or the barbarism and perfidiousness of the people : so that comparatively little definite knowledge has as yet been obtained concerning this quarter of the globe, except of the more maritime parts.

The three principal ranges of mountains, are the Atlas, the Jibbel Kumri, or Mountains of the Moon, and the mountains of Kong. The Atlas chain is in the northern part, and extends from the Atlantic ocean, in an eastern direction, through the states of Barbary, separating the more fertile portions of Barbary from the sandy regions bordering on the Great Desert. Its greatest heights, which are along the eastern boundary of Morocco, are elevated more than 13,000 feet, and covered with perpetual snow. The Atlas stretches half across the entire country. Its elevations gradually diminish from Morocco towards the east.

The Mountains of the Moon, called by the natives Jibbel Kumri, are in Central Africa, extending east and west, south of Abyssinia and Darfur. They are considered the highest mountains in Africa. In them is the source of the Nile and of other large rivers, of which little is known by geographers. The mountains of Kong are in the western part of Central Africa. The principal rivers with which we are acquainted are the Nile, the Niger or Quorra, the Tchadda, the Senegal, the Gambia, and the Congo or Zaire.

The Nile is more than 2,000 miles in length. For the last 1,000 miles it receives no branches. Its banks are high and mountainous through Nubia and Upper Egypt, where its waters are often raised from their deep bed by artificial means, to fertilize a narrow belt of land, about a mile in width, along the borders of the river. But in Lower Egypt, called the Delta, in the summer months it periodically overflows its banks, rising thirty feet, and spreading fertility over all the adjacent plains, while it distributes its waters into numberless canals, and passes into the sea by several mouths.

The great river Niger, rises in the mountains of Kong. After running an easterly course till it passes near the city

of Timbuctoo, it turns towards the south, passing the cities of Yaoorie and Boossa, and many other populous towns and villages. Having received near the latitude of 8° the large tributary stream Tchadda, from lake T Chad, it proceeds in a southern direction, and empties into the Gulf of Guinea, by several mouths, the principal of which are called the Benin or Formosa, the Nun, and the New Calabar rivers. The final course and termination of the Niger were discovered in 1830, by Richard and John Lander, two English gentlemen, who sailed down the river from the city of Yaoorie to the mouth of the Nun, near Cape Formosa. In this happy result of their adventure, they have decided an important geographical question, which had long been agitated, but till then never solved by Europeans.

This river, as surveyed by the Landers in the rainy season, is a magnificent stream, from one to five miles in width, traversing a fertile and extensively cultivated region, and interspersed with many interesting islands, while numerous towns and market places are found on its borders, and a vast multitude of the long canoes of the natives are plying up and down upon its waters. The stream is infested with crocodiles and river horses; and its navigation is rendered dangerous in the dry season, by the numerous rocks and sand banks near the surface. It is, however, practicable for a steamboat, in the rainy months, to ascend the river, 400 or 500 miles. It is expected, that, by this means, a communication will soon be effectually opened by Europeans into the interior of Africa, with a view to commence a profitable trade with the natives, and to further the great work of their civilization.

The number of people residing within the basin of this river is estimated at more than 25 millions. The large river Tchadda issues from lake T Chad, and runs a south-westerly course, till it forms a junction with the Niger, at the town of Cuttum-currafee. It is described as being two or three miles wide at its mouth. Other rivers farther east, are represented by the natives as proceeding from lake T Chad, toward the south, and it is conjectured that they are tributary waters of the Congo.

QUESTIONS.

Which is the second grand division of the globe in size? For what is Africa distinguished? What has always been the state of geographical knowledge respecting Africa? What are the chief mountains of Africa? Where is the Atlas chain and which way does it extend? What part of it is the highest? How high? Where are the highest mountains in Africa? By what names are they called? Where are the mountains of Kong? What are the names of the principal rivers? Where does the Nile rise? Describe the Nile. Where does the river Niger rise? Describe its course. Where does it empty? What large branch does it receive from Lake T Chad? When and by what Europeans was the termination of the Niger first dis-

covered? Give some account of the stream. Where does the Tchadda rise? What course does it run? How wide is it at its mouth? In what part of Africa is Lake Tchad? Are any other rivers said to flow from it? Where is Lake Dibbi? Lake Dembea?



Boa Constrictor.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART SECOND.

CLIMATE—SOIL—VEGETABLE AND ANIMAL PRODUCTIONS.

As Africa lies chiefly within or near the torrid zone, it is more exposed to the intensity of the sun's rays, than any other portion of the world of equal extent. Most of the inhabitants often behold the sun at noon almost or directly over their heads, and its effects upon them and upon the earth, are penetrating and powerful. Thus the climate is pestilential, especially to strangers, who often perish under its influence. The sea breezes which are so refreshing to islands within the tropics, are here but little felt.

The surface in many parts, is so spread out into extensive plains, as to be often destitute of rivers or rivulets to cool and moisten the soil. About one third or half of Africa, is reduced by the heat to moveable barren sands, or is so baked and hardened, as not to be susceptible of cultivation. But in those parts where the surface is variegated with mountains, hills, and valleys, and watered by larger and smaller streams, the soil is extremely

luxuriant, and the profusion of vegetable and animal life is very great, and often excessive and noxious.

There are but two seasons throughout the most of Africa, the wet and the dry. For several months during our winter and spring, there is little or no rain. The weather is uniformly fair, and the sun shines bright and with oppressive, scorching heat, drying up many of the rivers and fountains, and desolating fields and forests. But early in the summer season, the windows of heaven are opened, and the rains descend frequently, and in torrents, for several months, when the streams overflow their banks, which are thus fertilized, and a new and delightful aspect is given to the face of nature. The plains resume their verdure, and the trees of the wood are dressed in all their pride.

The most important vegetables cultivated in Africa, are rice, Indian corn, yams, millet, dates, tef, and a species of grain called holcus, which is very extensively used. It is said, that there are five times as many species of quadrupeds in Africa as in Asia, and three times as many as in all America. Among the animals of this country, there is an uncommon proportion of wild and ferocious beasts of prey, whose dominion is in the wilderness, but which occasionally roam and prowl around the cultivated fields and the habitations of men.

The African lion is the perfection of his species; and his tremendous midnight roar is heard at a great distance. Hyenas are numerous and fierce. Going in bands, they often commit wide and dreadful ravages. In some parts, the leopard and panther are found. Elephants in herds traverse the thick woods, and are with difficulty taken and destroyed by the negroes. They are not tamed and employed in useful services as in Asia. The single and double horned rhinoceros stalks majestically through the marshes and fens, and is a formidable foe to encounter. The hippopotamus or river horse, and the crocodile, are a great annoyance in the African rivers, and not unfrequently upset canoes, and endanger the lives of the natives.

Africa swarms with serpents of monstrous size and deadly poison. The boa constrictor is the most noted. In the less fertile parts, and on the skirts of the desert, there is a great variety of harmless and inoffensive animals, of rare and elegant forms, singular agility, and beauty. Here are the skipping bright-eyed antelope, of twenty different species, and the beautifully striped zebra, and the tall giraffe, or camelopard, with long forelegs, extended neck, and spotted skin. Africa remarkably abounds in those animals that bear the nearest resemblance to mankind,

particularly the ourang-outang, who is so much like man in figure and the use of reason, that he has sometimes been tamed, clothed, and habituated to some domestic exercises, such as waiting upon table, and eating his meals with knife and fork. Baboons, apes, and the various species of the monkey tribe, may be found leaping from tree to tree, and chattering and screaming, in all the African woods.

These regions also teem with innumerable insects of the most troublesome and destructive kinds. Swarms of wild bees are often very formidable, and bands of hungry locusts sometimes come forth like clouds from the recesses of the desert, desolate rich harvests and verdant fields, and spread destruction over whole provinces. Hosts of termites, or white ants, entering the houses, consume food and clothing, and sweep every thing before them. Mosquitoes and black ants often entirely prevent the repose of the weary traveller.

Africa abounds in gold and iron, but is deficient in the other metals.

QUESTIONS.

In what zone does Africa chiefly lie? Describe the climate. Describe the surface. How many seasons in Africa? In what part of the year is the dry season? Describe it. When does the rainy season commence? Describe it. What are the principal vegetables cultivated in Africa? Mention the names of some of the beasts of prey in Africa. The names of some which are not beasts of prey. What is the most noted serpent in Africa? Mention the names of the harmless and most beautiful animals. What troublesome insects in Africa?

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

PART THIRD.

INHABITANTS—CHARACTER AND MANNERS—GOVERNMENT—RELIGION.

The inhabitants are almost universally black, or of a dark complexion. Besides the native Africans, the principal races found here are the Moors, Arabs, Berbers, Foulahs, Fellatahs, Hottentots, and Caffres.

The Arabs are of Asiatic origin, descendants of the Saracens, the followers of Mohammed, who 1,100 years ago took possession of Northern Africa, bringing with them the camel and the Koran, and the peculiar customs of their tribes. They are of a pastoral or of a predatory character, and roam in great numbers over the mountains and deserts.



Mode of attacking villages in Africa.

The Moors are of Arabic or Turkish descent. They reside in settled habitations. They are the ruling people in the Barbary states, and are numerous in all the North African cities, and in the habitable spots of the desert. They are bigotted Mohammedans, and among the most vile and depraved of the human race. The Foulahs are widely diffused in Western Africa, in the region of Senegambia and of Sierra Leone. They are a race of Mohammedan negroes, more graceful in form, more agreeable in manners, and more industrious and energetic in character than the people at large. The Fellatahs are a pastoral, but ambitious and powerful race, who for ages have been gaining ground in Central Africa. The Hottentots and Caffres are located in the southern and south eastern parts.

In some parts of Africa, three fourths of the population are slaves, but they are, in general, not severely treated, and have much leisure time.

Africa is divided into numberless petty states or kingdoms. They often contend with each other; but their wars resemble childish quarrels, and are not usually carried on with much skill, heroism, or bloodshed. One great object in their conflicts is to obtain slaves for the purposes of traffic. Within two centuries and a half, 40 millions of slaves have been sold and exported. The African forms of government are generally monarchical and absolute, and sometimes despotic. Every city, town, and village, has a chief, who is usually dependent on some higher chief or king, and his administration is often mild and beneficial.

The prevailing systems of religion are Mohammedanism and Fetichism, or a mixture of both. The former has long been established in Northern Africa. The Mohammedan moollahs or priests are scattered over all the habitable parts of the country, having great influence with the natives; whispering their artful creed into the ears of the chiefs, pointing the negro children to the letters and words of the Koran, and teaching them to lisp the name of Allah and Mohammed. Many of the natives are persuaded to profess the religion of the false prophet, while they still retain a fondness for their own Fetichism, or idolatrous superstitions. They believe and practice sorcery, worship evil spirits, and make Fetiches, or idols, of wood, stone, paper, eggs, serpents, insects, or any object whatever, according to their own taste or choice.

The African cities are comparatively few and devoid of magnificence. Those of the natives, in the interior, are surrounded by clay walls, and often from ten to twenty miles in circumference. These walls include an immense multitude of mean looking huts, interspersed with yards, gardens, trees, cultivated fields, pastures, herds, and flocks. The cities of Northern Africa are more compactly built, and very populous. The streets are generally narrow and filthy. The houses are flat roofed and destitute of front windows, in the Western Asiatic style, making a clumsy and gloomy appearance.

The Arabic language is the most prevalent in the north of Africa, between the Mediterranean and the Niger; the Mandingo dialect between the Niger and Senegal; and it is estimated that there are 43 different dialects in Sahara, and as many as 150 within the limits of the whole country.

QUESTIONS.

What are the principal foreign races found in Africa? Describe the Arabs. Give some account of the Moors. In what part, and who are the Foulahs? Who and where are the Fellatahs? Where are the Caffres and Hottentots located? What proportion of the population of Africa are slaves? How is Africa divided? What is the character of the wars of the Africans? What are their forms of government? What are the prevailing systems of religion? In what part, does Mohammedanism prevail? For what system of Paganism do many of the natives retain a fondness? What are the objects of their worship? Give some account of the African cities. What language prevails in the north of Africa? Where does the Mandingo dialect prevail?

BARBARY STATES.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

Extent 740,000 square miles—Population 13,000,000.

The Barbary States, viz. Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, Tripoli, and Barca, are situated between the Mediterranean and the great

Desert of Sahara. They are intersected from west to east by the Atlas mountains, which give name to the Atlantic Ocean. Between these mountains and the Mediterranean shores, there is a tract of country from 50 miles to 200 miles in width, which is well watered and fertilized, and abounding in the products and fruits of Southern Europe, as wheat, barley, rice, vines, olives, almonds, figs, pomegranates, and oranges.

That portion of Barbary, lying between the mountains and the great desert, is comparatively dry, sandy, and barren; but it is very fruitful in dates, and thence has been called Biledulgerid, or the "country of dates." The climate of these states is spring-like, temperate, and delightful; but leprosy is here a common disease, and the dreadful ravages of the plague have, at times, been experienced. Innumerable locusts often spread desolation over the harvests. Scorpions, and other poisonous reptiles, greatly infest the country. The deserts abound in ostriches, and the thick forests in lions, panthers, hyenas, jackalls, wild boars, and antelopes. Camels and sheep are the most useful domestic animals.

The most numerous classes of people here, are Moors, Bedouin Arabs, and Berbers, chiefly Mohammedans. The Jews also are found in great numbers. They take the lead in trade and merchandize; but are treated as brutes by the Moors. The Moors resemble the Turks in character, and are an idle, vicious, cruel, and piratical race. The Arabs live a roving, pastoral, and plundering life, on the skirts of the desert. The Berbers are descendants of the ancient natives. They speak a language of their own; reside in the mountainous region, and subsist by husbandry.

Agriculture, in the Barbary States, is rudely conducted. Manufactures do not flourish. The commerce is not extensive, but carried on with more enterprise than is common in Mohammedan countries. Their caravans bring slaves, gold, and gums, from Central Africa, where they are purchased with goods obtained from Europe. The piracy of the Barbary powers has, of late years, declined, and become less formidable. The principal governments in these countries are perfectly despotic. They have long been more or less dependent on the Turkish power.

QUESTIONS.

How is Barbary bounded? Into what states divided? By what range of mountains intersected? From what is the name of the Atlantic ocean derived? Describe the northern part of Barbary. What are its products? Describe the country south of the mountains. What is the climate of Barbary? What diseases sometimes prevail here? What animals infest the country? What domestic animals are found here? What are the most numerous classes of people? What is the state of agriculture? Manufactures? Commerce? What is said of the piracy of these powers? What is the prevailing kind of government?

EMPIRE OF MOROCCO.

Extent 300,000 sq. miles—**Pop.** 6,000,000—20 per sq. mile.

The empire of Morocco comprises the former kingdom of Morocco, with Fez and Tafilet. The most fertile and populous portion of it is the extensive plain, lying between the Atlas mountains and the Atlantic Ocean. The country on the opposite side of the mountains gradually diminishes in fertility and verdure, till it becomes a sandy desert.

The government is a complete example of despotism. The will or caprice of the emperor is law; and his power over the lives and property of his subjects, is absolute. He endeavors to instil into their minds the doctrine, that those who die by his hand, or in the execution of his orders, ascend immediately to a paradise of distinguished rewards. The oppressive acts of the government are calculated to discourage enterprise, agriculture, manufactures, commerce, and every branch of useful industry. Morocco leather is the chief manufacture.

Mogadore is the principal port for European commerce. The inland trade is with Timbuctoo and Soudan. The city of Morocco is considered the capital. It was anciently a great and populous city, nearly equal to London, but it has become in a great measure depopulated, and surrounded with magnificent ruins, the monuments of its former grandeur. Population 50,000. Fez is one of the most splendid cities in Barbary. Under the Saracens, it was renowned for learning, and venerated for its Mohammedan zeal. It is said to have contained 700 temples and mosques. Population 100,000.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent and population of the empire of Morocco? How is it bounded? What countries does it comprise? What is the most fertile part of it? Describe the government. How does it affect agriculture, manufactures and commerce? What is the chief manufacture? Give some account of Mogadore. Of Morocco. Of Fez.

ALGIERS.

Extent 90,000 sq. miles—**Pop.** 2,500,000—28 per sq. mile.

Algiers is the ancient Numidia, and constituted a part of Mauritania. It is a fertile region, enjoying a mild and pleasant climate but is not thickly settled. The principal river is Sheblif, 300 miles long. The highest mountain is Jurjura, whose

top is covered with snow. The other mountains are, for the most part, covered with forests and vineyards. It contains a mountain of salt, and salt pits six miles in circumference. The grain, fruits, and vegetables of Southern Europe, are abundant. The manufactures are carpets, silk handkerchiefs, and sashes. The coral fishery on the coast is a source of wealth. But piracy has been the chief resource of the Algerines. Coral, wool, bees wax, ostrich feathers, camel's hair, goat, and sheep skins, are the principal exports.

The former governor was a despot, called a Dey. In 1830, Algiers, the capital, was taken by the French, and the government of the country is now in their hands. They have established a colony here. The city of Algiers is situated on the declivity of a hill. The roofs of the houses are flat, and may be walked upon the whole length of a street. It is extremely difficult to pass in the streets, the broadest of them not being more than twelve feet wide. Population 80,000. Bona is the port of the coral fishery, and has a fine harbor. Constantina, in the interior, is on the site of the ancient Cirta, and is surrounded with its ruins.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent and population of Algiers? How is it bounded? What was the country called anciently? What are its soil and climate? What is the principal river? The highest mountain? What are the productions of the country? The manufactures? What fishery is there? What are the principal exports? What was the former governor of Algiers called? In whose hands is the government now? What is the situation of Algiers the capital? Describe the houses and streets. Give some account of Bona. Of Constantina.

TUNIS.

Extent 70,000 sq. miles—Pop. 2,000,000—28 per sq. mile.

Tunis is distinguished among the Barbary States for its natural beauty and fertility, for the civilization of the people, the comparative mildness of its government, the encouragement afforded to commerce, and other laudable enterprise, and for its general prosperity and power. The inhabitants are industrious, and raise grain and fruits for exportation. Their caravans from Nigritia, beyond the desert, come laden with gold and gums, and other precious merchandise. Tunis, the capital, is beautifully situated on a large bay. It is celebrated as a seat of Mohammedan learning, and for the civility and politeness of the citizens. Population 125,000. About ten miles north east of this city are the remains of Carthage, the ancient rival of Rome, but they are scarcely perceptible.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Tunis? What is its most northern latitude? What are its extent and population? What is its direction from Rome? Its distance from the island of Sicily? Ans. 100 miles. For what is Tunis distinguished among the Barbary States? What are the exports? What trade do the inhabitants carry on beyond the desert? Where is Tunis the capital? Give some account of it. What ancient city was located in this vicinity?

TRIPOLI.

Extent 100,000 sq. miles—Pop. 1,500,000—15 per sq. mile.

Tripoli is a large country, not remarkably fertile, and sustaining but a thin population. Dates are abundant, and extensively used for food. The coast is the most fruitful part. There is considerable commerce, and some degree of civilization. The inhabitants on the coast were formerly notorious pirates. Robbery and plunder are common in the interior. The government, now independent of Turkey, is administered by a bashaw, and despotic in its character. Tripoli, the capital, is situated upon sandy ground, by the sea shore, about 300 miles south east of Tunis. Its walls and towers are lofty, and its ramparts strong. The streets are narrow, and the houses low, and far from being magnificent. Yet the city is well built, and exhibits a degree of regularity and neatness unusual in these states. Population 15,000.

BARCA.

Extent 90,000 sq. miles—Population 300,000.

Barca is a large country, chiefly a desert, lying between Tripoli and Egypt, and was anciently called Lybia. It belongs to the government of Tripoli. A great proportion of the inhabitants are wandering Arabs. Derne, the capital, is near the coast. It was captured in 1805, by the American General Eaton, a native of Brimfield, Massachusetts. Population 5,000. Siwah contains a population of 6,000.

FEZZAN.

Extent 60,000 sq. miles—Population 75,000.

Fezzan is a large oasis, or tract of country, like an island in the midst of the desert. The heat in the summer is intense. The soil is fertile, where it can be artificially watered. It abounds in dates. Fezzan is important as the grand depot for the trade carried on between Northern and Central Africa, and its

population, in a great measure, is composed of merchants from Egypt, Tripoli, and various parts of Africa. They are Mohammedans. Its government is tributary to Tripoli. Mourzouk, the capital, makes a mean appearance; but it is a famous rendezvous for caravans, and is often thronged with slaves brought from the interior to be sold. Fezzan is 30 days' journey west of Cairo. It is 300 miles long from north to south, and 200 broad from east to west, and embraces 100 towns and villages. From Mourzouk, southward to Bornou, through the desert of Bilma, is fifty days journey.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent and population of Tripoli? The boundaries? What kind of country is it? In what productions does it abound? What is the state of commerce and civilization? What is the character of the inhabitants on the coast? In the interior? What is the government? What is the capital? Where is it situated? Describe it. What are the boundaries of Barca? What was its ancient name? To what government is it nominally subject? What is the capital? When and by whom was it taken?

How is Fezzan bounded? Which way is it from Tripoli? What are the climate, soil, and products? For what is it chiefly important? To what power is it tributary? What is the capital? Describe it.

EGYPT.

PART FIRST.

Extent 200,000 sq. miles—Pop. 4,000,000—20 per sq. mile.

In Egypt we recognize all that is renowned in history, or venerable for antiquity. It is celebrated as the original seat of the arts and sciences, and as one of the earliest civilized, and most wealthy and powerful of ancient kingdoms. It is remarkable, in modern times, chiefly, for its pyramids, temples, obelisks, and other memorials of its former greatness. They are most stupendous monuments of human art and labor.

Egypt is about 700 miles long and 250 broad. But the cultivated and habitable part of it consists only of a narrow valley, fifteen or twenty miles wide, bounded on both sides by rugged mountains, and intersected and fertilized by the river Nile. Lower Egypt, sometimes called the Delta of the Nile, lies between Cairo and the Mediterranean. Middle and Upper Egypt extends south from Cairo to Nubia.

The climate, in the winter, is pleasant and salubrious. In the summer, it is remarkably hot and sultry, for the latitude. The plague is a native disease of this region, and the inhabitants frequently feel the deleterious effects of the simoom, a pestilential, suffocating wind from the desert. Fair weather is all most uninterrupted, and rain very rarely falls. Yet the dews

are copious, and the inundations of the Nile give to Lower Egypt a soil of almost unexampled fertility. In this part, rice and maize are most abundant, constituting the common food of the people. Upper Egypt is fertile, and rich in wheat and barley, being artificially watered by streams from the river.



Pyramids and Sphinx.

The inhabitants of Egypt are composed of Copts, Arabs, Turks, and Jews. The Copts are descendants of the aboriginal Egyptians. They are Christians by profession, and well educated. They reside chiefly in Upper Egypt. The Arabs are very numerous. A part are engaged in agriculture; while multitudes of them live a wandering life among the rocks and mountains, in deserts, or on the banks of rivers, removing from place to place as convenience may dictate.

The Turks and Jews are found in greatest numbers in the cities, especially in Cairo. The former are lords of the land, managing the religious and political affairs. They dress in the Turkish habit, and exhibit all the Ottoman insolence and pride. The Mamelukes, who, in times past, domineered in Egypt, and were celebrated as horsemen and warriors, have lost their power, and been massacred or expelled from the country to Nubia.

Egypt is nominally subject to Turkey, and governed by a Pacha or Viceroy, appointed by the Sultan. But the present governor, Mohammed Ali, shows him very little regard. Being a man of an enlarged and liberal mind, and great independence

of spirit, he is consulting the prosperity of the country by the encouragement of learning, and by the introduction of European arts.

The Egyptian ruins and monuments are remarkable, not so much for their architectural beauty and skill, as for their astonishing magnitude and firmness. The pyramids, for thousands of years, have been viewed as wonders of the world. They commence near Cairo, upon the west bank of the Nile, and a range of them extends southerly for several miles along the river. The largest covers more than eleven acres of ground, and is about 500 feet in perpendicular height. Not far from one of the pyramids is the celebrated sphynx, the statue of a huge monster 120 feet long, cut out of the solid rock.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent and population of Egypt? For what has it been celebrated? For what is it now remarkable? What are its boundaries? Its length and breadth? Of what does the cultivated part consist? Where is Lower Egypt? What is the extent of Middle and Upper Egypt? What is the climate? What productions are most abundant in Lower Egypt? Who compose the inhabitants of Egypt? Who are the Copts? What is said of the Arabs? Of the Turks and Jews? What has been the fate of the Mamelukes? Who is the present governor of Egypt? What is the character of the present pacha? Give some account of the most remarkable Egyptian monuments.

EGYPT.

PART SECOND.

Cairo, the capital, is the most populous and commercial city of Africa. It is situated near the eastern bank of the Nile, and is about ten miles in circuit, having thirty gates. Its streets are unpaved, winding and narrow; and the houses, though two or three stories high, have no windows in front, and are gloomy as prisons in their appearance. It contains the tombs of the Mamelukes, 300 magnificent mosques, and 36 synagogues. South of the city is the castle, erected upon a hill, whose summit commands a most interesting view of the metropolis, the pyramids, and the rich surrounding country. Cairo is the centre of trade between Asia and the East Indies, and the vast interior of Africa. This trade is carried on by means of large caravans, who exchange European and Indian goods for African gold, gums, ivory, and vast multitudes of slaves. Population 250,000.

Alexandria is situated on the coast, in the north west corner of Egypt, 125 miles from Cairo, and communicates with the Nile by a canal. It was built by Alexander the Great, and was anciently renowned as a seat of the sciences, containing a library of 700,000 volumes in manuscript. Numerous and splendid

monuments of its ancient grandeur are still standing. Pompey's pillar, formed of the finest granite, is 95 feet in height. Cleopatra's Needles, are two obelisks, each 58 feet high, and consisting of a single block of granite, overspread with hieroglyphics. The famous catacombs, are sepulchres cut in the soft rock along the coast, from which mummies, or embalmed bodies, have been taken, after having lain there some thousands of years. On a neighboring island, is the celebrated Pharos or light house, one of the wonders of ancient days. Alexandria is the channel of trade with Europe. Population 20,000.

Rosetta is a commercial place at the western mouth of the Nile. Damietta is near the eastern, trading extensively with Syria and Cyprus Luxor, in Upper Egypt, is built partly on the site of the ancient Thebes, which is said to have been on both sides of the Nile, 27 miles in compass, and whose ruins, scattered over this wide space, are represented by travellers as grand and wonderful beyond description.

QUESTIONS.

Describe Cairo. What is the population? Where is Alexandria? By whom was it built? For what was it anciently celebrated? Describe some of the monuments of ancient grandeur still standing. What are the catacombs? What is the population of Alexandria? Where is Rosetta? Damietta? Give some account of ancient Thebes.

NUBIA.

Extent, 360,000 square miles.

Nubia is a large, and for the most part, a rocky, desert region, lying between Egypt on the north, and Abyssinia on the south. It is traversed by the river Nile and by the Troglodytic mountains, which extend along near the shore of the Red Sea. The climate is subject in summer to extreme heat, but the dryness of the atmosphere renders it salubrious. Here the plague never rages, but the influence of the simoom is often dreadful. There is some fertile soil along the Nile, especially on the eastern bank; but the water is raised from the river, and the land irrigated artificially. The desert has encroached upon the fertile country, by means of the vast masses of sand which are forcibly driven about by the wind.

The native inhabitants are very black, but resemble the Arabs in their features. They are generally barbarous, and wander over waste places; but many of them are settled in towns, and live by trade and agriculture. They are divided into numerous distinct tribes, each governed by its own sheik or chief; but all

dependent upon the government of Egypt. Their religion is the Mohammedan. The principal products of the country, are palm trees, tobacco, and a kind of grain called dhurra or tef. A great trade is carried on with the interior of Africa, in slaves, of whom 5,000 are said to be imported every year, generally under the age of fifteen, for the Egyptian and Arabian markets.

Nubia is distinguished for its magnificent ruins and monuments. It is remarkable that they are far the most numerous on the western side of the river; whereas the eastern side appears at present much the most fertile, and better capable of sustaining a population. At Ipsambul, near the border of Egypt, are the famous ruins of a temple, which was formed out of a solid rock. When discovered, it was more than half buried in the sand. It is 115 feet in width, and 85 feet in height, supported by huge pillars, and adorned with colossal statues. There are lively paintings upon the walls, representing battles and victories, and on the top of the temple are 21 monkeys sitting in a row, each eight feet in height. The towns in Nubia are small. Suakim, on the Red Sea, is the resort of caravans trading from Africa to Arabia. Dongola, on the south, is noted as the place where the Mamelukes, having been expelled from Egypt, have taken refuge and established a petty kingdom.

QUESTIONS.

Describe the face of the country of Nubia. How is Nubia bounded? What is the climate? What is the soil? What is the character of the native inhabitants? On what government are the various tribes dependent? What is their religion? What are the principal productions of the country? How many slaves, in a year, are imported? For what is Nubia distinguished? On which side of the river are the ruins? Describe the ruins of a temple at Ipsambul. Where are Suakim and Dongola?

SENNAAR.

Population 2,000,000.

Sennaar is a kingdom of Nubia, and lies north of Abyssinia, having Darfur on the west. It was the central region of ancient Ethiopia, and being included, in a great measure, between the Nile, and an eastern branch called the Tacazze, was anciently denominated the Island of Meloe.

It is a plain country, embracing much desert land, and much also that is beautiful and verdant in the season of the rains, producing a luxuriant growth of the grain dhurra, rice, and sugar cane. The prevailing inhabitants are Mohammedan negroes, governed by an independent chief, and extensively engaged in trade to the interior for gold dust, gums, ivory, and slaves.

Sennaar is the capital town, distinguished in the slave trade, and often thronged with caravans. It is guarded by an army of 30,000 men. Its houses, in general, are low and mean, with flat roofs. Its population is estimated at 16,000. It is 600 miles south of Cairo.

The caravans proceed to Egypt once in two or three years. They consist each of one or two thousand camels, travelling about three miles an hour, and seven or eight hours a day.

QUESTIONS.

How is Sennaar bounded? Of what ancient kingdom was it the centre? Between what rivers does it lie? What is the face of the country? What are the productions? Who are the inhabitants? In what trade are they engaged? What is the capital? Describe it. Give some account of the caravans.

ABYSSINIA.

Extent, 300,000 sq. miles—Pop. 4,000,000—13 per sq. mile.

Abyssinia, the ancient Ethiopia, is interesting in its natural features, having a diversified or undulating surface, with a fruitful soil and healthy climate. It is generally exempt from the barrenness of African sands, and surrounded by mountains, which impart a refreshing coolness to the atmosphere, and pour down a multitude of very fertilizing streams. The valleys are rich and luxuriant. The moderate declivities of the hills are suited to cultivation. The high lands produce wheat; and the country generally yields in abundance a small kind of grain called tef, which is used by the inhabitants for bread.

Abyssinia is remarkable for a level and very extensive plain, covered to the depth of two feet, with hard, pure salt, which being cut up into pieces, is not only used to season food, but circulated as money among the people.

The government of the Abyssinians is perfectly despotic. The sovereign's power is absolute; but insurrections against him are frequent. The people are familiarized to scenes of civil war, anarchy, and bloodshed. Thus they have become hardened and brutal, regarding human life no more than the life of a beast. They possess a kind of Christianity, but practice circumcision, and other Jewish rites. They are fond of eating raw, live flesh, and often slice it from the animal while living and walking.

In agriculture and manufactures they are ignorant and rude, making use of simple, ineffectual implements. They carry on considerable trade with the interior of Africa, and to foreign countries, exporting gold, ivory, and slaves in vast numbers.

Gondar, the capital, is a place of some trade and importance; but it is now in the possession of the Galla, a ferocious tribe, who have made great inroads upon certain portions of Abyssinia. The houses in Gondar are numerous, but of mean appearance, being built of clay, low, thatched, and with conical roofs. Population 50,000.

Abyssinia is now divided into three states, Tigre, Amhara, and Efat. The inhabitants, in general, are of Arabian descent mixed with negroes, Jews, and Turks.

QUESTIONS.

What are the extent and population of Abyssinia? What are its boundaries? What mountains on the south? What great lake in Abyssinia? Ans. Dembea, said to be 450 miles in circumference. What was this country called anciently? What are the surface, soil, and climate? What are the productions of the highlands? Of the country generally? Give some account of the plain for which Abyssinia is remarkable? What is the government? Character of the people? Their religion? Mention some of their barbarous customs. What is the state of agriculture and manufactures? What is their trade? Where is Gondar the capital? Describe it. Into what three states is Abyssinia now divided?

EASTERN COAST OF AFRICA.

Little is known by Europeans of the countries on this coast. The Portuguese, who visited them more than 200 years ago, have left on record no regular description of them. The geography of this part of Africa is, necessarily, indefinite and imperfect.

The kingdom of Adel is fertile, abounding in myrrh and frankincense. It lies directly south-east of Abyssinia. The people are of an olive complexion, and warlike character, consisting of various tribes, distinguished for their hostility to the Abyssinians.

Ajan, especially the northern part, is fertile, abounding in a variety of provisions. The eastern coast is composed of barren sands and rocks. The people of this country, generally, profess Mohammedanism, and have considerable commerce in gold, ivory, and ambergris.

Zanguebar is a large territory, extending 13 degrees along this coast, and embracing Magadoxa, Jubo, Melinda, Mombaca, and Quiloa. Of Magadoxa little is known, especially of the interior, as the inhabitants were steadfastly opposed to the encroachments of the Portuguese. It extends from the equator to about five degrees north latitude.

The kingdom of Melinda is in the possession of the Arabs, who wrested it from the Portuguese. It extends to Zanguebar on the

south. Melinda, the capital, is a large and handsome town, pleasantly situated, and elegantly built in the European style. The houses are constructed of stone, and many of them are splendid; as are also the numerous mosques and churches. It has an extensive commerce, with India, Persia, and the Red Sea. Its exports of gold, copper, ivory, and drugs, are very valuable, and its merchants are active and wealthy.

Mombaca and Quiloa are small, but now independent kingdoms. They are little resorted to by Europeans.

The kingdom of Mozambique, with Sofala, comprehends nearly all that remains of the Portuguese possessions on this coast, which formerly extended along it about 2,000 miles; but are now comprised between Cape Delgado on the north, and Cape Corrientes on the south. Mozambique is a rich and luxuriant country. It is traversed by the mountains of Lupata, from which valuable streams descend, whose waters not only fertilize the soil, but abound in particles of gold dust, which is here a very important article of trade. The inhabitants are greatly annoyed by wild elephants and other ferocious animals, which endanger human life, and threaten the destruction of crops. It is often necessary to build large fires as a defence against their ravages.

Mozambique, the Portuguese capital, is situated on a neighboring island, thirty miles in circumference. The commerce of this city has declined, and the number of slaves exported, has been greatly reduced: Population 3,000.

Sofala, extends along the coast, from the river Zambeze to Cape Corrientes, 150 miles. It is watered chiefly by the river Sofala, at whose mouth is the capital of the same name, 400 miles south-west of Mozambique. This is, now, a town of small huts, yet containing a Portuguese fortress. This country has few inhabitants, but multitudes of fierce elephants, and an abundance of ivory and gold dust. Some men of learning have had the opinion, that Sofala was the country whence Solomon, the king of Israel, procured the celebrated gold of Ophir.

Mocaranga is the name of a powerful kingdom in the interior. It is represented as embracing mines of gold, and many splendid mines, indicative of its former populousness and civilization. The soil is said to be rich, producing maize, rice, and delicious fruits.

QUESTIONS.

What is the state of our knowledge of the countries on the eastern coast of Africa? What is the kingdom of Adel? What are its soil and productions? Describe its inhabitants. Where is Ajan? What is the soil? Give some account of the inhabitants. How is Zanguebar bounded? What countries does it embrace? In whose

possession is the kingdom of Melinda? What is the capital? Describe it. With what countries has it an extensive commerce? What are its exports? Give some account of the kingdoms of Mombaca and Quiloa. What possessions do the kingdom of Mozambique and Sofala comprehend? How far did these possessions formerly extend, along the coast? Between what capes are they now comprised? What is the soil of Mozambique? By what mountains is it traversed? In what valuable commodity do the rivers abound? By what animals are the inhabitants of this country annoyed? Give some account of Mozambique, the Portuguese capital. What is the extent of Sofala? What is the chief river? What is the capital? Give some account of it. What is the opinion of some learned men respecting this country? Give some account of Mocaranga.

SOUTH AFRICA.

South Africa is that section of the country which is south of the tropic of Capricorn, embracing Cape Colony, Caffraria, and the Country of the Hottentots.

CAPE COLONY.

Extent, 120,000 sq. miles—Pop. 120,000—1 per sq. mile.

This colony was originally planted by the Dutch. In 1806 it came into the possession of the British, under whose power it still remains.

This country is about equal in extent to the island of Great Britain. It is traversed by three successive and parallel ranges of mountains, running from east to west, the second range being higher than the first, and the third still more elevated and forming the northern boundary of the colony. By these mountains the country is divided into three distinct plains or terraces, gradually rising one above another. The plain bordering on the sea, is favored with an agreeable climate and luxuriant soil, watered by numerous rivulets and frequent rains, and exhibits a beautiful verdure, and a rich variety of trees and shrubs. The next plain or terrace, lying between the first and second ranges of mountains, is to a great extent a parched desert, here called a Karroo, though it also embraces much fertile land. The more northern terrace, or elevated plain, is denominated the Great Karroo; it being a perfect desert, with scarcely any signs of vegetable or animal life.

The southern part of the colony is distinguished for the cultivation of the vine, which was introduced by some French emigrants. Farther north, grain and grass are abundant, and large herds of cattle are raised. The soil, generally, is cultivated under the direction of Dutch planters or boors, whose agriculture is rude and wretched, and whose character is the perfection of indolence. The little labor which is necessary, is performed entirely by the numerous Hottentot slaves, while the boor is eating

and drinking, and smoking his pipe; and the females of the house, equally averse to exercise and fatigue, sit motionless, and with their hands folded.

The Europeans in the colony, for the most part, are ignorant and uncultivated, especially the graziers, many of whom live in straw huts, and are nearly on a level with the Hottentots. The principal exports are wine and brandy.

The capital is Cape Town, pleasantly situated at the head of Table Bay, about 30 miles north of the Cape. The streets are regularly laid out at right angles. The population is more than 20,000.

At Gnadenthal and Bethelsdorp are missionary stations, which have had a powerful and happy influence upon many of the native Hottentots, elevating their character, and leading them to enjoy the blessings of civilization and Christianity.

QUESTIONS.

How far north does South Africa extend? What countries does it embrace? How is Cape Colony bounded? By what Europeans and when was the Cape of Good Hope first discovered? Ans. By the Portuguese, a little before the discovery of America. By whom was the colony of the cape first planted? When did it fall into the hands of the British? What are its extent and population? By what is it traversed from east to west? Into how many terraces or plains is the country divided by these mountains? In what direction do these terraces rise? Describe the first terrace. The second terrace. The third terrace. What is the chief article of cultivation in the southern part of the colony? What productions abound farther north? Who are the principal farmers? Give some account of their agriculture? Of their character? What is generally the character of the Europeans in the colony? What are the principal exports? What is the capital? Where is it situated? What is its population? Where are the two chief missionary stations? What effect have they had upon the Hottentots?

CAFFRARIA.

Caffraria extends along the coast north-east of the Colony of the Cape, from which it is separated by the Great Fish river. It is the proper country of the native Caffres, who are represented as widely different from the Hottentots, and from the African negroes. Their complexion is nearly black, their persons tall, well proportioned, and manly; their features regular and handsome, and their movements dignified and graceful. They are peaceably disposed, and peculiarly pastoral in their habits and employments. They dress in sheep skins, reside in low round cabins, and are nourished by the milk of their cows, of which they take the most tender care. Yet they are active and brave; fond of hunting the elephant and the lion, and when provoked, terrible in war.

The Boshuanas are tribes in some respects different from the

Caffres, but evidently of the same stock. They inhabit the interior of South Africa. They are in a higher state of civilization than the Caffres, and better acquainted with the arts of civilized life, but inferior to them in personal appearance.

The Matchappes are among the most civilized of the Boshuana tribes, and best known to Europeans. They cultivate the soil, and are very attentive to their numerous flocks and herds. Their clothing and houses are neat, and they have some manufactures in iron and copper. Their capital is Lattakoo, whose population may be estimated at 10,000. The Mashows and the Marootzees inhabit the country north of the Matchappes, and are still more skilful in agriculture and the arts. Kunechanee, the capital of the Marootzees, has a population of 15,000.

QUESTIONS.

Where is Caffraria situated? What river divides it from Cape Colony? What is the personal appearance of the Caffres? Describe their character. What animals are they fond of hunting? What country do they inhabit? What is their state of civilization? What is the occupation of the Matchappes? What is their capital? What tribes north of them?

COUNTRY OF THE HOTTENTOTS.

The proper country of the Hottentots, is immediately north of the Colony of the Cape, and extends northerly to Orange river, which divides it from the country of the Boshuanas, and easterly to Caffraria. There are three principal races of the Hottentots, viz.: the natives in Cape Colony, the Bosjesmans, or Bushmen, and the Namaquas.

The Hottentots, in their personal form, appearance, manners, and customs, are among the meanest and most degraded of the human race. Their color is a yellowish brown, and their bodies are often crooked and deformed. This natural deformity is heightened by the smoke and filth of their hovels, and especially by the profusion of butter or grease, with which they besmear themselves as a defence against the scorching influence of a tropical sun.

The Hottentots of the colony, are mild, honest, and harmless, but are indolent and lazy in the extreme. Their number is about 15,000.

The Namaqua Hottentots inhabit the coast north-west of the colony, and the banks of Orange river. This tribe have been improved in character and condition, by the labors of Christian missionaries, who have roused up many of them to industry, in tilling the ground, taking care of cattle, or working at trades.

The Bushmen, or Bosjesmans, are a tribe of Hottentots inhabiting the inaccessible mountains on the northern border of the colony. They are dwarfish in stature and debased in mind, and are the ugliest people in Africa, or in the world. They are almost devoid of social affections, and wild in their character and habits. They subsist partly by hunting, and feed upon roots, insects, lizards, and serpents. They are ever restless and wretched, quarrelling with the colonists, and at war with the neighboring tribes; so that the brave Caffres think themselves warranted to treat them like wild beasts, and shoot them wherever they can find them.

QUESTIONS.

Where is the proper country of the Hottentots? What river bounds it on the north? What region on the east? What are the principal races of the Hottentots? Describe them. How is their natural deformity heightened? What is the character of the Hottentots in the colony? Where are the Namaquas? Give some account of them. Where are the Bushmen? Describe them.

WESTERN AFRICA.

Western Africa comprises Senegambia, Sierra Leone, Liberia, Guinea, Lower Guinea, and Cimbebas.

SENEGAMBIA.

Senegambia derives its name from its two principal rivers, Senega and Gambia. It extends from Sahara on the north to the tenth degree of north latitude on the south. The climate is intensely hot on account of the prevalence of the north-easterly winds which come heated from the desert. But the soil being well watered, is, in general, highly fertile, and suited to the common productions of the equatorial regions. Much of the scenery is highly picturesque. The forests are of luxuriant growth. Some of the trees are grand and majestic, without a rival. The Baobab, which grows on the banks of the Senegal, has in some cases a circumference of 75 feet. From its enormous trunk, large branches extend horizontally, so that this one tree of itself forms a kind of forest.

The extensive forests of Acacia on the borders of the desert are remarkable for exuding the gum Senegal, of which 500,000 pounds have been collected annually. Gold, ivory, and slaves, abound in this region. The gold is chiefly found in the mountainous districts of Bambouk. Elephants are very numerous. The rivers and their banks are infested with monstrous crocodiles and hippopotami. Serpents, of every hideous form and size, crawl over the surface of the country, and bring death to many an unwary traveller.

The inhabitants of Senegambia are divided into various tribes, generally of the negro race, and of peaceable dispositions, but ignorant, superstitious, and degraded. Their religion is Mohammedanism, intermingled with idolatry. The prevailing tribes are the Foulahs, Jaloffs, and Mandingoes. The Foulahs hold several kingdoms, are widely spread, and have a predominating influence, especially in Foota Jallo, south of the Gambia. They have an olive complexion, and more agreeable features than the Africans generally. They are industrious, active, and considerably polished and civilized. Their employments are pastoral, their manners mild and inoffensive. Their religion is Mohammedanism, though not marked with bigotry.

Teemboo, the capital of Foota Jallo, is one of the largest cities in Western Africa. It has a population of 70,000.

The Jaloffs reside along the coast. They are very black, but have regular features, and are reputed the handsomest and bravest negroes in this part of Africa.

The Mandingoes are exceedingly numerous, and are spread far and wide on the banks of the Niger, the Senegal, and especially the Gambia. They are distinguished as merchants, and are quite addicted to theft. They are gentle, gay, cheerful, and inquisitive, and speak a copious and refined language, the language of commerce in all this region.

St. Lois, on an island near the mouth of the Senegal, is the capital of the French possessions in Western Africa. Population 5,000.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Senegambia? Between what parallels of latitude does it lie? From what is its name derived? What three rivers has it? Where do they rise and empty? What cluster of islands in the ocean on the west? What are the capes? What is the climate? What are the soil and products? What is the character of the scenery? Give some account of the Baobab tree. For what are the forests of *Acacia* remarkable? In what other articles of commerce does this region abound? In what districts is the gold chiefly found? With what are the rivers infested? Give some account of the inhabitants. What are the prevailing tribes? Describe the Foulahs. Where are they chiefly settled? What is the capital city? What is its population? Where are the Jaloffs principally settled? Describe their persons. What parts do the Mandingoes inhabit? For what are they distinguished? To what addicted? What is said of their manners and language? Where and what is St. Lois?

SIERRA LEONE.

The name Sierra Leone, denotes the "chain of lions," and was given to this country in reference to the multitude of lions ranging over the chains of mountains in this vicinity.

Sierra Leone is subject to the government of Great Britain, and is the most important British possession in Africa, next to

Cape Colony. A settlement was commenced here by the English, and a colony planted, consisting chiefly of blacks, in 1791, for the purpose not only of opening a trade with the interior, but especially of providing an asylum for recaptured slaves, and thus promoting the abolition of slavery, and the civilization of the Africans. The soil is rich, being watered by the river Sierra Leone, which passes through it. Rice, sugar, coffee, cotton, and other tropical productions, grow abundantly, and with very little labor.

The colony is in a flourishing condition. The number of its inhabitants is about 20,000, principally recaptured Africans. Multitudes of wretched beings have been rescued from the holds of slave ships, in a state of the deepest intellectual and moral degradation, and have been here restored to their native country, and perhaps to their kindred and friends, and placed under the instruction and influence of faithful missionaries, who have taught them the principles of learning and virtue, and introduced them to beneficial and respectable occupations in society. The number of missionaries is about 20. The schools are numerous and in a prosperous state. A pleasing example is here afforded of the fact, that the endowments of intellect and genius do not exclusively belong to a white population, and that the blessings of civilization, social order, and Christianity, need not necessarily be confined to people of any particular features or complexion.

The capital is Freetown, at the mouth of the Sierra Leone. Population 5,000. Its principal exports are ivory, gold, palm oil, camwood, gum copal, rice, coffee, and bees wax.

QUESTIONS.

What is denoted by the name Sierra Leone? What are the boundaries and latitude of the country? To what government is it subject? When, by whom, and for what purpose was a colony planted here? What is the soil? By what river watered? What productions are abundant? What are the population and condition of the colony? Give some account of the missionaries and schools? Where is Freetown? What are its exports? Which way is Liberia from Sierra Leone?

LIBERIA.

Liberia is the seat of the African colony planted in 1820, by the American Colonization Society, and designed as an asylum for free Africans and emancipated slaves from the United States. The river St. Paul's washes it on the north-west. The climate is as healthy as can be found on this coast; and the soil is naturally fertile, and capable of producing a rich supply of the necessaries and comforts of life. Provision is made for the literary and religious instruction of the colonists. Regu-

lar government and good order are maintained. Several accessions have been made to their number, of the original colonists. And, though they have been called to struggle with difficulties and disheartening incidents, as is usual in the infancy of a colony, their condition is prosperous, and their prospects pleasing to all the friends of freedom and humanity. The population is about 3,000.

Monrovia, at the mouth of the St. Paul's, is the chief town, and has a flourishing commerce.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries and latitude of Liberia? What river washes it? When and by whom was a colony planted here? With what design? What are the climate and soil? What are the condition and prospects of the colonists? What is the present population? What is the situation of Monrovia?

GUINEA.

The coast of Guinea extends about 900 miles eastward from Liberia. It has been divided by Europeans, into the Grain coast, (now chiefly included in Liberia,) the Ivory coast, the Gold and the Slave coasts, in reference to the leading articles of commerce in these several districts.

The Grain coast abounds in a coarse kind of pepper, and derives its name from this circumstance. Being destitute of gold or ivory, it has not been much frequented by Europeans.

The Ivory coast, extending east of this, abounds in ivory or elephants' teeth. It is stated that some tusks have been purchased here, each weighing 200 pounds. There are no good harbors. The trading is carried on in boats at some distance from the shore. The back country is fertile, and its villages are numerous and populous. But the inhabitants are ill tempered, thievish, and contentious, and refuse to have Europeans reside among them. Some travellers have represented them as cannibals.

The Gold coast is more thronged with European settlers and traders than any other portion of Africa. The trade here in gold dust, is principally in the hands of the British. Their capital town in this quarter is called Cape Coast Castle. The interior of this part of Guinea is named Ashantee. It is an extensive territory, with a dense population, intelligent and highly civilized for Africans. Their king is able to bring large armies into the field, and has a powerful and spreading empire. This people exhibit some elegant manufactures, particularly a species of leather like morocco, and fine cotton cloths dyed brilliantly. But their character for civilization is sadly tarnished by the horrible custom of human sacrifices which prevails here, and in-

deed in all the kingdoms of Guinea. It appears to have arisen from the superstitious sentiment, that at the decease of a king or any great personage, he ought to be accompanied into the invisible world by a retinue, numerous in proportion to his rank and dignity. On such occasions it is not unusual to strike off the heads of a number of slaves or prisoners, that they may die with the deceased, and be his attendants in the regions of the dead. It is stated as a fact, that a late king of the Ashantees sacrificed 3,000 victims on the grave of his mother.

The capital is Coomassie, whose circumference is said to be four miles. Its houses are low and built of wood, but neat and splendid for an African town, and marked with a profusion of sculptured ornaments. Population 75,000.

The Slave coast extends eastward to the bay and river of Lagos, which divide it from Benin. This part of Guinea is a fine country, rising gradually from the sea towards the interior, and covered with numerous villages and fields of the most luxuriant vegetation. It is more industriously and skilfully cultivated than almost any other portion of Africa, and the inhabitants, for agricultural diligence, have been compared to the Chinese.

Back of this coast, about 150 miles north, is the centre of the powerful and despotic kingdom of Dahomey. The beauty and richness of the natural scenery are here affectingly contrasted with the wickedness and woes of man. The soil is fertile in a high degree, but shockingly polluted with human blood and crime. The sovereign is a finished despot, and the basis of his despotism is idolatry. Being regarded as a superior being, he demands of his subjects, and receives, the most absolute and abject submission. His great men and most ferocious warriors, esteem it a privilege to prostrate themselves on their faces before him, and seek no higher honor than to live and die in his service. All the unmarried females in his kingdom are considered as his property and at his disposal; and having selected the most beautiful to be his own wives, he sells the rest at extravagant prices to his nobles. At the great national festival, he moistens the graves of his ancestors with the blood of human victims. And whenever he wishes to send a message to a deceased friend, he hands a letter to some slave, whose head is then taken off, that when dead, he may go and deliver it. The floor of his apartment is formed of human skulls, and his palaces and temples are decorated with the heads and bones of slaughtered enemies. His wives, in number about 1,000, are trained to arms, and serve as his body guard.

Abomey is the capital of this horrid kingdom. It is situated

about 150 miles from the sea, and is a large collection of clay huts. Population 25,000.

Benin is a country lying next east of the slave coast, and extending from the river Lagos to the river Formosa, or Benin, which is supposed to be the western mouth or estuary of the Niger. This part of the coast is intersected by various estuaries, and thus divided into many alluvial islands of great fertility. The kingdom of Benin extends some distance into the interior. It is a powerful kingdom, under an absolute monarch, and defended by a large army. The people are thickly settled, and are characterized by gentleness and agricultural industry. The city of Benin is extensive and populous, with very narrow streets and low houses, but not destitute of neatness.

The country of Biafra lies east and south-east of Benin, but geographers have little definite knowledge concerning it.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Guinea? On which side of the Equator is it? How far east does the coast of Guinea extend? How is it divided? In what does the Grain coast abound? In what the Ivory coast? What is said of its harbors? What of the back country? Of the inhabitants? With what is the Gold coast thronged? Who have the greatest share of the trade? What is the capital of the British settlements here? What is the interior called? Describe the country of the Ashantees. What is the character of the people? What cruel custom prevails here? What are the principal manufactures? What is the capital? Describe it. How far east does the Slave coast extend? What is the face of the country? How is it cultivated? What kingdom in the interior? What is the soil? How is the king regarded by his subjects? What is done at the national festival? How does the king send messages to his deceased friends? What constitute the floor of his apartment? With what are his palaces and temples decorated? Who are his body guard? What is their number? Where is Abomey the capital? Where is Benin? How far does it extend on the coast? Describe the country and kingdom. Where is the country of Biafra? What are the principal gulfs and rivers on the coast of Guinea? What island in the gulf of Biafra?

LOWER GUINEA OR THE COAST OF CONGO.

This region comprehends an extent of coast of about 1,000 miles, and comprises Loango, Congo, Angola, and Benguela. The principal European settlements belong to the Portuguese, who, with other Europeans, have visited this coast in pursuit of slaves. So extensively and vigorously has this inhuman traffic been carried on, that the country, in some parts is, almost depopulated.

Loango extends to the river Congo or Zaire, which separates it from Congo, a distance of about 400 miles. The climate of the country is pleasant and healthy, considering its vicinity to the equator. The soil is remarkable for fertility, and the coast, though elevated, is overspread with a luxuriant vegetation which is nourished chiefly by copious dews. Showers of rain

are very rare, and violent winds seldom occur. There is a great variety of fish in the lakes and rivers, and plenty of game in the extensive forests.

The capital is Loango, situated in a diversified though a fertile region. Vast numbers of slaves have been brought from the interior to this market. The native tribes often go to war with each other, that they may obtain prisoners to sell to the slave dealers. The population of this city is estimated at 15,000, and that of the whole country of Loango at 600,000. The people generally are stupid, indolent, and averse to improving the rich gifts of nature.

Congo is a large and fertile country. On the north it is washed by the river Zaire, which is of considerable length, and according to the report of the Landers, has probably a communication with lake Tchad in Soudan. On the east it is bounded by lofty mountains, from which the Giagas, a race of furious savages, often descend and commit great depredations in the surrounding country.

The vegetable productions are the manioc root, maize, sugar cane, tobacco, pepper, and sweet potatoes. The richness of the soil is sufficient to produce two crops annually, with very little labor. A rude hoe is the principal agricultural instrument. The use of it devolves chiefly on the women. Sheep, hogs, and fowls, are numerous. Venomous animals and reptiles are rarely found. Groves of cinnamon and palm trees, and forests of jasmine, are not uncommon. The people make use of mats for clothing, and for covering their houses. The natives are said to be singularly thoughtless, devoid of energy, and averse to useful employment, but addicted to idolatrous superstitions, and very fond, like Africans generally, of singing and dancing.

The capital is St. Salvador, on a high mountain, 150 miles from the shore. It contains a stone cathedral, 10 churches, and a population of 20,000, many of whom are whites. This is the residence of the king. The climate is delightful. The streets are broad, regular, and adorned with rows of palm trees. The houses within and without, are neatly white-washed.

Angola is the district immediately south of Congo, and is considered a part of it. The country is mountainous, and not adapted to cultivation. Honey, wax, and salt, are staple productions. Large slabs of solid rock salt are here taken from the salt pits. There is a scarcity of fresh water. Not less than 40,000 slaves are annually procured from Angola, and sold, chiefly to the French.

The capital is Loando San Paulo, the principal Portuguese

town in this part of Africa, and from which a full supply of slaves is transported to Brazil.

Benguela extends south to Cape Negro. The climate is very unhealthy and dangerous to Europeans. The inhabitants are barbarous. They pursue the zebra and the antelope, and contend with the elephant and rhinoceros. Serpents are so numerous, that many of the people are said to dress themselves with their skins.

QUESTIONS.

How long is Lower Guinea, or the coast of Congo? What countries are comprised in it? To whom do the principal European settlements belong? For what purpose has this coast been visited? What is the length of Loango? What is the climate? The soil? What is the capital? Of what is it the market? What is the population? How is Congo bounded on the north and east? What are the productions? How are the women treated? What is the character of the natives? What is the capital? Describe it. Where is Angola? What are the productions? What is the capital? How far does Benguela extend? What is the climate? What is the character of the inhabitants? How numerous are the serpents said to be?

CIMBEBAS.

This coast, extending 700 or 800 miles, is represented as consisting of sand hills, and destitute of trees or water. A tribe of savages, called Cimbebas, range over the interior. Their chief employment consists in tending large herds of cattle, which constitute their wealth. They clothe themselves with ox hides. They are described as a barbarous, superstitious race, though decent in their appearance, and disposed to punish severely the crime of theft.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Cimbebas? What is its length? What cape, on this coast? What is the soil? Give some account of the savages in the interior

CENTRAL AFRICA.

Central Africa comprises Soudan, or Nigritia, Darfur. and Lower Ethiopia.

SOUDAN, OR NIGRITIA.

Extent 1,000,000 sq. miles—Pop. 20,000,000—20 per sq. mile.

This country extends from Senegambia to Darfur. Its length from west to east, is 2,000 miles, and its breadth 500. It is bounded on the north by the Great Desert Sahara, and on the south by the mountains of Kong, the territories of Guinea, and the unexplored regions of Lower Ethiopia. It is watered and rendered fertile by the Niger, which runs first an easterly and

then a southerly course, passing through lake Dibbi, and receiving the river Shary, or Tchadda, from the large lake Tchad. The aspect of the country is highly luxuriant. Vegetation assumes all the verdure and luxuriance common in a well watered tropical region. The trees are unrivalled for loftiness and majesty.



Caravan of Nigritia.

It sustains a numerous population, partly Moors, but principally negroes, who in general are of a mild and inoffensive character, and more intelligent and civilized than in most other regions of Africa. Soudan is divided into a number of kingdoms, or states, some of which have been visited by the celebrated English travellers, Park, Denham, Clapperton, and Lander, but which still remain in a great measure unexplored.

Bambara, is an extensive, rich, and populous kingdom, in the vicinity of lake Dibbi. The Niger runs through it towards the east. It abounds in vegetable productions. The butter tree is one of the most remarkable. Goora nuts are found in large quantities, and are esteemed a great luxury. Salt is extremely scarce, and purchased only by the rich. Sego, the capital, is said to contain more than 20,000 inhabitants. Jenne is the centre of an extensive commerce. The city is two and a half miles in circumference. The streets are too narrow for carriages. The houses are well built of sun burnt bricks. Population 15,000.

The large kingdom of Timbuctoo lies east of lake Dibbi, but we have little definite knowledge concerning it. The city

of Timbuctoo, its capital, is represented by M. Caille, the French traveller, as situated about eight miles from the Joliba, or Niger, and in the midst of a region of barren sands. It is about the size of Jenne, and being supported chiefly by commerce, is dependent on Jenne, and other neighboring districts, for provisions. The commerce is chiefly in the hands of Moorish merchants, who trade extensively with the caravans from Barbary, and other parts of Africa. Salt is here an important article of commerce, and is brought to this city in large quantities from the mines of Taudeny on the north-west. Here are seven mosques, and many large houses of the Moors, blended with the conical straw huts of the negroes. Cabra, on the Niger, is the port of Timbuctoo. The caravans coming from North Africa are exposed to great dangers from the ferocious and troublesome Tuaricks.

Houssa, situated east of Timbuctoo, is a fertile, rich, and powerful kingdom. The country is variegated, beautiful, and well cultivated, abounding in the luxuries of life. The villages are numerous, and present an interesting appearance. The people are intelligent, and have some knowledge of arts and manufactures. Kano, the capital, is described as a spacious city, surrounded by a high wall. Kassina is situated east of Houssa, and is under its government.

Bornou, east of Kassina, in the region of lake T Chad, is one of the most extensive, flourishing, and powerful states in the interior of Africa. It is a plain country, well watered, and productive. Indian corn flourishes, and is in common use. Cotton and indigo are abundant. The rich pastures sustain immense flocks of sheep and goats, with herds of cows, oxen, and horses. The country swarms with bees, and honey is a common luxury. Here is plenty of game in the woods, and a great variety of fish in the sweet waters of the lake; while many rare and valuable water fowl skim over its surface.

The inhabitants of Bornou are principally negroes, but blended with numerous Arabs, or Shouahs. The emperor has at his command an army of 60,000 cavalry. Bergoo and Begharmi are districts tributary to him. The government is arbitrary, and the laws are very strict. The towns in general are well built, and encircled with earthen walls, 30 feet in height. The prevailing religion is the Mohammedan. The capital is Kouka. A great trade is carried on with the merchants of Fezzan. European and India goods are imported. Gold, ivory, and slaves, are the exports.

The Fellatas, a brave and warlike tribe, are widely diffused over Nigritia, several cities and districts being under their

power. They are of a copper complexion, and handsome. Sackatoo is the capital, and the residence of their chief. It is a populous and well built town on the Niger. Here Clapperton, the traveller, on his second tour, died with sickness. Zeg-zeg, a Fellata country, is one of the finest and most beautiful regions in Africa, resembling the richest and fairest portions of England. It is variegated with hills and valleys, and overspread with verdant pastures, and plentiful crops of rice ; while rows of lofty trees, like the gigantic poplar, adorn the hills. Zaria, its capital, as described by Clapperton, is large in circumference, and exhibits fields of grain, with the tops of houses just rising above them. Its population is at least 50,000.

The city of Yaorie, on the Niger, some distance below Sackatoo, is noted as the place where Mungo Park was killed. This place was recently visited by the Landers, in 1830, where they obtained a volume of Watts' hymns, which formerly belonged to Dr. Anderson, one of Park's companions. From this place they descended the river in a southerly course, passing by a large city called Boosa, in lat. 10° north, and afterwards the city of Funda, till ultimately they came to the sea, by the Nun, one of the mouths of this great river, emptying into the Gulf of Guinea, or Benin. They descended the Niger about 900 miles, and were amicably treated by the natives in the remote interior. In 1833, an expedition with two steamboats, headed by Richard Lander, succeeded in ascending the Niger, 400 miles. They met with a favorable reception from the natives, and purchased ten tons of ivory for a trifling compensation. On one occasion, they were obliged to make use of earnest entreaty to restrain a native king from sacrificing two human victims, in token of his cordiality and veneration towards the welcome strangers.

QUESTIONS.

What countries are included in Central Africa? What are the boundaries of Soudan, or Nigritia? How long is it from east to west? What mountains, on the south? What rivers rise in these mountains? What great river waters Soudan? What lake does it pass through? What large stream flows into the Niger from Lake Tchad? Where does the Niger empty? Describe the aspect of the country. Of whom is the population composed? How is Bambara situated? Describe it. What is the capital? What is its population? Describe the city Jenne. Where is the kingdom of Timbuctoo? How is the city of Timbuctoo situated? Give some account of it. What is the port of Timbuctoo, and where situated? What ferocious tribe endangers the caravans coming from North Africa? Describe the kingdom of Houssa. What is the capital? Where is Kassina? Give some account of Bornou. What are its productions? Who are the inhabitants? How many cavalry has the emperor at his command? What two districts are tributary to him? What is the government? Give some account of the towns. What is the prevailing religion? What is the capital? With what merchants is a great trade carried on? What are the imports and exports? Give some account of the Fellatas. What is the capital of their empire? Where is it situated? What celebrated English traveller died here? Describe the country of Zeg-zeg. What is its capital? Describe it. Where is the

city of Yaoorie? For what is it noted? What other two cities did they pass in descending the river? Where does the Niger empty? How were they treated by the natives? Give some account of the English expedition which ascended the Niger in 1833?

DARFUR.

Darfur is that part of Central Africa which lies between Soudan or Nigritia, and Abyssinia and Nubia. It is a fertile country, watered by the Baheel Aliad, a branch of the Nile. Wheat and millet are cultivated. The growth of rice is spontaneous and abundant. The sovereign is despotic in his government. The people trade largely with Egypt and Mecca; exporting slaves, camels, ivory, ostrich feathers, and hides of the rhinoceros and hippopotamus. Their capital is Cobbe. Population 5,000. The inhabitants are ignorant, superstitious, and thievish Mohammedans.

Lower Ethiopia is a name sometimes given to that vast, unexplored central region, extending from the Jibbel Kumri, or Mountains of the Moon, to South Africa, a distance of nearly 2,000 miles. It is supposed to consist, in a great measure, of elevated deserts, or table lands.

QUESTIONS.

What are the boundaries of Darfur? What is the soil? By what river is the country watered? What are the productions? What is the government? With what places do the inhabitants trade largely? What do they export? What is the capital? The character of the inhabitants? What region is sometimes called Lower Ethiopia? What is its length? Of what is it supposed to consist?

SAHARA, OR AFRICAN DESERT.

Extent, 2,500,000 square miles.

The name Sahara is of Arabic origin, and signifies sea or ocean. It may be applied, in a large and general sense, to the whole of that vast desert region or ocean of sand which extends from the Atlantic Ocean to the borders of Nubia and Egypt, a distance of about 3,000 miles. Its breadth is 800 or 1,000 miles. It is divided into Eastern and Western Sahara, by a line passing through the fertile district of Fezzan, from Tripoli to Soudan.

This immense tract, in general, has a surface of moveable sand, driven and rolled about by the wind, like the waves of the sea. Here and there, a well watered verdant spot is found, called an oasis, resembling an island in the midst of the surrounding sands. These oases are often some hundred miles

apart, and the fountains of water which they afford, are inconceivably refreshing to thirsty, weary travellers. Fezzan is the most extensive and remarkable of these fertile tracts, and for a considerable distance divides the eastern from the western part of the desert. The prevailing winds which sweep across the Sahara, blow nine months from the east, and three months from the west. From this cause, the sand in Eastern Sahara is observed to be more thinly spread and more gravelly. The surface of this part is more diversified with rocks and sand stone hills, and exhibits a greater number of oases than Western Sahara.

By the prevalence of easterly winds, the sands have been driven off from the parts towards Egypt, and accumulated and deepened in the parts towards the Atlantic. In Western Sahara the sands are finer and deeper, and more uniformly and extensively spread over the surface. Springs are extremely rare. Fertile spots, or places for the refreshment of caravans, are very seldom found, and the scenes of this part of the desert are more universally desolate and gloomy. The desert shore along the Atlantic, is diversified with mountainous peaks, cliffs of rocks, sand hills, and many enormous sand banks. The coast is imminently dangerous to mariners. Multitudes have been shipwrecked upon it and perished; while others, still more unfortunate, falling into the hands of the Arabs of the desert, have been hurried away into merciless captivity.

The appearance of the sky and atmosphere, over this immense waste, is red and fiery, the rays of the sun are oppressive, and the sands extremely heated. At other times the sun and sky are shrouded, and the air filled by clouds of fine burning sand, hurled about in every direction by the wind. Thus the eyes of travellers are inflamed, and their progress, for a while, rendered difficult or impossible. Pillars of sand, suddenly raised by whirlwinds to a vast height, have been seen moving over the desert plains with inconceivable swiftness and majesty. Great numbers of human beings, it is supposed, have been buried and lost in these sand storms and billows. And still greater numbers, probably, have sunk down and perished, under the combined influence of hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

Hordes of wandering Arabs, and large caravans of Moors and other merchants, with camels and slaves, and various merchandise, are continually traversing these wilds in every direction.

They carry water in leathern bottles, which they expect to replenish at every oasis. Sometimes, when they arrive at a

watering place and find no water, a great mortality ensues; especially of the miserable slaves. Innumerable human skeletons and bones, as witnessed by Oudney, Denham, and other travellers, are found scattered over the sands of the desert, more particularly near the stopping places or wells of water.

The Arabs originated from Asia, and their character and manners as exhibited in Africa, are substantially the same as in their native country. They are remarkably temperate and abstemious in eating and drinking, and patient of hunger and fatigue. They live upon milk, millet, dates, and such light food, and are happy if they can be supplied with pure water to drink. Yet no people, perhaps, in the world, are more distinguished for bodily activity and vigor. Pasturage and plunder are their favorite pursuits.

When they come with their families and flocks to a grassy district in the desert, they pitch their tents; and after a residence of a few days or weeks, they remove to another favorite spot; perhaps travelling in the night, that they may avoid the scorching influence of the sun, and directing their course by the stars.

The Tuaricks and Tibboos, are ferocious tribes of natives, occupying tracts of country on the southern side of the desert. They, not unfrequently, prove troublesome and dangerous to the merchants, and also to the people of the neighboring Negro villages. The Monselmins, Mongearts, Wadelims, and Labdessebas are predatory tribes, and cruel monsters, who hover around the coast between Cape Blanco and Morocco, eager to spy every ill-fated ship that may chance to dash against the rocks or quicksands, and ever ready to take possession of the property and persons of shipwrecked sailors.

QUESTIONS.

What is the literal meaning of the word Sahara? How is the desert Sahara bounded? What are its length, breadth, and number of square miles? How is it divided? Which is the largest and most desolate part of the desert? What is its general surface? What is an oasis? What is the most extensive oasis in the great desert? Give some account of the prevailing winds. Describe the surface of Western Sahara. To what dangers are mariners exposed on the Atlantic coast? Describe the appearance of the sky and atmosphere in the desert. What evils do travellers experience here from the sands? By whom are these wilds continually traversed? In what do they carry water? What evidences of persons having perished here are found scattered over the desert? What is the origin of the Arabs in this desert? For what are they remarkable? Upon what do they live? For what distinguished? What are their pursuits? Where do the Tuaricks and Tibboos reside? To whom are they troublesome? Where are the Monselmins, Mongearts, &c. found? What are their character and habits?

WEST AFRICAN ISLANDS.

These are the Azores or Western Islands, the Madeiras, Canaries, the Cape Verd Isles, the islands of the Gulf of Guinea, St. Matthews, Ascension, and St. Helena.

The Azores or Western islands are situated in the latitude of Portugal and Philadelphia, about 1,200 miles west of Lisbon. They are nine in number. St. Michael, Fayal, and Terceira, are the most distinguished. Their climate is delightful, and the soil very rich in fruits and wines. The population is 160,000. The islands are under the government of Portugal. Angra, on the island of Terceira, is the capital.

The Madeiras are opposite to the coast of Morocco, and about 400 miles distant from it. Madeira, the principal island, contains about 1,000 square miles, and a population of 100,000. The climate is spring-like, and very pleasant. The Portuguese are the proprietors of this island. From it 16,000 pipes of excellent wine are annually exported. The capital is Funchal.

The Canaries, or Fortunate Isles, are a group belonging to Spain, situated near the African coast. They are thirteen in number. Teneriffe and the Grand Canary are the most lofty, fertile, and populous islands. The peak of Teneriffe is nearly 13,000 feet high, and may be discerned at a great distance. Palma, on the Grand Canary, is the capital of the whole cluster.

The Cape Verd Isles take their name from Cape de Verd, in Senegambia, from which they lie about 400 miles west. They are about fifteen in number, and are in the possession of the Portuguese, who procure here little that is valuable, except salt and hides. Population 100,000. St. Jago is the principal island, and Porto Praya the chief town.

The islands in the Gulf of Guinea are four, viz., Fernando Po, in possession of the British; and Prince's island, St. Thomas, and Annabon, subject to Portugal. St. Matthews lies far west of them. Ascension is about 400 miles farther south. It is a barren, uninhabited island.

St. Helena is 600 miles south east of Ascension, 1,200 miles from the coast of Africa, and 1,800 miles from South America. It is a steep, high rock, about 25 miles in circumference, resembling a castle in the midst of the sea. It exhibits a bleak and dreary aspect, but there are some fertile spots and pleasant vallies. A great part of the rock is covered with a soil of about a foot in depth, and there are little plantations, fields, and gardens, which produce something for the support of the inhabitants, and for

the refreshment of ships returning from India. At a narrow opening, where alone the rock is accessible, is built the village of Jamestown. This island belongs to the British, and has become famous for the imprisonment of Napoleon Bonaparte, which commenced in 1815, and for the interment of his remains in 1821.

QUESTIONS.

What are the names of the West African islands? What is the situation of the Azores? How many are there in number? What are the three principal islands? What is the climate? What fruits does the soil produce? What is the population? Under what government are these islands? What is the capital? Where are the Madeiras? Which is the principal island? What is its population? What is the climate? How much wine is exported from this island? What is the capital? Where are the Canaries? Which are the most fertile? What is the capital? Where are the Cape Verd Islands? To whom do they belong? What is the population? What is the principal island? What is the chief town? What islands in the gulf of Guinea? Where is St. Matthews? Ascension? St. Helena? Describe it. To whom does it belong? For what is it noted?

EAST AFRICAN ISLANDS.

Madagascar, in point of magnitude, is the third island on the globe, being about 900 miles in length, and 225,000 square miles in extent, with a population of more than 4,000,000. It is separated from Africa by the channel of Mozambique, which is 275 miles wide. It is traversed from north to south by a central range of lofty mountains. These mountains abound in minerals, and give rise to numerous streams which abundantly water and enrich the plains and valleys, and render them fruitful in rice, sugar cane, cocoa, banana, and other tropical vegetables. The natural features of the island are variegated and interesting.

The climate is agreeably tempered by the sea breezes and the mountain air. Many trees of the forests are peculiarly grand and beautiful. The production of silk is spontaneous and abundant, and there is plenty of wool of a fine quality. The territory is divided into several kingdoms, and the inhabitants are of various tribes, complexions, and manners. Negroes, Arabs, and Malays, are here blended together; some are in the savage state, others partially civilized. Some profess Mohammedanism; many are idolaters. One of the most powerful native princes has consented to the abolition of the slave trade, and appears favorable to the introduction of English teachers and useful learning among the people.

Mauritius, or the Isle of France, is nearly 500 miles east of Madagascar. It is about 200 miles in circumference. It formerly belonged to the French, but since 1810, it has been in possession of the British. It is a mountainous and healthful island, but not extensively fertile, and is much exposed to hurricanes.

It produces ebony, coffee, indigo, cloves, and various tropical fruits in perfection. Population 95,000.

Bourbon, 400 miles from Madagascar, is 60 miles in length, and composed of two mountains, one of which is an active volcano, and answers for a light house to sailors. The island belongs to France. A portion of it is very pleasant and fertile. The coffee and tobacco produced here are of the first quality. Population 60,000, consisting of whites and negroes.

The Comoro isles, of which Joanna is the principal, are situated in the channel of Mozambique, and often furnish refreshments to vessels bound for Bombay. They are less populous than formerly, having been to a great extent desolated by a ferocious band of pirates from the north west coast of Madagascar. The inhabitants are Mohammedans.

QUESTIONS.

What are the length, extent, and population of the island of Madagascar? What channel divides it from Africa? How wide is it? Describe the face of the country. What are the productions? What is the climate? How is the territory divided? By whom is it inhabited? What is the religion? What indications favorable to humanity and civilization have been given by one of the native princes? Where is Cape St. Mary? Cape Ambre? Where is port Dauphin? Tamatave? Talcar? How large is the island of Mauritius? What course and distance from Madagascar? In whose possession is it? What are its productions? What are the situation and extent of the island of Bourbon? What composes the island? To whom does it belong? What are the productions? What is the population? Where are the Comoro isles? What is their present condition? What is the religion of the inhabitants?

OCEANICA.

Extent, 4,500,000 sq. miles—Pop. 20,000,000—4 per sq. mile.

The islands embosomed in the Pacific Ocean are collectively called Oceanica. They are supposed to constitute about one tenth part of the land on the globe, or to be equal to one tenth of the surface of the Pacific. The islands in the vicinity of Asia, have the name of Asiatic or East India Islands, or North Western Oceanica. New Holland and the adjacent isles, are called Australia or Central Oceanica, and the remaining islands of the Pacific on both sides of the equator are together styled Polynesia or Eastern Oceanica.

These islands, in general, exhibit great inequalities of surface,

are diversified with mountains, rocks, valleys, and plains, and afford some of the most sublime and beautiful scenes in nature. It is observed that the mountains usually range from north to south. Many of them are volcanoes. Several of the islands are composed chiefly of coral rocks, which are said to have been formed in the progress of ages, by certain small marine insects called zoophytes.



Bread Fruit Tree.

The general climate of Oceanica is mild and agreeable. Though the islands, for the most part, are situated within the tropics, the heat, through the influence of the sea breezes, is moderate, and less sultry and oppressive than the parts of the continent in the same latitudes. Especially is this true of islands remote from the main land. Spring and summer, or early autumn, are here joined in a happy and perpetual union. The atmosphere is perfumed, and the senses are regaled at once with promising buds and blossoms, and a rich variety of ripened fruits, pleasant to the eye and sweet to the taste.

The trees, vegetables, and fruits, are many of them, such as are common in tropical regions; others are more rare and peculiar. Some of the most valuable productions are the palm tree, the cocoa nut, the bread fruit tree, the plantain, and the taro root. The palm tree exists in several varieties. The trunk is slender and long, rising to a great height, with a thick growth of broad leaves at the top. The leaves are used for fans and for writing paper, for umbrellas, and for the covering of cottages.

Three or four of the broadest leaves will make a roof to a wigwam, and eight or ten men may find shade and shelter under a single leaf. The juice of the palm is rich and nourishing, and will make a species of wine, or by drying, may be converted into a valuable article of food. (By baking the fruit of the bread tree and plantain in the embers, a kind of bread may be made little inferior to that made of grain.) A single bread fruit tree will support one of the natives for three months. The wood of the tree is used in building canoes and huts; the leaves are useful for napkins, the inner bark for making cloth, and the juice for glue or cement. Oceanica abounds in the most delicious fruits, as oranges, tamarinds, pomegranates, almonds, pine apples, and bananas; in a variety of flowering shrubs of beautiful forms and brilliant hue; and in groves of the richest spices, gums, and aromatic productions, as cinnamon, cloves, nutmegs, frankincense, and myrrh.)

The large animals of Asia and Africa are scarcely found in these islands. (The ourang-outang, the kangaroo, cassowary, and some others) are natives of Oceanica. Here also may be found in great numbers the birds of paradise, macaws, and parrots, and other birds of beautiful plumage, and of various and delightful notes, which give an additional interest to these verdant tropical scenes, and fill the fragrant groves with music.

The inhabitants of these isles resemble each other. They are generally reducible to two great classes: the race of Malays which is prevalent in the Indian or Asiatic islands, and in Polynesia; and the Papuan or New Guinea race of negroes, which centres in New Guinea, and is common throughout all Australia. (The Malays are of a short stature, but stoutly built, of a yellow or tawny complexion, and long black hair. In genius, they are lively and intelligent.) Some of them are very inoffensive, while others are remarkable for fierceness and cruelty. Their language are various dialects of the Malay. (The Papuan negroes are of a lighter color than Africans, with slender bodies and thin hair.) In point of intellect and character, they are reckoned among the weakest and most degraded of the human family.

QUESTIONS.

What islands are known under the name of Oceanica? What are their extent and population? What name is given to the north western isles or those near to Asia? Which are called Australia? Which are classed together under the name of Polynesia or Eastern Oceanica? Describe the surface of Oceanica. What is the climate? What are the productions? Describe the palm tree. The bread fruit tree. The plantain. In what fruits and shrubs does Oceanica abound? In what gums and spices? What large animals are found here? Into what two classes are the inhabitants divided? Give some account of the Malays. Of the Papuan negroes.

NORTH WESTERN OCEANICA, OR THE EAST INDIA ISLANDS.

These islands are near the borders of Asia, and in climate, soil, and productions, they resemble the southern portions of the main land. They embrace lofty mountains in the central parts, and are exposed to the eruptions of volcanos, and the desolating effects of hurricanes and earthquakes. The parts near the coast are low and swampy, and the atmosphere, to a great extent, is sickly and pestilential. In the rainy season there are dreadful inundations, so that it is not unusual to erect buildings and towns upon posts, or upon floating rafts, as a security against the floods. Cotton, rice, pepper, and spices, are the most common and valuable products. These islands may be classed under five divisions. First, The Sunda Isles; Second, the Bornean; Third, The Celebezean; Fourth, The Moluccas or Spice Islands; and Fifth, The Phillippine Isles. The Sunda Isles are, Sumatra and Java, with smaller ones adjacent.

Sumatra has an extent of 180,000 square miles, and a population of 4,000,000, pagan in religion, and uncultivated and savage in manners.

There are Malays on the coast, and a race of cannibals in the interior. It is crossed by the equator, and traversed lengthwise by a range of mountains, of which Mount Ophi, the highest peak, is more than 13,000 feet above the level of the sea. The intervening plains are extensive, elevated, fertile, and populous. The climate of the island is temperately warm. The soil is a black mould, upon a stiff clay, producing perpetual verdure and a luxuriant vegetation. Cotton, rice, pepper, and camphor, are abundant. There are many beautiful birds in the forests and groves; and herds of elephants, bears, wild boars, and other wild animals, range in the mountains.

Bencoolen is the chief European settlement. It has been lately ceded by the English to the Netherlands. It has produced 1,000 tons of pepper in a year.

Java belongs to the Dutch. It has an extent of 50,000 square miles, and a population of 6,000,000, composed of Javanese, Malays, and Chinese. The two former are lax Mohammedans. The interior is mountainous. The atmosphere is salubrious. The northern coast is low, swampy, and sickly. The southern coast is rugged and hilly, and hardly accessible. This island is distinguished for its variegated surface and pleasant scenery, and is almost unrivalled for fertility of soil, richness of vegetation and the facility with which the wants of the people may

be supplied. The plantations of rice, sugar, pepper, indigo, cotton, and coffee, are flourishing in a high degree. Ten million pounds of sugar are annually produced.

Batavia, the metropolis, is a very commercial city. Its situation is unhealthy, and its climate often fatal to Europeans. Its population embraces some of almost all nations, but the Chinese are the most numerous, industrious, and wealthy. Population 50,000.

Celebes is very irregular in its form. Its extent is about 90,000 square miles, and its population 3,000,000. They are of Malay origin. Their religion is the Mohammedan. They are bold navigators and noted pirates. Macassar is the Dutch settlement. The island is separated from Borneo by the strait of Macassar. There are several small isles in its neighborhood.

Borneo, in size, is the second island on the globe, containing 300,000 square miles, with 4,000,000 of inhabitants, chiefly Malays, Javanese, and natives from Celebes. The centre is mountainous, the coasts swampy, and the climate pestilential. The Chinese are the principal traders. The exports are gold, diamonds, and a kind of glutinous birds' nests, which are highly prized in China for food, and esteemed a great luxury. In this island are found the bird of paradise, and the ourang-outang. Borneo is the chief town. There is a diamond in the possession of a native prince of this island, whose value is estimated at more than a million of dollars.

The Philippine isles belong to Spain. Their number is estimated at more than 1,000, and their population at 3,000,000. These islands contain volcanoes, and are subject to earthquakes. They are very rich in natural resources, and furnish an inexhaustible store of commercial articles.

The largest island is Luzon, which contains Manilla, the Spanish capital. This port possesses great commercial advantages, and has been celebrated for a rich trade with Mexico.

The Moluccas, or Spice islands, belong to the Dutch, and are especially distinguished for the abundance of nutmegs, cloves, mace, and other valuable spices which they produce.

QUESTIONS.

Near what continent are the East India isles? In what part of the Pacific ocean are they? What is the surface of the central parts? To what are they exposed? What is the surface of the parts near the coast? The climate? On what are the inhabitants obliged to erect their buildings? What are the productions of these islands? How are the East India islands divided? What are the extent and population of Sumatra? What is the religion of the people? By whom is the coast inhabited? By whom the interior? Describe the face of the country. What are the productions? What animals abound in the mountains? What is the principal

European settlement? To whom does Java belong? Who are the inhabitants? Describe the climate and face of the country in the interior? What is the face of the country on the northern coast? For what is the island distinguished? What plantations on the island? Describe Batavia, the capital.

What is the form of the island of Celebes? What are its extent and population? The origin and religion of the people? What is the chief town? What strait divides this isle from Borneo? What are the size and population of Borneo? Who are the inhabitants? What are the face of the country and climate? To whom do the Philippine islands belong? What are their number and population? To what natural calamities are they subject? What is their commercial importance? On which island is Manila? For what has this port been noted? To whom do the Moluccas or Spice islands belong? For what productions are they especially distinguished?

CENTRAL OCEANICA, OR AUSTRALIA.

Extent, 3,500,000 square miles.

The principal islands which collectively bear this name, are New Holland, Van Dieman's Land, Papua, or New Guinea, New Britain, New Ireland, Solomon's Isle, Louisiade, New Caledonia, New Hebrides, and New Zealand.

These islands have as yet been little explored. Of course we are able to give but a very indefinite and imperfect view of them. Their vegetable and animal productions are represented as abundant, and in a great measure peculiar. Ferocious animals are rare. Animals of the kangaroo species are the most common. This is the region of the Papuan race of men, whose original seat is Papua, or New Guinea, and who are the most numerous people in these islands.

New Holland is the largest island in the world. It deserves the name of continent. Its extent is about 3,000,000 square miles, nearly equal to the extent of all Europe. It is located between the Indian and Pacific oceans. In general it exhibits a sterile and forbidding aspect. On the east is a range of mountains running parallel with the sea shore. It is remarkable that this vast island has no rivers of any considerable length, flowing into the ocean. It is conjectured that the interior is either an immense mediterranean sea, or a wide extent of swamps and marshes, absorbing the rivers which flow from the more elevated parts near the coast, towards the centre.

The natives are represented by Mr. Dawson as a good natured race of savages, wearing little or no clothing, peaceable and kind among themselves, and harmless to strangers.

The colony of New South Wales, or Botany Bay, was established by the English in 1788. Its climate is very salubrious; the surface beautifully diversified with hills and dales, and the soil general rich, and clothed with luxuriant herbage. The capital is Sydney, a flourishing settlement. Numbers of English convicts have been sent to this colony, many of whom, it is said

nave in their exile become reformed and virtuous. Paramatta, fifteen miles west of Sidney, appears like a village in England. It has a church, and a cloth manufactory, and contains a mission school for the civilization of the aborigines.)

Van Dieman's land also belongs (to the British,) whose chief settlement is (Hobart's Town.) The natives resemble the New Hollanders.

New Guinea or Papua, has been very little explored. (It is 1,200 miles long. It is the seat of the Papuan negroes, who are diffused over the islands of Australia.)

Louisiade is (an archipelago, 400 miles in length, and is inhabited by a savage and warlike people.)

New Zealand consists of two large islands, each 500 or 600 miles in length.) The soil is fertile and favorable to European productions.) There are lofty mountains, and extensive and noble forests of pine. The natives are represented as, a superior and heroic race, and passionately fond of war. They are known to be cannibals.) Here are several missionary establishments, whose situation and prospects are encouraging.) Mount Egmont, in this island, is 12,000 feet above the sea.)

The number of the New Zealanders has been estimated to be about 500,000. They are supposed to have had their origin from Assyria, or from Egypt.

QUESTIONS.

What are the principal islands of Australia? What is the state of our knowledge of these islands? What species of animals is most common? Who compose most of the population? What is the extent of New Holland? What is the face of the country? What is the character of the natives? When was the colony of New South Wales established? What are the face of the country and climate in New South Wales? What is the capital? Where is Paramatta? Give some account of it. To whom does Van Dieman's Land belong? What is its chief settlement? Give some account of New Guinea. What is Louisiade? By whom inhabited? Of what does New Zealand consist? What is the soil? What is the character of the natives? What are the prospects of the missionary establishments here? How high is Mount Egmont above the sea? What are the supposed number and origin of the New Zealanders?

EASTERN OCEANICA, OR POLYNESIA.

Polynesia is a name denoting a multitude of islands, and is applied to those numerous groups which are situated (in the more central or eastern parts of the Pacific ocean, on both sides of the equator.) They extend 5,000 miles from north to south, and 3,600 from east to west. The principal are the Sandwich Isles, the Pelew, Carolines, and Ladrões, north of the equator, and the Society Isles, Friendly, Navigators', and Marquesas, south of the equator.

The Sandwich Isles were discovered by Captain Cook in 1778. They are ten in number, embracing an area of about

(6,000 square miles, of which 4,000 square miles are contained in the single island of Owhyhee, or Hawaii, which is by far the largest of the group, and equal in extent to the state of Connecticut.) This island is very mountainous in the centre, and its two highest summits, Mouna Kash and Mouna Roah, rise to an elevation of 16,000 feet. (The volcano of Kirauea has 20 craters in perpetual operation.)

The Sandwich Isles are in the latitude of Mexico and the West Indies. (The climate is agreeable, and the soil fertile, and suited to the production of sugar cane, cocoa nuts, sweet potatoes, and the bread fruit.) (Sandal wood is abundant, and is an important article in the trade with China.) These islands are frequented by the whale ships. (The natives are intelligent and active, agricultural in their pursuits, and ingenious in some European arts and manufactures.) They are evidently rising from the darkness and degradation of their savage state, to the enjoyment of the privileges of knowledge, civilization, and Christianity. Their number is about 150,000.

The American Christian mission was established here (in 1819) and the same year, previously to the arrival of the missionaries, the natives had been led with one consent, to abandon their idols, in imitation of the example of the Society islanders. The chiefs take the lead in European improvements and customs, and in a professed attachment to the gospel; and their example is followed by multitudes of their subjects. (The mission in its several departments is prosperous. There are more than 400 native members in the several churches, 960 schools, and 50,000 pupils.)

The Pelew Islands, 18 in number, are (remarkable for a fine climate and fruitful soil. The inhabitants are remarkable for their chastity, and for their hospitable disposition. They have plenty of yams, bread fruit, and cocoa, and often afford refreshments to ships sailing in these seas.

(The Caroline Isles are numerous, with a favorable climate and soil, and a large population.) It is said that the inhabitants are destitute of temples and idols, and of every appearance of religion or form of worship.

The Ladrones, or Isles of Robbers, are so named, in indication of the predatory or piratical character of the people who inhabit them. Their boats are constructed with peculiar skill, and will sail with great rapidity.

The Navigators' Islands are a cluster consisting of ten islands, situated south of the equator, and distinguished for their fertility and for the abundance of nutritious fruits, plants, and roots,

which they produce spontaneously.) The people have need of little or no labor for subsistence; yet they are said to be ingenious and industrious in certain manufactures. (They are remarkable for stature, personal strength, and ferocity of character.)

The Friendly Isles, (including the Feejee, are 150 in number. They were so named by Captain Cook, on account of the apparently gentle and friendly disposition of the inhabitants.) But subsequent navigators have concluded that the true character of the inhabitants is the opposite, and that they are really notorious for their savageness and cruelty. They cultivate and feed upon yams, plantains, and cocoa nuts. The population is estimated at 200,000. (Tongataboo, the largest of this group, is 60 miles in circuit, and bears sway over the neighboring isles. (The people are not only cannibals, but addicted to the practice of offering human victims in their idolatrous worship.)

The Society Islands are about 60 in number.) The largest and most celebrated is (Otaheite or Tahiti.) The climate is healthful, and the soil rich in the productions common in Polynesia. The natives are (interesting in their persons, and mild, affable, and agreeable in their manners.) Within twenty years past, the happy influence of the Gospel, in enlightening and improving the human mind, has been signally illustrated among the inhabitants of these isles. In the year 1796, a number of Christian missionaries from London arrived here. Their labors for several years were attended with peculiar difficulties and dangers, but eventually, through the smiles of Heaven, they have been crowned with almost unexampled success, and have led to a general renunciation of idolatry and reformation of morals in the principal islands, and to the establishment of numerous Christian churches and schools, which are as regularly and fully attended as in almost any enlightened country.

QUESTIONS.

What does the name Polynesia denote? In what parts of the Pacific ocean are the islands of Polynesia situated? Which of them are north of the equator? Which south? Which group is farthest west? Which farthest east? What is the number of the Sandwich islands? What are their extent and latitude? Which is the largest of them? How large is it? What volcano on this island? What are the climate, soil, and productions of the Sandwich islands? What valuable wood abounds here? What is the population? Describe the character of the people. When was the American mission established here? Give some account of its effects upon the people? Where are the Pelew Isles? How many in number? For what remarkable? Give some account of the Caroline Isles. Of the Leironees. For what are the Navigators' Islands distinguished? Give some account of the inhabitants. How far south of the equator are the Friendly Isles? What is their number? Who first discovered and named them? What is their population? Which is the largest? Give some account of the inhabitants. Which way from the Friendly Isles are the Society Isles? Which is the largest? What is their number? What are the climate, soil, and productions? What is the character of the people? When did the London missionaries first arrive here? How have they succeeded?

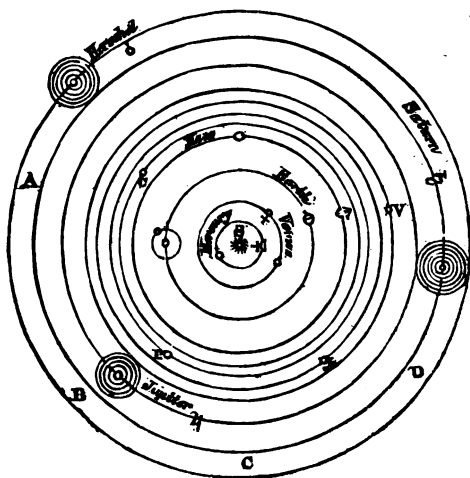
ASTRONOMICAL REMARKS.

ASTRONOMY is the science which treats of the heavenly bodies. It was originally cultivated by the nations of the East; particularly by the Chinese, Hindoos, Chaldeans, and Egyptians. As the shepherds on the beautiful plains of Egypt and Babylon were in the fields keeping watch over their flocks by night, they were led to contemplate the stars, and to divide them into clusters or constellations, to which they gave the names of gods, certain animals, or earthly objects, which they were supposed to resemble.

The true system of Astronomy, so far as it relates to the sun and planets, is often called the Pythagorean system, from Pythagoras, an ancient Greek philosopher. It is also called the Copernican system, from Copernicus, a native of Poland, who published his system in 1530. It is likewise denominated the Solar System, because it represents the sun as the great centre, around which the earth and the other planets regularly move, and from which they receive their light and heat.

The planets are opaque spherical bodies, of very different magnitudes, revolving around the sun, at different distances, in circles called Orbits, and at the same time revolving like a wheel, each on its own axis. There are eleven primary planets, viz., Mercury, Venus, the Earth, Mars, Vesta, Juno, Ceres, Pallas, Jupiter, Saturn, and Herschel. Besides these, there are 18 secondary planets or moons, which revolve around their respective primaries. The Earth has one moon or satellite, Jupiter four, Saturn seven, and Herschel six. Comets also are included in our Solar System.

The following figure represents the Solar System, and the revolutions of the several bodies belonging to it:—



NOTE.—The small circles around the Earth, Jupiter, Saturn, and Herschel, represent the Orbits of their moons.

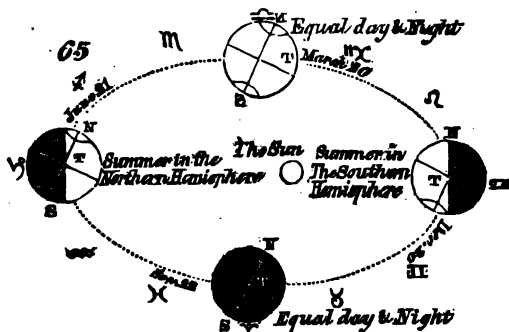
QUESTIONS.

What is Astronomy? What nations anciently paid the most attention to it? What is the true system of Astronomy often called? Why is it called the Solar System? What are the planets? What are the circles called in which they move? What two different revolutions has each of them? What are the number and names of the primary planets? What of the secondary planets or moons? How many moons or satellites has the earth? How many has Jupiter? How many has Saturn? How many has Herschel?

ASTRONOMICAL TABLE.

In the following table are exhibited the diameters of the several planets, their distances from the sun, the times in which their revolutions are performed, and their hourly motions in their orbits:—

<i>Names of Planets.</i>	<i>Diameter in miles.</i>	<i>Distance from the sun in miles.</i>	<i>Day, or rotation on axis.</i>	<i>Yrs. or revolution round the sun.</i>	<i>Hourly motion in orbit miles.</i>
Mercury	3,204	36 millions	Unknown	3 months.	111,000
Venus	7,687	68 "	23 hs. 20 m.	7 "	81,000
Earth	7,928	96 "	23 hs. 56 m.	12 "	68,000
Mars	4,189	144 "	24 hs. 39 m.	23 "	56,900
Vesta	238	217 "		4 years.	
Juno	100	265 "		5 "	
Ceres	161	266 "		4 "	
Pallas	80	266 "		4 "	
Jupiter	89,170	491 "	9 hs. 55 m.	12 "	30,000
Saturn	79,042	901 "	10 hs. 16 m.	29 1-2 "	22,000
Herschel	35,112	1800 "	Unknown	83 1-2 "	15,000



Varieties of the Seasons.

VARIETIES OF THE SEASONS—DIFFERENCE IN THE LENGTH OF DAY AND NIGHT, &c.

As the diameter of the earth's orbit is so small, compared with the distance of the stars, the poles of the earth are considered as

being invariably directed towards the same points in the heavens, during the whole annual revolution; the north pole being always pointed very nearly to the north star. If the axis of the earth were upright, or perpendicular to the plane of its orbit, there would be little or no change in the seasons, and no difference in the length of the days and nights. The sun, in that case, would always shine directly on the equator, and exactly up to each pole, illuminating the northern and southern hemispheres equally, and making the day and night each twelve hours long in all parts of the globe. But this is not the real position of the earth. Its axis, instead of being perpendicular, is *inclined* to the plane of its orbit through the whole of the year; so that from the 20th of March to the 22d of September, the north pole is turned towards the sun, the sun shines beyond it, and enlightens more than half of the northern hemisphere; producing the warmth of spring and summer, and making the days longer than the nights.

On the contrary, during the same months, the south pole is turned *from* the sun, the southern hemisphere is more than half benighted, and its inhabitants have longer nights than days. But from the 22d of September to the 20th of March, when the earth is on the opposite side of its orbit, the reverse is true. The south pole is turned toward the sun, and the southern half of the globe has the greater portion of light and heat; while at the same time, the north pole is in perpetual obscurity, and the northern hemisphere has a greater share of darkness and cold in different degrees.

At the time of the equinoxes, in March and September, when the sun crosses the equator, the earth is as it were sideways to the sun, neither pole being turned toward him, and neither hemisphere being enlightened more than the other, but both in an equal degree; so that the days and nights are then, every where, of the same length, being 12 hours each. From March to June, when the sun is advancing towards the tropic of Cancer, the length of the day and the degree of heat increase in the northern half of the globe and diminish in the southern. And the contrary is true when he is declining to the southern tropic, between September and December.

The difference in the length of day and night also varies with the latitude of places. At the equator the night is, at all seasons, twelve hours long, and equal to the day; a circumstance which tends greatly to abate the heat of the equatorial regions. As we proceed from the equator towards either pole, the difference in length, between the days and nights, becomes greater, (see the chart.) At $8^{\circ} 30'$ north latitude, the longest day is 12 $\frac{1}{2}$

hours long. In latitude $16^{\circ} 30'$ the longest day is 13 hours long. In latitude $30^{\circ} 30'$, 14 hours long, in about latitude 41° , 15 hours; in about latitude 49° , 16 hours; in latitude $54^{\circ} 30'$, 17 hours; in latitude 59° , 18 hours; in latitude $63^{\circ} 40'$, 20 hours. At the arctic circle, the longest day, June 22d, is 24 hours. In about latitude $67^{\circ} 40'$ it is one month; in latitude 70° two months; in latitude 73° , three months; in 78° , four months; in 84° , five months; and at the north pole the day continues six months, commencing in March, when the sun rises there, and shining without intermission until September, when it sets, and remains beneath the horizon the rest of the year. In the same months, and in the same proportion, the length of the night increases in the opposite or southern hemisphere; so that at the south pole the night prevails six months, and then the sun rises to set no more during a similar period.

The equatorial or torrid regions of the earth, are generally the warmest, because the sun shines upon them more directly and powerfully; while the temperate regions, and those nearer the poles, are cooler, because the sun in general meets them with more oblique and feeble rays. There is, however, but little difference between the warmest weather in the temperate zone, and that in the torrid, because the greater length of a summer's day in the former, tends to increase the degree of heat; and the long nights near the equator have a contrary tendency.

All parts of the globe are in the course of the year favored with equal portions of day light; the whole amount of day time, in any country, being six months every year.

QUESTIONS.

Why may the poles of the earth be considered as being invariably directed towards the same points in the heavens, during the whole annual revolution? To what star does the north pole always very nearly point? In what position of the earth's axis, would there be no change in the seasons, and no difference in the length of the days and nights? What is the real position of the earth's axis? Which pole is turned towards the sun between the 20th of March, and the 23d of September? Which are then the longest, the days, or the nights? What are the seasons during this period? How are these effects produced? Which way is the south pole turned during the same period? What effect is thus produced upon the days and nights, and upon the seasons, in the southern hemisphere? When are the days and nights exactly equal? How is this effect produced? Where are the night and the day, at all seasons, each twelve hours long. As you go from the equator towards the poles, how are the lengths of the days and nights in respect to each other? In what latitude is the longest day 15 hours? In what latitude is it 24 hours? Where is the day in summer, six months in length? Where is the night in the winter, of the same length? Why are the torrid regions the warmest? Why are the more northern, or southern regions, the coldest?

DIFFERENCE OF TIME.

Day and night are occasioned by the rotation of the earth on its axis once in twenty-four hours; its several sides being thus

successively presented to the light of the sun. As the earth daily rolls from west to east, it is evident that the eastern parts of the globe must meet the sun's rays earlier than the more western parts. Accordingly, the sun rises upon Asia sooner than upon Europe; and upon Europe and Africa sooner than upon America. The people of the eastern continent have sun rise, noon, and sun set, much before the inhabitants of the western. This difference of time amounts to one hour for every fifteen degrees of longitude; because so many degrees of the earth's surface are moved round every hour; fifteen being the 24th part of 360, which is the number of degrees in its whole circumference. Consequently, any place situated 15 degrees east of us, must have sun rise, noon, and sun set, an hour earlier, and any place lying 15 degrees west, must have them an hour later than the place where we reside.

If the difference of longitude between any two places be 30 degrees, the difference of time will be two hours, and in the same proportion for any number of degrees up to 180. The difference of longitude between London and Boston, is between 71 and 72 degrees; of course the difference of time, is between four and five hours; and as London is eastward from Boston, the time of day must be earlier at London; so that it is noon there, when it is no more than about 15 minutes past seven in the morning at Boston. If the difference of longitude between two places be 180 degrees, or, which is the same thing, if they be situated on opposite sides of the globe on the same parallel, their difference of time is 12 hours, so that when it is noon in the one place, it is midnight in the opposite. When the sun, in March and September, is setting in Nankin in China, it is about rising at the Bermuda islands, 180 degrees distant.

All places lying on the same meridian, whether in north or south latitude, have noon at the same moment, and all their hours correspond; though they may have opposite seasons.

QUESTIONS.

By what are day and night occasioned? Which way does the earth revolve in its daily revolution? In what parts of the world therefore do the hours of the day commence soonest? To what does the difference of time amount, for every fifteen degrees of longitude? What places have sun rise, noon, and sun set, one hour sooner than we? What places, one hour later? What difference of time do 30 degrees of longitude make? What difference, 60 degrees? What difference 180 degrees? When it is noon at London, what o'clock is it at Boston? When it is sun-rise at Nankin, what time is it at the Bermudas? What is the difference of longitude between the two places? What places on the earth have correspondent hours of day?

W.R. 11
SM



